

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

**Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

**About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`



# *A grammar school history of the United States*

John J Anderson

Digitized by Google

St. Anthony's Library

Educ T 708.85.145

# St. Anthony's Library of Reference

FOR USE OF TEACHERS.

## Convent of the Visitation,

GEORGETOWN, D. C.

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

GIFT OF THE GRADUATE SCHOOL OF EDUCATION

Digitized by Google

# ENGLISH CLASSICS,

FOR

## *Classes in English Literature, Reading, Grammar, etc. With Full Explanatory Notes.*

---

**Paradise Lost.** (Book I.) Containing Sketch of Milton's Life—Essay on the Genius of Milton—Epitome of the Views of the Best-Known Critics on Milton, and full Explanatory Notes. 16mo. Cloth, flexible, 94 pages.

---

**The Shakespeare Reader.** Being extracts from the Plays of Shakespeare, viz.: The Merchant of Venice—As You Like It--King John—King Richard II—King Henry IV—King Henry V—King Henry VI—King Richard III—King Henry VIII—Troilus and Cressida—Julius Cæsar—King Lear—Othello. With Introductory Paragraphs and Notes, Grammatical, Historical and Explanatory. By C. H. WYKES. 160 pp., 16mo, cloth, flexible.

---

**The Canterbury Tales**—The Prologue of Geoffrey Chaucer. The Text Collated with the Seven Oldest MSS., and a Life of the Author. Introductory Notices, Grammar, Critical and Explanatory Notes, and Index to Obsolete and Difficult Words. By E. F. WILLOUGHBY, M. D. 112 pp., 16mo, cloth, flexible.

---

**An Essay on Man.** By ALEXANDER POPE. With Clarke's Grammatical Notes. 16mo. 72 pages, cloth, flexible.

---

**Shakespeare's Plays**—(SCHOOL EDITIONS), viz.:

**Merchant of Venice—Julius Cæsar—King Lear—Macbeth—Hamlet—Tempest—Henry V—As You Like It.**

With Notes, Examination Papers and Plan of Preparation, (Selected). By BRAINERD KELLOGG, A.M., Professor of the English Language and Literature in the Brooklyn Collegiate and Polytechnic Institute, and author of "A Text-Book on Rhetoric," "A Text-Book on English Literature," and one of the authors of Reed & Kellogg's "Graded Lessons in English," and "Higher Lessons in English." 32mo. Cloth, flexible.

The text of these plays of Shakespeare has been adapted for use in mixed classes, by the omission of everything that would be considered offensive. The notes have been especially selected to meet the requirements of School and College students, from editions edited by eminent English scholars. We are confident that teachers who examine these editions will pronounce them better adapted to the wants, both of the teacher and student, than any other editions published. Printed from large type, bound in a very attractive cloth binding, and sold at nearly one-half the price of other School Editions of Shakespeare.

CLARK & MAYNARD, PUBLISHERS,

734 Broadway, New Yo


Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

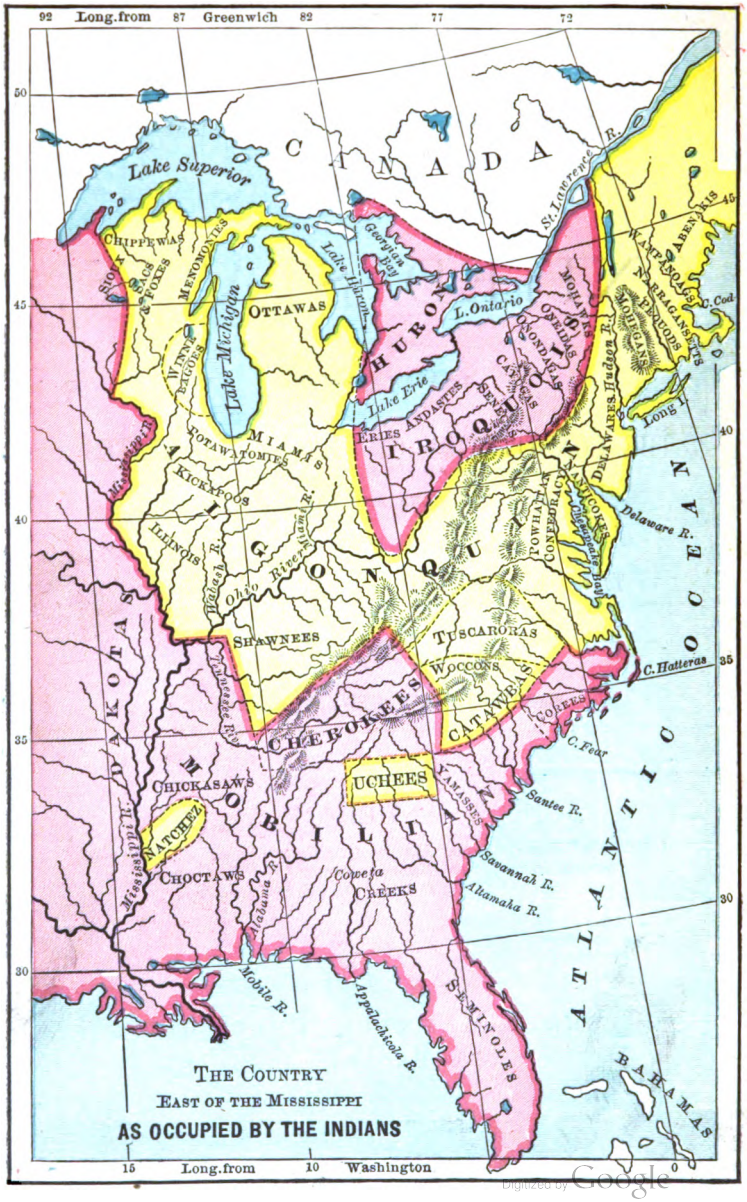
3 2044 097 036 545

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

# Progressive Map, No. 1.




Digitized by Google

A

# GRAMMAR SCHOOL HISTORY

OF THE

# UNITED STATES.

TO WHICH ARE ADDED

## THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES

WITH QUESTIONS AND EXPLANATIONS,

## THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE,

AND

## WASHINGTON'S FAREWELL ADDRESS.

With Compliments of Clark & Maynard.

BY

JOHN J. ANDERSON, Ph., D.

*Author of a "Pictorial School History of the United States," a "Manual of General History," a "History of England," "The Historical Reader," "The United States Reader," etc., etc.*

NEW YORK:

CLARK & MAYNARD, PUBLISHERS,

734 BROADWAY.

1885.

Digitized by Google

# Anderson's Historical Series.

---

**A Junior Class History of the United States.** Illustrated with hundreds of portraits, views, maps, etc. 272 pages. 16mo.

**A Grammar School History of the United States.** Annotated; and illustrated with numerous portraits and views, and with more than forty maps, many of which are colored. 340 pp. 16mo.

**A Pictorial School History of the United States.** Fully illustrated with maps, portraits, vignettes, etc. 420 pp. 12mo.

**A Popular School History of the United States,** in which are inserted as a part of the narrative selections from the writings of eminent American historians and other American writers of note. Fully illustrated with maps, colored and plain; portraits, views, etc. 356 pp. 12mo.

**A Manual of General History.** Illustrated with numerous engravings and with beautifully colored maps showing the changes in the political divisions of the world, and giving the location of important places. 488 pp. 12mo.

**A School History of England.** Illustrated with numerous engravings and with colored maps showing the geographical changes in the country at different periods. 332 pp. 12mo.

**A School History of France.** Illustrated with numerous engravings, colored and uncolored maps. 373 pp. 12mo.

**A History of Rome.** Amply illustrated with maps, plans, and engravings. 543 pp. By R. F. LEIGHTON, Ph.D. (Lips.).

**A School History of Greece.** In preparation.

**Anderson's Bloss's Ancient History.** Illustrated with engravings, colored maps, and a chart. 445 pp. 12mo.

**The Historical Reader,** embracing selections in prose and verse, from standard writers of Ancient and Modern History; with a Vocabulary of Difficult Words, and Biographical and Geographical Indexes. 544 pp. 12mo.

**The United States Reader,** embracing selections from eminent American historians, orators, statesmen, and poets, with explanatory observations, notes, etc. Arranged so as to form a Class-manual of United States History. Illustrated with colored historical maps. 414 pp. 12mo.

CLARK & MAYNARD, Publishers,

*734 Broadway, New York.*

---

Copyright, 1874, by JOHN J. ANDERSON.

Digitized by Google

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF THE
GRADUATE SCHOOL OF EDUCATION

# TO TEACHERS.

THIS work is intended for advanced classes in Grammar Schools and Academies. The leading aim in its preparation has been to narrate the events, as well as their causes, details, effects, and connection with each other, in the most concise language consistent with the clearness and fulness necessary for the proper understanding of the subject. Although the history of our country is here condensed within a few pages, it is believed that all the important facts are stated, and that no particulars are omitted that are essential to their clear comprehension.

A knowledge of history can never be acquired so as to make the acquisition permanent and useful, unless, at the same time, the geography of the narrative is well understood. The exact location of every place mentioned in this work, except a very few beyond the limits of the United States, is shown on maps, a number of which were specially prepared for this work; and the system of map questions, by which not only the location of each place is required to be learned, but its situation with reference to other places, is a

Digitized by Google

feature not to be found in any other history which has come under the author's notice. Of the importance of uniting the two studies of history and geography, no practical teacher need be informed. By associating events with places, both are more permanently impressed on the mind.

The design of the questions at the bottom of the pages, is to draw attention to the facts singly. Those at the end of the sections, called Review Questions, associate facts belonging to the same class or train of events, and, consequently, require answers of a topical character. This method, in connection with the requirements in relation to geography, cannot fail to awaken an interest in the mind of the learner, and lead him to a knowledge of the subject that will prove satisfactory and permanent. It will give him, too, a power and readiness of grouping, describing, and relating, that will prove of lasting benefit.

It will be observed that the author has given more attention to the pronunciation of proper names than in his previous works. The pronunciation of no name that seemed to be at all difficult for the learner, has been omitted. The authorities employed are Webster's and Worcester's Dictionaries, and Baldwin's Gazetteer.

The author would suggest to his fellow-teachers,

Digitized by Google

that this book may be used just as it is written. It is a production growing out of twenty years' experience in the school-room; and, while no claim of perfection is made either for its plan or infallibility in its statements, it will be, it is believed, when thus used, an important aid in the hands of teachers. The maps should be used freely: they may be drawn by the teacher or pupils on the blackboard; and no recitation should be heard nor instruction given, without them. In this way pupils will be made to learn and recite intelligently, since they will be compelled to use their eyes as well as their ears, and to exercise their understanding.

With regard to the chronology, two things are to be avoided. The pupil should not be required to learn dates unassociated with the narrative, nor should any system of mnemonics be employed which requires the use of facts or statements not belonging to the history. In the one case, the mind is burdened with useless lumber to the overtasking of the memory; and, in the other case, it is confused with a multiplicity of facts, perhaps, of but little or no importance. A few prominent events should be selected as standpoints, from which, on the one side, may be seen a train of causes; and, on the other, a series of effects or consequences. In this way, whatever is really im-

Digitized by Google

portant, will be readily remembered and judiciously appropriated.

With these few remarks and suggestions, the author commits the work to the impartial examination of his fellow-laborers in the cause of education; trusting that it will be received with that kind consideration which has been extended to his other works on this subject.

---

**Teachers who desire that their pupils should acquire a more comprehensive knowledge of the history of the United States than can be gained from the text, are referred to the QUESTIONS FOR TOPICAL STUDY AND RECITATION at the end of the work. These questions, with the references and the additional information given in connection therewith, supply a complete collection of topics, beginning with the discovery of the New World, and running through succeeding events to the present time. Much interesting information, not found in the preceding pages of the book, is there inserted. The author is indebted to School Superintendents and teachers, and to examination-papers which have been furnished him, for many of these questions.**

---

Two articles have been added at the end of the History, one showing the Territorial Growth of the United States, and the other the Civil Progress of the Nation.

Digitized by Google

## HOW TO TEACH HISTORY.

The author of this book having been solicited by many teachers for a few brief rules, by which they might be governed in using it, submits the following. He does not claim that these are the best, nor does he advise any teacher who may adopt them to adhere to them strictly in all cases.

*Lessons should be assigned and recitations heard, not so much in conformity with rules as in accordance with circumstances.*

### ASSIGNING THE LESSON.

1. **"Give out" a short lesson,** at the same time designating a map to be drawn by the pupils, on paper or slate, the map to show, among other things, the location of the important places mentioned in the lesson. ☞ Let it be understood that no lesson is learned by a pupil until he has learned how every place mentioned in it is located.

2. **Let the lesson be read by the class,** care being taken to have all the proper names correctly pronounced. Endeavor, also, to give interest to the lesson by enlarging upon the facts, throwing in historical incidents, and referring to authors.

### RECITATION.

3. **Let the maps be examined and criticised.** In this duty the teacher may be aided very much by a system of examinations carried out by he pupils themselves, who will derive benefit in many respects by the exercise.

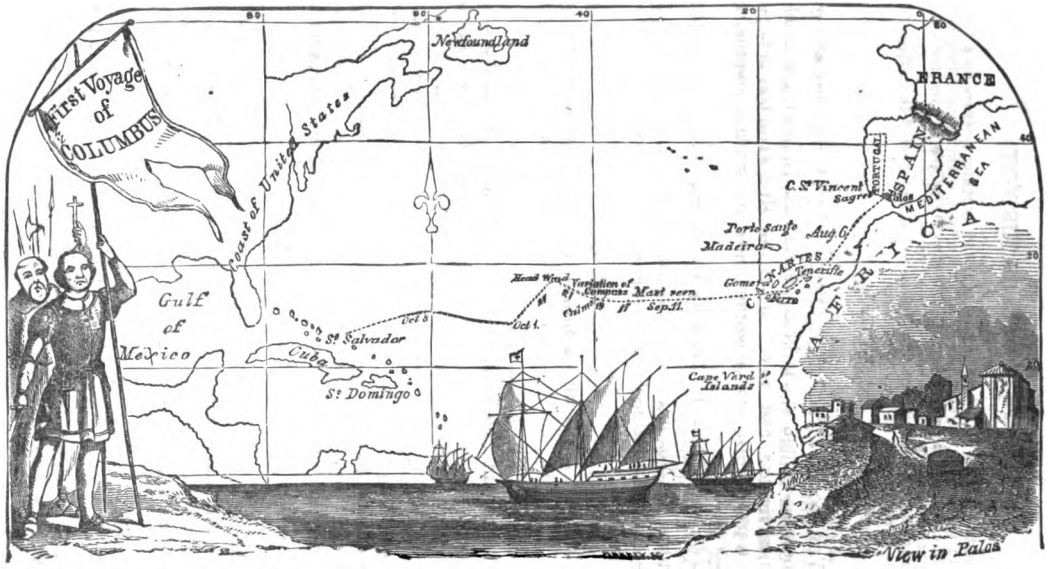
4. **Bring out the facts of the lesson with clearness,** particularly the relation of causes to results. If any question is not fully answered, put others to elicit what has been omitted. Then ask the first question again, requiring it to be properly answered. Of course the teacher should in all cases aim to have his questions answered with intelligence. Use outline wall-maps, and question freely on the geography. Occasionally have the maps drawn on the blackboard. ☞ Permit no answer to pass if it is not clear that the pupil is acquainted with the location of the places referred to in it.

### REVIEWS.

5. **Review by topics.** Besides the oral method, the composition plan (see Appendix, p. 62) and the one by written diagrams (see model preceding p. 18) should occasionally be used. (The Review Questions, at different places in the book, furnish a number of topics and suggest others. A list of about two hundred topics is also given at the end of the book.)

6. **Dates. Do not require dates too freely,**—the month and the day of the month in no case, unless there is a special reason for it. Take the date of an important event as a turning point; and when it is well fixed in the mind, arrange on the one side the train of events as causes, and on the other the train of results.

Digitized by Google




FIRST VOYAGE OF COLUMBUS.

Digitized by Google

# INTRODUCTION.

1. THE geographers of ancient times had no knowledge whatever of America; though it has been asserted that, several years before Christ, navigators had sailed out of the Mediterranean Sea, and, being wafted across the Atlantic Ocean by the trade-winds, had reached the Western Continent.

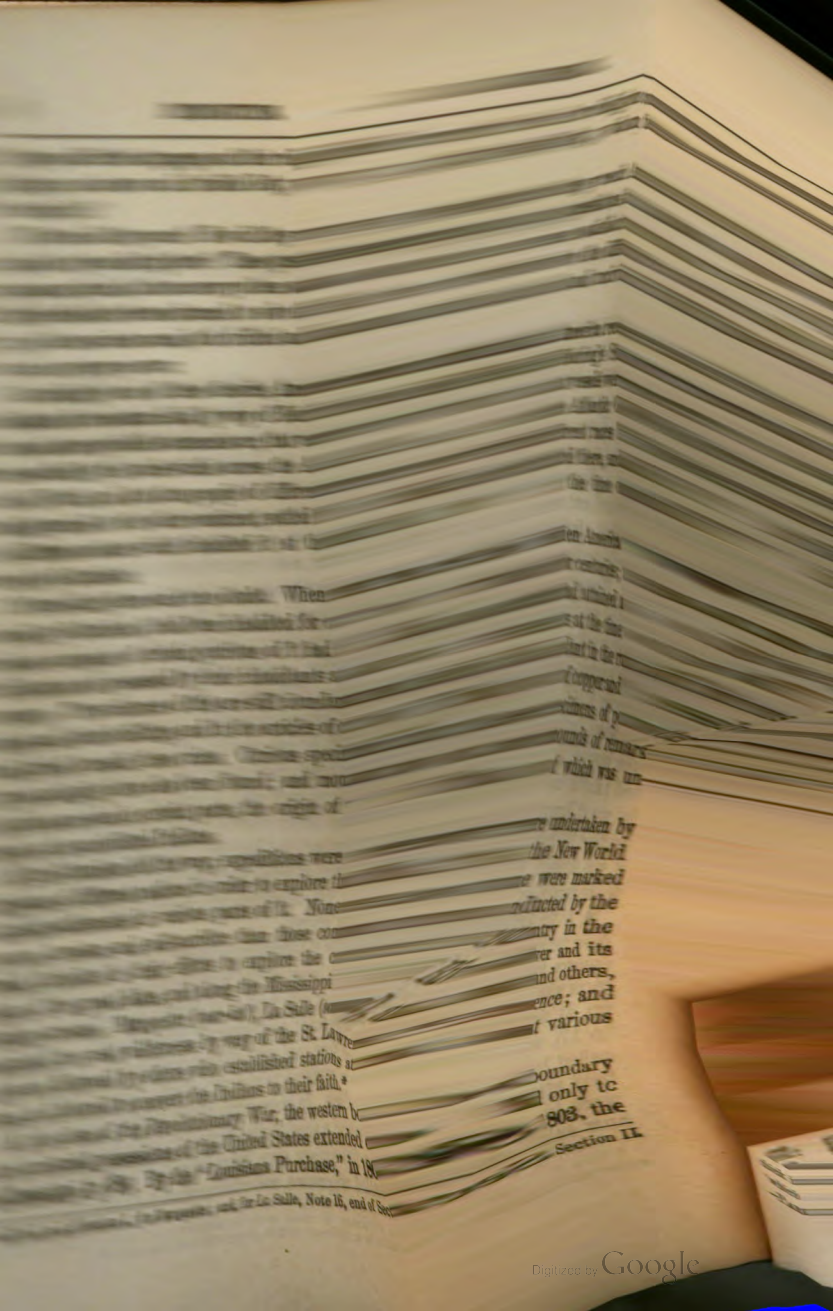
2. About five centuries previous to the discovery of America by Columbus, the Northmen, a people from Norway, colonized Iceland and Greenland, and made explorations in America as far south as New England. Settlements are also said to have been made by them, and intercourse kept up for some time with the mother country. These expeditions, however, seem not to have attracted any general attention; nor were their results permanent, or known to the other nations of Europe. (Read Note 7, end of Section.)

3. It is certain, indeed, that when Columbus set sail on his eventful voyage in 1492, he had not the least knowledge of the existence of a second continent, nor is there any evidence whatever that he even imagined there was such a continent.* His great aim was to find a shorter and better route to India than the one then travelled by way of Egypt and the Red Sea. To him, nevertheless, is justly ascribed the honor of being the discoverer of the New World, since it was through his enterprise and sagacity that its existence came to be generally known.

4. At the time of Columbus's discovery, the continent of America, from the icy latitudes of the North to the regions far south of the equator, together with most of its islands, was inhabited by various races who differed in many respects from Europeans. As the country at that time, and until Balboa discovered the Pacific Ocean (p. 17), was supposed to be a part of India, these inhabitants were called Indians. In some parts of the country they were found to have attained a considerable degree of civilization; in others they were in the savage state, being divided into tribes, living in rude huts called wigwams, and existing mostly by fishing and hunting

*This statement is made on the authority of Irving, Helps, and others; but a recent writer holds to a different opinion, giving several reasons for his belief.

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google



Marquette Sailing Down the Mi[illegible]

"On the 17th of June, 167[illegible] distance by rugged hills, where [illegible] wild and rapid current, covered [illegible] thick in forests. They had [illegible] which I cannot express, they [illegible]
—PARKMAN.

Digitized by Google

They spoke different languages, and their religion consisted in worshipping an unknown and invisible Deity, whom they called "the "Great Spirit."

5. Whence did they come? How did they reach America? How long had they been living there? These questions have been asked a great many times, but have never yet been satisfactorily answered. Many theories have been advanced to solve the difficulty; but the origin of these various races, both civilized and uncivilized, remains as much a mystery as ever.

6. According to one of these theories, America received its first inhabitants from eastern Asia, by way of Behring's Straits; while other and more probable statements are, that vessels were at various times wafted by the trade-winds across the Atlantic Ocean from the Old World, and that thus people of different races being accidentally carried to the other continent, settled there, and founded the different nations which inhabited it at the time of its discovery by Columbus.

7. Of one thing there can be no doubt. When America was discovered by Columbus, it had been inhabited for centuries; and the previous occupants of certain portions of it had attained a degree of civilization not possessed by their inhabitants at the time of this discovery. The evidences of this are still abundant in the ruins of temples and other buildings, and in the articles of copper and silver found buried beneath these ruins. Curious specimens of pottery of great antiquity have also been found; and mounds of remarkable extent are seen in certain parts, the origin of which was unknown to the uncivilized Indians.

8. After Columbus led the way, expeditions were undertaken by Europeans of different nations in order to explore the New World and make settlements in various parts of it. None were marked by more heroism and self-sacrifice than those conducted by the French Catholics in their efforts to explore the country in the region of the great lakes, and along the Mississippi River and its tributary streams. Marquette (*mar-ket'*), La Salle (*sal*), and others, penetrated the vast wilderness by way of the St. Lawrence; and they were followed by others who established stations at various places, and labored to convert the Indians to their faith.*

9. At the close of the Revolutionary War, the western boundary of the territorial possessions of the United States extended only to the Mississippi (p. 98). By the "Louisiana Purchase," in 1803, the

* See Note 6, end of Section I., for Marquette; and, for La Salle, Note 16, end of Section II.

Digitized by Google



Marquette Sailing Down the Mississippi.

"On the 17th of June (1673), they saw on their right the broad meadows, bounded in the distance by rugged hills, where now stands the town of Prairie du Chien. Before them, a wild and rapid current coursed athwart their way, by the foot of lofty heights wrapped thick in forests. They had found what they sought, and 'with a joy,' writes Marquette, 'which I cannot express,' they steered forth their canoes on the eddies of the Mississippi."
—PARKMAN.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

limits were extended to the Rocky Mountains (p. 110). The coast strip, about fifty miles wide, between Florida and Louisiana, claimed by Spain as a part of Florida, was occupied by the United States at the beginning of the "War of 1812," and, under the claim that it was part of the "Louisiana Purchase," was retained. In 1819, Florida was acquired by cession from Spain (p. 135), all the "rights claims, and pretensions" of Spain to territory west of the Mississippi and north of the 42d parallel, being, at the same time, also ceded to the United States.

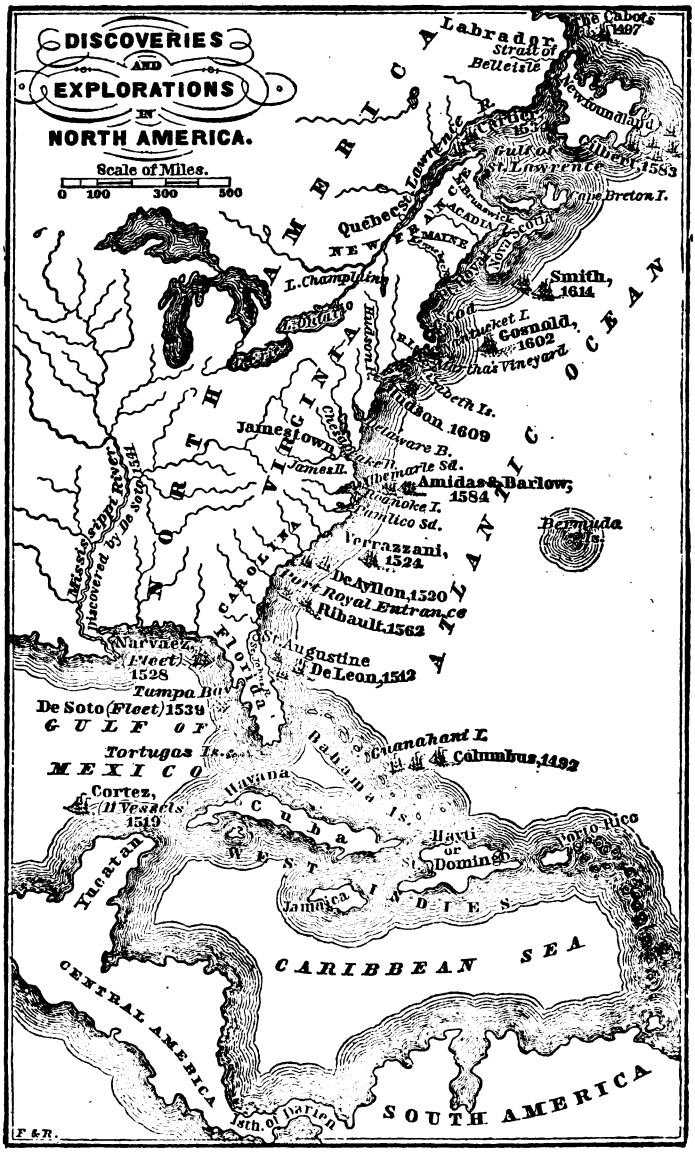
10. The region west of the Rocky Mountains, extending from latitude 42° to about 54°, with the Pacific for its western boundary, was long known as Oregon. It was claimed by the United States, because, among other reasons, its principal river had been discovered by an American—Captain Gray, of the ship Columbia, of Boston—in 1792; and because, during the administration of President Jefferson, it was explored by Captains Lewis and Clark, commanding an overland expedition sent out by the United States government. Gray gave the name of his vessel to the river he discovered. By the treaty made with Spain in 1819, the United States strengthened their claim to the region.

11. Great Britain also claimed Oregon until 1846, when, by treaty, the boundary line between the possessions of the two nations was fixed at the 49th parallel; and thus was settled a controversy which had been continued for a number of years, and which, at one time, threatened to produce a war between the two countries. In 1845, Texas became a member of the Union by annexation (pp. 141–143). California, New Mexico, Arizona, Utah, and Nevada were acquired from Mexico by conquest; and their possession was confirmed by a treaty made at the close of the war with that country (p. 150), and by subsequent negotiation. Alaska was purchased from Russia in 1867 (p. 184).

---

NOTE.—"The evidences of the former existence of a pre-historic race, known as the mound-builders, who at one time occupied the principal affluents of the Mississippi, the Gulf Coast, and the region of the Great Lakes, are too conclusive to admit of doubt. These evidences consist of tumuli symmetrically raised and often enclosed in mathematical figures, such as the square, the octagon, and circle, with long lines of circumvallation; of pits in the solid rock, and rubbish-heaps formed in the prosecution of their mining operations; and of a variety of utensils, wrought in stone or copper, or moulded in clay, which evince a knowledge of art and methodical labor foreign to the Red man. While the character of these structures, as traced over wide areas, differ in minor particulars, still there is a great uniformity which stamps the authors as one people and subjects of one controlling government."—*Foster's Pre-Historic Races in the United States of America.*

Digitized by Google




Digitized by Google

# HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

## SECTION I.

### *Discoveries and Explorations.*

EXTENDING FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA, IN 1492, TO THE SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA, IN 1607.

1. AMERICA was discovered in 1492 by Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa (*jen'-o-ah*), Italy. Believing the earth to be round, Columbus concluded that by sailing westward he would sooner reach India than by taking the usual route by way of Egypt. The route around the southern extremity of Africa was not then known.*

2. Being too poor to fit out an expedition at his own expense, he applied for aid to the republic of Genoa, and afterward to the monarchs of England and Portugal; but in vain. At last he was assisted by Isabella, Queen of Spain. With a fleet of three vessels he set sail, and after a voyage of ten weeks, discovered one of the Baha-

MAP QUESTIONS.—(See Map, page 8.) Where are the Bahama Islands? The West Indies? Where is Guanahani? Labrador? Porto Rico? Florida? St. Domingo? Cuba? Tampa Bay? Newfoundland? Quebec? Nova Scotia? New Brunswick? Acadia? Port Royal entrance? St. Augustine? Pamlico Sound? Albemarle Sound? Virginia? Cape Cod? Maine? Martha's Vineyard? Jamestown? Into what waters does the Mississippi flow? The St. Lawrence? The St. John's? The Kennebec? The James?

1. Who was Columbus? When was America discovered? Who made the discovery? What belief did Columbus have? What was then the usual route to India? What route was then not yet known?

2. For what did Columbus solicit aid? Why did he do so? Of whom did he ask aid? Who, finally, assisted him? What can you state of his first voyage? What land did he discover? What name did he give it?

* "The crown of Portugal was constant in its efforts, through the fifteenth century, to find a passage round the southern point of Africa into the Indian Ocean; though so timid was the navigation that every fresh headland became a formidable barrier; and it was not till the latter part of the century that the adventurous Diaz passed quite round the Stormy Cape, as he termed it, but which John the Second (King of Portugal), with happier augury, called the Cape of Good Hope. But, before Vasco de Gama had availed himself of this discovery to spread his sails in the Indian seas (1497), Spain entered on her glorious career, and sent Columbus across the western waters."—*Prescott's Conquest of Peru.*

Digitized by Google

ma Islands, called by the natives Guanahani (*gwah-nah-hah'-ne*). He gave it the name of San Salvador.

3. Columbus made three other voyages to the New World, in the first of which, as well as in the one just described, his discoveries were confined to the islands between North and South America. These he supposed to be near India; but when, in after years, the mistake became known, they were called the West Indies, and the islands southeast of Asia were called the East Indies.

4. In his third voyage,* made in 1498, Columbus discovered the mainland, at the mouth of the river O-ri-no'-co, in South America, and in his last he examined the coast of Da-ri-en. He died in Spain, at the age of seventy, a few months after he returned from his fourth voyage. He never knew that he had discovered a new continent.†

5. In 1497, John Cabot (*kab'-bot*), and his son Sebastian, while sailing under a commission from Henry VII. of England, reached the coast of Labrador, and thus were the first to discover the continent of America. In a second voyage, made by Sebastian Cabot, in 1498, the coast from Labrador to Chesapeake Bay was explored.

6. In 1499, Amerigo Vespucci (*ah-mā-rē'-gō ves-poot'-chē*), a Florentine navigator, visited the eastern coast of South America, and, in 1501, made a second voyage to the same regions. He prepared accounts of the two voyages, from which he acquired the reputation of being the discoverer of the western mainland. In consequence of this, as well as from the fact that his were the first published accounts of the newly discovered country, it was called America. (See Appendix, p. 76, topic 208.)

3. Columbus's second voyage? Why were the West Indies so called?
4. Columbus's third voyage? His fourth? What further of Columbus?
5. What discovery was made in 1497? What exploration in 1498?
6. Who was Amerigo Vespucci? What two voyages are mentioned? Why was the new world called America?

* Read Note 1, end of this Section.

† His body was deposited in a convent at Valladolid, Spain, but was afterward removed to Seville, Spain. Twenty-three years after, it was taken across the Atlantic to St. Domingo, and finally, two hundred and sixty years later, was carried with great ceremony to the cathedral at Havana, its present resting-place.

Digitized by Google

7. Twenty years after Columbus's first and great discovery, Ponce de Leon (*pōn'-thā dā lā-ōn'*), an aged Spaniard, sailed from Porto Rico (*re'-co*) in search of a wonderful fountain, which, it was said, existed in one of the Bahama Islands, and would impart immortal youth to all who might drink of its waters. (Read Note 8, end of Sec.)

8. After visiting several islands, he discovered, in 1513, an unknown land, whose forests were adorned with flowers. From the abundance of the flowers, and also because the discovery happened on Easter Sunday, which the Spaniards call *Pascua Florida* (*pah'-scoo-ah flo-re'-dah*), it received the name of Florida. His search for the fountain was, of course, unsuccessful.

9. Several years after, he went again to Florida. His object this time was to make a settlement, he having been appointed governor of the country upon the condition that he would colonize it. He effected a landing, but in an attack made by the natives, the Spaniards were killed or driven back to their ships, and De Leon received a mortal wound—of which he died, in Cuba.

10. Two expeditions were made to Carolina by De Ayllon (*dā ile-yone'*). The object of the first, made in 1520, was the capture of natives to work the plantations and mines of St. Domingo. The second was undertaken to conquer the country. Both were unsuccessful.*

11. In 1517, Cordova (*kor'-do-va*) discovered Mexico, and explored the northern coast of Yu-ca-tan'.† Afterward, Cor'-tez, who had been sent by the governor of

7. Who was Ponce de Leon? What visionary enterprise did he undertake?
8. Did he discover the fountain? Why not? What did he discover? Why was the land called Florida?
9. What next did De Leon undertake? What was the result?
10. What was undertaken in 1520? What, afterward? What were the results?
11. When was Mexico discovered? Who made the discovery? What else did Cordova do? What did Cortez accomplish?

* Many of De Ayllon's men, in the second expedition, were killed by the natives, because he had kidnapped a number of their companions in his first expedition. He himself barely escaped.

† Read note 9, end of Section.

Digitized by Google

Cuba, succeeded in conquering the Mexicans; and their country, in 1521, became a province of Spain. (App. p. 65.)

**12.** Narvaez (*nar-vah'-eth*), believing Florida to be a land of great wealth, obtained from the Spanish sovereign an appointment as governor, and, in 1528, sailed from Cuba, to conquer and possess it. The attempt proved disastrous; for of the three hundred men who penetrated the wild regions, only four, after years of wandering, succeeded in reaching a Spanish settlement in Mexico.

**13.** These men asserted that Florida was the richest country in the world,—a statement which the people of Spain generally believed, among them Ferdinand de Soto (*da so'-to*). With a fleet of ten vessels, and a gay company of six hundred armed men, De Soto sailed for Cuba, whence he proceeded to Florida. He landed on the shores of Tampa Bay, and, in the summer of 1539, commenced his march into the interior.*

**14.** After wandering for nearly three years, during which, in 1541, the Mississippi was discovered, he sickened and died. To conceal his death from the natives, who regarded him with fear, his body was sunk in the waters of the great river which he had discovered. The remnant of his followers, having in vain tried to reach Mexico through the forests, built seven frail barks, sailed down the Mississippi and along the coast of Mexico, until they reached a Spanish settlement. (Read Note 2, end of Sec.)

**15.** In 1524, Verrazzani (*ver-rat-tsah'-ne*), a Florentine navigator, sailing in the service of France, explored the coast of America from the Carolinas to Newfoundland (*new'-fund-land*). To the whole region thus examined he

**12.** What belief did Narvaez have? What appointment did he obtain? From what place did he sail? With what object? What was the result?

**13.** Who was De Soto? What statement did he believe? Give an account of the beginning of his expedition.

**14.** Give a further account of his expedition. What river did he discover? When did he make the discovery? What became of his followers?

**15.** Who was Verrazzani? What explorations did he make? What name did he give to the region? Where is Chesapeake Bay? (See Map, p. 58.)

* His explorations extended about two hundred miles west of the Mississippi.

Digitized by Google



COLUMBUS.



SEBASTIAN CABOT.



ISABELLA.



CORTEZ.



DE SOTO.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

gave the name of New France, a name which was afterward restricted to Canada. (Read Note 3, end of Sec.)

**16.** No other explorations were made by the French until 1534. In that year and the following, James Cartier (*car-te-ā'*) made two voyages, discovered the St. Lawrence, explored its banks, and took possession of the whole country in the name of his king. The French, however, effected no permanent settlement in Canada until one was made on the site of Quebec, in 1608.*

**17.** But Quebec was not the first settlement made by the French on the American continent, as Port Royal, now Annapolis, in Nova Scotia, was settled three years before. The French, claiming the whole territory now included in Nova Scotia and New Brunswick, called it A-ca'-di-a.

**18.** The French Protestants, or Huguenots, as they were called, desired to have in America a place of refuge. With the permission of King Charles, and aided by the celebrated Coligny (*ko-leen-ye'*), two attempts were made to establish a colony—one at Port Royal entrance, Carolina, in 1562, and the other on the banks of the St. John's River, Florida, in 1564.

**19.** The settlers of 1562 built a fort, to which they gave the name of Carolina, in honor of Charles (*Carolus*, in Latin), their king. Twenty-six men were left to keep possession of the country, while the others, with John Ribault (*rē-bō'*), their commander, returned to France for re-enforcements; but the promised aid not arriving, the colonists, in despair, embarked for their native land.

**20.** Spain, unwilling that the settlement on the St.

---

**16.** When was the St. Lawrence discovered? By whom? What further did Cartier do? When was Quebec settled? By whom?

**17.** Which was the first French settlement in America? When was Port Royal settled? What country was called Acadia? Who called it so?

**18.** Who were the Huguenots? What desire did they have? Who aided them? What settlements were begun by them?

**19.** Give an account of the Carolina settlement.

* By Samuel Champlain, the discoverer and explorer of Lake Champlain.

Digitized by Google

John's should exist, commissioned Melendez (*mā-len'-deth*) to destroy it. After laying the foundations of St. Augustine, in 1565, Melendez proceeded against the Huguenots, whom he surprised and massacred. In revenge, De Gourgues (*goorg*), of France, two years after, surprised the Spanish forts on the St. John's, and hung two hundred captives upon the trees.

**21.** In 1583, Sir Humphrey Gilbert sailed from England, under a patent granted by Queen Elizabeth. His design was to take possession of the northern parts of America, and found a colony in Newfoundland. He landed on the island, but, in consequence of disasters, no attempt at settlement was made. On the return to England, one of the ships, that in which Gilbert sailed, foundered, and all on board perished.*

**22.** Sir Walter Raleigh (*raw'-lē*), not disheartened by the sad fate of his step-brother, Gilbert, obtained from Elizabeth an ample patent, and, in 1584, sent two vessels, under the command of Am'-i-das and Barlow. The voyagers arrived on the coast of Carolina, visited the islands in Pam'-li-co and Albemarle sounds, took possession of the country in the name of their sovereign, and, after trafficking with the natives, returned to England.

**23.** So glowing an account did Amidas and Barlow give of the country which they had seen, that Elizabeth declared the event to be the most glorious in her reign, and, as a memorial of her unmarried state, named the region Virginia. Upon Raleigh she conferred the honor of knighthood.† (See Appendix, p. 73, topic 147.)

**20.** Give an account of the St. John's settlement. When was St. Augustine settled? By whom? How does it rank in age among the towns in the United States? *Ans.* It is the oldest. What revenge did De Gourgues have?

**21.** What voyage was commenced in 1583? What was Gilbert's design? Give an account of Gilbert's operations? Of his fate.

**22.** Who was Raleigh? Give an account of his expedition sent in 1584?

**23.** Why was the country called Virginia? Honor conferred upon Raleigh?

* Gilbert, "sitting abaft with a book in his hand, cried out to those in the other vessel, 'We are as near to Heaven by sea as by land.' That same night the lights of the Squirrel (a bark of only ten tons) suddenly disappeared, and neither vessel nor any of its crew was ever seen again."—*Bancroft.*

† Read Note 10, end of Section.

Digitized by Google

**24.** Two attempts were afterward made by Raleigh to establish a colony on Roanoke Island—one, under Ralph Lane, in 1585, and the other, under John White, in 1587. The people under Lane, after a year of distress at Roanoke, embarked for England with Sir Francis Drake, who had stopped there on his way from the West Indies. White did not remain long at the island: he went to England for supplies. When he returned, after an absence of nearly three years, none of the colonists could be found. (Read Note 4, end of Section. Also note 11.)

**25.** The next attempt to plant an English colony in America was made by Bartholomew Gos'nold, in 1602. He discovered Cape Cod, and so named it because of the great number of codfish caught there. Concluding to settle on one of the Elizabeth Islands, he built a storehouse and fort; but discontents arising, the design was abandoned, and the whole party returned to England.*

**26.** The favorable reports of the country made by Gosnold induced some English merchants to fit out two vessels, under the command of Martin Pring, for exploration and trade. Pring, in 1603, examined the shores and large rivers of Maine, as well as the coast thence to Martha's Vineyard. Three years later he made a second voyage, and also a more accurate survey of Maine.

**27.** The territory which the English claimed, basing their claim upon the discoveries of the Cabots, extended from the 34th to the 45th degrees of north latitude.† In 1606, James I. divided this region into two divisions. The northern, called North Virginia, he granted to the

**24.** What did Raleigh wish to do? Give an account of Lane's undertaking. Of White's. **25.** When was Cape Cod discovered? By whom? Why was it so named? Give an account of Gosnold's attempt at settlement. Where are the Elizabeth Islands? (See Map, p. 24.) **26.** Who sent Pring to America? What induced them to send him? Give an account of his first voyage. His second. **27.** What extent of American territory did the English claim? What was their title to the claim? What division was made in 1606?

* The tobacco plant was first carried to England by some of Raleigh's returning colonists, and he introduced the habit of smoking it. "It is related that when his servant entered his room with a tankard of ale, and for the first time saw the smoke issuing from his master's mouth and nostrils, he cast the liquor in his face. Terribly frightened, he alarmed the household with the intelligence that Sir Walter was on fire."

† This claim was afterward extended to the 48th degree (see page 24).

Digitized by Google

Plymouth Company; and the southern, called South Virginia, to the London Company.

**28.** During the following year, 1607, the Plymouth Company sent a number of planters, who began a settlement at the mouth of the Kennebec; but the cold of the winter, the destruction of their storehouse, and the death of their president, discouraged them, and they returned to England.

**29.** The London Company were successful. They sent more than a hundred persons, in a fleet commanded by Christopher Newport. The design of the colonists was to settle on Roanoke, but a storm carried the vessels further north. Sailing up a large stream, which they named the James River, they selected a place for a settlement, and called it Jamestown. (See note, p. 23.)

## CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

1492. America was discovered by Columbus.
1497. The Continent of America was discovered by John Cabot.
1498. The coast of North America was explored by Sebastian Cabot.
The Continent of America was discovered by Columbus.
1499. South America was visited by Amerigo Vespucci.
1513. Florida was discovered by De Leon.*
1520. Carolina was visited by De Ayllon.
1521. Mexico was conquered by Cortez.
1524. The coast of North America was explored by Verrazzani.
1528. The conquest of Florida was undertaken by Narvaez.
1534. The St. Lawrence was discovered by Cartier.
1541. The Mississippi was discovered by De Soto.
1562. The Huguenots began a settlement at Port Royal.
1564. The Huguenots began a settlement in Florida.

---

MAP QUESTIONS.—(See Map, p. 53.) What large bay is on the East of Virginia? Into what body of water does the James River flow? Where is Jamestown? Where are the Bermuda Islands? (See Map, p. 8.)

**28.** What attempt at settlement did the Plymouth Company make? What caused the failure of the attempt?

**29.** Where did the London Company design to plant a colony? Did they do so? Why not? Where did they make a settlement?

* Buckingham Smith, in his History of Florida, says that the discovery took place in 1513. De Leon's diary gives Easter Sunday, March 27th, as the date of the discovery, which agrees with the year 1513. In 1512. Easter Sunday came in April.

Digitized by Google

1565. St. Augustine was settled by the Spaniards.
1584. The coast of Carolina was explored by Amidas and Barlow.
1585. The first attempt was made to form a settlement at Roanoke.
1587. Second attempt was made to form a settlement at Roanoke.
1602. Cape Cod was discovered by Gosnold.
1603. The New England coast was explored by Pring.
1605. Port Royal, Nova Scotia, was settled by the French.
1606. The London and Plymouth Companies received charters.
1607. The Plymouth Co. began a settlement on the Kennebec.
Jamestown was settled by the London Company.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS.


| | PAGE |
|---|---|
| 1. Give an account of Columbus and his discoveries | 9, 10 |
| 2. Give an account of the Cabots and their two voyages | 10 |
| 3. Give an account of the two voyages made by Vespucci | 10 |
| 4. Give an account of De Leon's two expeditions to Florida | 11 |
| 5. Give an account of De Ayllon's two expeditions to Carolina | 11 |
| 6. Of Narvaez's expedition (12).—7. Of De Soto's expedition | 12 |
| 8. Of Verrazzani's expeditions (12, 13).—9. Of Cartier's expeditions | 13 |
| 10. Give an account of the Huguenot settlement at Port Royal entrance | 13 |
| 11. Of the Huguenot settlement on the St. John's River | 13, 14 |
| 12. Of Gilbert's expedition to Newfoundland, and his fate | 14 |
| 13. Of the voyage made by Amidas and Barlow | 14 |
| 14. Of Raleigh's two attempts to settle Roanoke Island | 15 |
| 15. Of Gosnold's expedition and discovery in 1602 | 15 |
| 16. Of two voyages made by Pring to New England | 15 |
| 17. What grants of land did King James make in 1606? | 15, 16 |
| 18. What were the exact limits of the two regions thus granted? *Ans.* North Virginia extended from the 41st to the 45th degree of north latitude; and South Virginia, from the 34th to the 38th degree. | |
| 19. Give an account of the undertaking made by the Plymouth Company | 16 |
| 20. Give an account of the success of the London Company in 1607 | 16 |
| 21. Name, in order, twelve important events from 1492 to 1541 | 16 |
| 22. Name, in order, twelve important events from 1541 to 1607 | 16, 17 |
| 23. Name six of the early navigators who sailed in the interests of Spain | 9-17 |
| 24. Name four of the early navigators who sailed in the interests of France | 9-17 |
| 25. Name eleven of the early navigators who sailed in the interests of England. | 9-17 |
| 26 By whom was the southwest passage to Asia discovered? *Ans.* By Ferdinand Magellan, who sailed through the strait which bears his name, in 1520. At the Philippine Islands, in a contest with the natives, he was killed; but one of his vessels reached Spain by way of the Cape of Good Hope, thus making the first voyage around the globe. | |
| 27. Had the Pacific Ocean been previously discovered? *Ans.* In 1513, Bal-bo'-a, while crossing the Isthmus of Darien, gained the summit of a mountain, from which he discovered the Pacific Ocean. (See Note 5, end of Section.) | |


NOTE.—"It must be recollected that the name of Florida then (1530) designated a vast extent of country, stretching from the Gulf of Mexico, northwestwardly, towards unknown regions."—*Fairbanks's History of Florida.*

Digitized by Google

## SPANISH.

**Columbus** discovered all the large islands of the West Indies, besides a number of the small ones. He also discovered South America (1498) and explored the coast of Darien (1503).

**Ponce de Leon** discovered Florida and explored its coast (1513).

**Balboa,** while crossing the isthmus of Darien, discovered the Pacific Ocean, and called it the South Sea (1513). (Note 5, end of sec.)

**Cordova** explored the northern coast of Yucatan (1517).

**Magellan** sailed around South America to the Pacific (1520); and westward to the Philippine Islands, where he was killed in a contest with the natives. One of his vessels continued the voyage, thus making the first circumnavigation of the earth (1522).

**De Ayllon** made two expeditions to Carolina (1520 and 1524).

**Cortez** sailed to Mexico (1519) and conquered it (1521).

**Narvaez** explored the interior of Florida (1528).

**De Soto** explored a large part of the country from Florida to a point several hundred miles west of the Mississippi (1539 to 1542).

## ENGLISH.

**The Cabots** discovered Labrador (1497); and Sebastian Cabot, in a second voyage, sailed along the coast from Labrador to Chesapeake Bay (1498).

**Drake** sailed along the coast of California (1579).

**Gilbert** made a voyage to Newfoundland (1583).

**Raleigh** sent an expedition to North Carolina (1584); and made two attempts to found a colony (1585, 1587).

**Gosnold** explored the coast of Massachusetts (1602).

**Pring** explored the coast of New England (1603).

## FRENCH.

**Verrazzani** explored the coast from Carolina to Newfoundland, being the first European to enter the harbor of New York (1524).

**Cartier** discovered the St. Lawrence (1534), and, in a second voyage, sailed up the river as far as Montreal (1535).

## DUTCH.

**Hudson** sailed up the Hudson River as far as Albany (1609).

The western coast of North America was first explored by the Spaniards. Expeditions sent by Cortez examined the California peninsula. Alarçon (*ah-lar'-son*), sent by the governor of Mexico, in 1540 ascended the Colorado River beyond the Gila (*he'-lah*); and Coronado (*ko-ro-nah'-do*), also sent, at the same time, wandered for three years over the regions now known as Arizona, New Mexico, Colorado, Utah, and Nevada (1540–1543). In 1542, Cabrillo (*cab-reel'-yo*), commanding two vessels, sent by the Mexican governor, examined the coast as far as the northern limits of San Francisco Bay; but, dying, his pilot, Fer-re'-lo, next year continued the exploration as far north, probably, as the latitude of 43 degrees.

Digitized by Google

## MODEL OF A DIAGRAM FOR A WRITTEN ANALYSIS.

TOPIC—COLUMBUS, HIS VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES.

(See pages 9 and 10; also the answer to question 34, Appendix, p. 65.)

Columbus—His Voyages and Discoveries.

- **His Early Life.**
  - Born at Genoa.
  - Passed much time
    - On the Mediterranean and west coast of Africa.
  - Made a voyage toward Greenland.
- **His Theory.**
  - The route to India.
  - Shape of the earth.
  - Conclusion regarding India.
- **Efforts for Aid.**
  - To the republic of Genoa.
  - To the monarchs of England and Portugal.
  - To Isabella, by whom he was aided.
- **Voyages and Discoveries.**
  - 1st Voy.
    - Sailed with three vessels.
    - Voyage lasted ten weeks.
    - Discovered San Salvador.
  - 2d.
    - Discovered other islands between North and South America.
  - 3d.
    - Discovered South America.
    - (Was sent back to Spain in irons.)
  - 4th.
    - Examined the coast of Darien.
- **Death.** Died in Spain, at the age of seventy.

---

**Topics.**—The Cabots, their voyages and discoveries.—Vespucci's voyages and their consequences.—De Leon and his two voyages to Florida.—Narvaez's expedition and its consequences.—De Soto and his expedition.—Verrazzani and his explorations.—Cartier and his two voyages.—The Huguenots and their settlements.—Gilbert and his expedition to Newfoundland.—Raleigh and the three expeditions sent by him.—Gosnold in Massachusetts and Virginia. Spanish discoveries and explorations.—English.—French.

---

MARCO POLO.—The first and most extensive traveler among the Eastern nations was Marco Polo, a Venetian, who passed seventeen years in the service of the Khan of Tartary, during which he visited the chief countries and cities of Eastern Asia, among them Japan, the existence of which was not previously known. He returned to Venice in 1295; and subsequently a very interesting account of his travels was published, which had a wonderful effect in encouraging geographical research. It led to the two great discoveries: of America, by Columbus; and the Cape of Good Hope, by the Portuguese.

Digitized by Google

**1. Columbus in Chains.**—While Columbus, during his third voyage in 1498, was making discoveries in the New World, his enemies in Spain "artfully endeavored to undermine his credit with his sovereign," by circulating false reports about his integrity and loyalty. At last "the queen acquiesced in sending out a commission to investigate the affairs of the colony (Hispaniola). The person appointed to this delicate trust was Don Francisco de Rob-a-dil'la. . . . . From the very first, Robadilla regarded Columbus in the light of a convicted criminal, on whom it was his business to execute the sentence of the law. . . . . Accordingly, on his arrival at the island, he commanded the admiral to appear before him, and without affecting the forms of a legal inquiry, at once caused him to be manacled and thrown into prison. Columbus submitted without the least show of resistance, displaying in this sad reverse that magnanimity of soul which would have touched the heart of a generous adversary. Robadilla caused the accusation to be sent back to Spain with the admiral, whom he commanded to be kept strictly in irons during the passage. . . . . So monstrous an outrage shocked the minds of even those most prejudiced against Columbus; and none partook of the general indignation more strongly than Ferdinand and Isabella. They sent to Cadiz without an instant's delay, and commanded the admiral to be released from his ignominious fetters."—*Prescott's Ferdinand and Isabella.*

**2. Burial of De Soto** (p. 12, ¶ 14).—"They buried him in the dead of night, with sentinels posted to keep the natives at a distance. The place chosen for the sepulchre was one of many pits, broad and deep; but, with all their precautions, they soon found out that the Indians suspected not only the death of the governor, but the place where he lay buried; for, in passing by the pit, they would stop, look round attentively on all sides, talk with one another, and make signs with their chins and their eyes toward the spot where the body was interred. The Spaniards perceiving this, determined to disinter the body and deposit it in the mid-channel of the Mississippi. As there was no stone in the neighborhood wherewith to sink it, they cut down an evergreen oak, and made an excavation in one side, of the size of a man. On the following night, with all the silence possible, they disinterred the body, and placed it in the trunk of the oak, nailing planks over the aperture. The rustic coffin was then conveyed to the center of the river, where, in presence of priests and cavaliers, it was committed to the stream, and they beheld it sink to the bottom, shedding many tears over this second funeral rite, and commending anew the soul of the good cavalier to heaven."—*Theo. Irving's Conquest of Florida.*

**3. Verrazzani off the Coast of Carolina** (p. 12, ¶ 15).—"What manner of men were the naked, swarthy, befeathered crew, running like deer along the border of the sea, or screeching welcome from the strand? The French rowed towards the shore for a supply of water. The surf ran high; they could not land; but an adventurous young sailor leaped overboard, and swam towards the crowd with a gift of beads and trinkets. His heart failed him as he drew near; he flung his gift among them, turned, and struck out for the boat. The surf dashed him back, flinging him with violence on the beach among the recipients of his bounty, who seized him by his arms and legs, and, while he called lustily for aid, answered him with hideous outcries designed to allay his terrors. Next they kindled a great fire—doubtless to roast and devour him before the eyes of his comrades, gazing in horror from their boat. On the contrary, they carefully warmed him, and were trying to dry his clothes, when, recovering from his bewilderment, he betrayed a strong desire to escape to his friends; whereupon, 'with great love, clasping him fast about, with many embracings,' they led him to the shore, and stood watching till he had reached the boat."—*Parkman's Pioneers of France in the New World.*

Digitized by Google

**4. The Lost Colony of Roanoke** (p. 15, ¶ 24). "White found the island of Roanoke a desert (1590). As he approached the island, he sounded a signal trumpet, but no answer was heard to disturb the melancholy stillness that brooded over the deserted spot. What had become of the wretched colonists? No man may with certainty say; for all that White found to indicate their fate was a high post bearing on it the letters CRO; and, at the former site of their village, he found a tree which had been deprived of its bark and bore, in well-cut characters, the word CROATAN. . . . . Thus ended the effort to find the lost colony, and they were never heard of. That they went to Croatan (further south), where the natives were friendly, is almost certain; that they became gradually incorporated with them is probable from the testimony of a historian who lived in North Carolina and wrote in 1714: 'The Hatteras Indians, who lived on Roanoke island, or much frequented it, tell us,' says he, 'that several of their ancestors were white people and could talk in a book, as we do. The truth of this is confirmed by gray eyes being found frequently amongst those Indians, a circumstance which does not occur in any other tribe.' "—*Hawks's History of North Carolina.*

**5. Discovery of the Pacific** (p. 17).—"A little before Vas'-co Nuñ'-ez de Balboa reached the height, the Indians informed him of his near approach to the sea (1515). It was a sight in beholding which, for the first time, any man would wish to be alone. He bade his men sit down while he ascended; and then, in solitude, looked down upon the vast Pacific—the first man of the Old World, so far as we know, who had done so. Falling on his knees, he gave thanks to God for the favor shown him, in his being permitted to discover the Sea of the South." Having taken "formal possession, on behalf of the kings of Castile, of the sea and all that was in it," by "cutting down trees, forming crosses, and heaping up stones, he descended with difficulty to the shore, accompanied by eighty of his men. He entered the sea up to his thighs, having his sword on, and with his shield in his hand. Then he called the bystanders to witness how he touched with his person and took possession of this sea for the kings of Castile."—*Helps's Spanish Conquests in America.*

**6. Marquette and Jolliet descending the Mississippi** (p. 6, ¶ 8).—"Then launching on the broad Wisconsin, they sailed slowly down its current amid its vine-clad hills, and its countless sand-bars. No sound broke the stillness, no human form appeared, and, at last, after sailing seven days, on the 17th of June (1673), they happily glided into the great river (the Mississippi). Joy that could find no utterance in words, filled the grateful heart of Marquette. The broad river of the Conception, as he named it, now lay before them, stretching away hundreds of miles to an unknown sea. Soon all was new; mountain and forest had glided away; the islands, with their groves of cottonwood, became more frequent; and moose and deer browsed on the plains; strange animals were seen traversing the river, and monstrous fish appeared in its waters. Descending still further, they came to the land of the bison, which, with the turkey, became sole tenant of the wilderness. At last, they descried foot-prints on the shore. They now took heart, and Jolliet and the missionary, leaving their five men in the canoes, followed the beaten path to discover who the tribe might be. They traveled on in silence almost to the cabin doors, when they halted, and with a loud halloa, proclaimed their coming. Roused by the cry, the village poured forth its motley group. All was silence, and Marquette asked, 'Who are you?' 'We are Illinois,' was the answer, which sent a thrill to the heart of Marquette. The Illinois missionary was at last amid the children of that tribe which he had so long, so tenderly yearned to see."—*Shea's Discovery and Exploration of the Mississippi Valley.* (Jolliet's name is so spelled by Shea.)

Digitized by Google

**7. The Northmen's Discovery of America** (p. 5, ¶ 2).—It is claimed for the Northmen (also called Norsemen) that "Bjarne (*byär'-ne*) Her'-julf-son, in the year 986, sailed from Norway for Iceland, but, owing to a 'north-wind and fog that lasted many days,' his ship was driven to the south as far as 'the present Nantucket,' and thus he 'was the first European whose eyes beheld any part of the American Continent;' but 'he did not go ashore.' A few years later, Leif (*life*) Er-'ik-son, having 'bought Bjarne's ship, set sail with a good crew of thirty-five men, and found the lands just as Bjarne had described them.' * * He called the country Vinland, and the cause of this was the following interesting incident: There was a German in Leif Erikson's party, by name Tyrker (*tur'-ker*). He was a prisoner of war, but had become Leif's special favorite. He was missing one day after they came from an exploring expedition. Leif became very anxious about Tyrker, and, fearing that he might be killed by wild beasts or by Indians, went out with a few men to search for him. Toward evening he was found coming home, but in a very excited state of mind. The cause of his excitement was some fruit which he had found, and which he held up in his hands, shouting: 'Weintrauben! Weintrauben!' The sight and taste of this fruit, to which he had been accustomed in his own native land, had excited him to such an extent that he seemed drunk, and for some time he would do nothing but laugh, devour grapes, and talk German, which language our Norse discoverers did not understand. At last he spoke Norse, and explained that he, to his great joy and surprise, had found vines and grapes in great abundance. * * Here is, then, a short account of the first expedition to America. It took place in the year 1000, and Leif Erikson was the first pale-faced man who planted his feet on the American Continent."—*B. B. Anderson's America Not Discovered by Columbus.*

**8. The Fountain of Youth—The Story believed in Europe** (p. 11, ¶ 7).—"Among the islands north of Hispaniola (Hayti) there is one, as they say who have searched the same, in the which is a continued spring of running water, of such marvellous virtue that the water thereof being drunk, perhaps with some diet, maketh old men young again. And here I must make protestations to your Holiness not to think this to be said lightly or rashly, for they have so spread this rumor for a truth throughout all the court (of Spain), that not only all the people, but also many of them whom wisdom or fortune had divided from the common sort, think it to be true; but, if you ask my opinion herein, I will answer that I will not attribute so great power to nature, but that God hath no less reserved this prerogative to himself than to search the hearts of men."—*Peter Martyr (to Leo X., then Bishop of Rome).*

**9. Civilization in Yucatan** (p. 11, ¶ 11).—"An hidalgo of Cuba, named Hernandez de Cordova, sailed with three vessels on an expedition to one of the neighboring Bahama Islands, in quest of Indian slaves. He encountered a succession of heavy gales that drove him far out of his course, and, at the end of three weeks, he found himself on a strange and unknown coast. * * Cordova landed on the north-eastern end of the peninsula at Cape Catoche (*kah-to'-chay*). He was astonished at the size and solid materials of the buildings, constructed of stone and lime, so different from the frail tenements of reeds and rushes which formed the habitations of the islanders. He was struck, also, with the higher cultivation of the soil, and with the delicate texture of the cotton garments and gold ornaments of the natives. Everything indicated a civilization far superior to any thing he had before witnessed in the New World."—*Prescott's Conquest of Mexico.*

**10. Execution of Sir Walter Raleigh** (pp. 14, 15; also Topic 147, Ap. p. 73).—Approaching the edge of the scaffold and kneeling down, "he

Digitized by Google

addressed himself to prayer, and, in a very earnest manner, begged for the prayers of all who heard him." When he arose, he examined the block and fitted himself to it. Finding it as he would have it, he stood up once more. "The executioner then kneeled to him for the forgiveness of his office. Raleigh placed both his hands on the man's shoulders, and assured him that he forgave him with all his heart. 'Show me the axe,' Raleigh added; but, as the executioner hesitated, he had to repeat the request. Touching its edge with his finger, and then kissing the blade, he said: 'This gives me no fear. It is a sharp and fair medicine to cure me of all my diseases.' Presently he added: 'When I stretch forth my hands, despatch me.' Once more he turned to the right and to the left, and said again to the people: 'Give me heartily your prayers.' Then Raleigh knelt, finally, for his parting prayer, and, laying his neck on the block, awaited the death-stroke that was to follow. There was something, it seems, in the scene that moved the headsman beyond the wont of his craft, for when Raleigh extended his hands, the man forbore to strike. Raleigh stretched forth his hands again. The man still hesitated. 'What dost thou fear?' said Raleigh. 'Strike, man, strike!' So he spake; but it was noticed that his prostrate body remained as motionless as a statue. His lips were seen to move in prayer." At two blows his head was severed from his body, and thus, at the age of sixty-six, was put to death a man, who, take him for all in all, had in his day but few equals.—*Edwards's Life of Sir Walter Raleigh.*

**11. Drake's Voyage around the World** (p. 15, ¶ 24).—Under the patronage of Queen Elizabeth, Drake sailed from England, Dec. 13, 1577, with five small vessels, ostensibly for a voyage to Egypt, but really to cruise against the dominions and subjects of Spain. For some months he roved about the Atlantic without making any prize of value. Passing through the Strait of Magellan, though not without losing one of his vessels, and, shortly after, two others, he was left with only a schooner of a hundred tons burden. Notwithstanding these disheartening occurrences, Drake did not hesitate to proceed. He pillaged the Spanish settlements of Peru, Chili, and Mexico, and, having filled his vessel with the precious spoils, became anxious to return to England. Fearing, however, that the Spaniards would intercept him if he attempted to repass Magellan's Strait, he resolved to seek a northern route to the Atlantic. Repelled by the severe cold, he sailed along the American coast southward to a bay (either San Francisco or Bodega, it is not certain which). In this bay the English remained five weeks. The natives, "having their houses close by the water's side," at first exhibited signs of hostility; but they were soon conciliated by the kind and forbearing conduct of the strangers; and their respect for Drake increased so that, when they saw him about to depart, they earnestly implored him to continue among them as their king. "Whereupon, in the name and to the use of her Majesty, Queen Elizabeth, he took the crown, scepter, and dignity of the country into his own hands, wishing that the riches and treasure thereof might be so conveniently transported, for the enriching her kingdom at home." The coronation accordingly took place, with most ludicrous solemnities, and Drake bestowed on his dominions the name of *New Albion*. On the 22d of July, 1579, he took leave of his worthy subjects, to their great regret, and, sailing directly across the Pacific, and thence through the Indian Seas, and around the Cape of Good Hope, reached England on the 26th of September, 1580, thus accomplishing the second circumnavigation of the world. (It was the first ever performed by one crew in one vessel). Elizabeth received Drake with favor, knighted him, and partook of a banquet on board of his vessel.—*Greenhow's History of Oregon and California* (Abridged).

Digitized by Google

## SECTION II.

### *Colonial History.*

FROM THE SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA, IN 1607, TO THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR, IN 1754.

## VIRGINIA.

**1.** The first settlement in Virginia, as previously stated, was made at Jamestown, in 1607, under the direction of the London Company. The colony was governed under a charter granted by James I., the supreme government being vested in a council resident in England, and the local government in a colonial council of seven persons, one of whom was president.*

**2.** At first the colony did not prosper. The scarcity of provisions, the hostility of the natives, the want of industrial habits among the settlers, and sickness, which carried to the grave fifty men in less than four months, proved nearly fatal to the enterprise. Among those who died was Bartholomew Gosnold. (See p. 15, ¶ 25.)

**3.** Wingfield, the president of the council, having embezzled the public stores and become concerned in a plot to abandon the settlement, was expelled from office. He was succeeded by Ratcliffe; but, in consequence of the inefficiency of the latter, the management of affairs fell into the hands of Captain John Smith, the most enterprising and sagacious man in the colony.

**4.** Several months later, upon the actual deposition of

1. Where was the first settlement made in Virginia? Who made it? When was Jamestown settled? How was the colony governed?
2. Why did not the colony prosper at first? What is said of Gosnold?
3. Who was Wingfield? What is said of him? Who was Ratcliffe? What is said of him? What, of Smith?
4. What further is said of Smith? Where is Chesapeake Bay? (Map, p. 53.) The James River?

* "The names of the provincial council were not communicated to the adventurers when they departed from England; but the commission which contained them was inclosed in a sealed box, which was directed to be opened within twenty-four hours after their arrival on the coast of Virginia, when the councilors were to be installed in their office and to elect their own president."—*Grahame's Colonial History of the United States.*

Digitized by Google

Ratcliffe, Smith was formally elected in his place. To the efforts of the new president the salvation of the infant colony was owing. He explored Chesapeake Bay, as well as the James and other rivers, and often returned with supplies of corn. (Read Note 7, end of Section.)

**5.** It is related that Smith, while on one of his expeditions, was surprised by a large body of Indians, and, after a desperate struggle, was captured, and conducted to Powhatan (*pow-hat-tan'*), the principal chief. The warriors met in council, so goes the story, and determined that Smith should be put to death.

**6.** Accordingly he was bound, and his head placed upon a stone; but, just as the savages were raising their clubs to dash out his brains, Po-ca-hon'-tas, a daughter of Powhatan, rushed forward, clasped the captive's head in her arms, and begged that his life might be saved. It is further related that the conduct of Pocahontas touched her father's heart, and the sentence was revoked. Recent investigations, however, render it nearly certain that no such event ever took place.*

**7.** The London Company, not having realized their expectations of profit from the Jamestown colony, sought and obtained a second charter, in 1609, and conferred upon Lord Delaware, a nobleman distinguished for his virtues, the appointment of governor for life. Three commissioners, Newport, Gates, and Somers (*sum'-erz*), who had been appointed to administer the affairs of the colony till the arrival of Delaware, were sent to America with nine vessels, and more than five hundred emigrants.

---

**5.** Who was Powhatan? The capture of Smith? What further is stated? **6.** The sentence. Of the part taken by Pocahontas. The result. The whole story. **7.** When did the London Company get a second charter? Why did they ask for it? Who was Lord Delaware? What appointment was given him? What is stated of three commissioners?

---

* "The story was published, for the first time, in 1622, by Smith, in his pamphlet entitled '*New England's Trials.*' This was *five years after the death of Pocahontas*, no allusion, in letter, or book, or printed statement of any kind, having previously been made in relation to the story." Palfrey says: "Smith, in the latter part of his life, had fallen into the hands of hack-writers, who adapted his story for popular effect."

Digitized by Google

**8.** While on the passage a severe storm dispersed the fleet. One of the vessels (that bearing the commissioners) was wrecked on the Ber-mu'-da Islands, and another foundered; the others reached the James River in safety. Considering that no person had yet arrived to supersede him, Smith maintained his position as president, until, having been severely injured by an explosion of gunpowder, he returned to England for surgical aid. (P.23, ¶ 21.)*

**9.** No sooner had Smith fairly departed than the colonists gave themselves up to idleness and vice. The Indians became hostile, the horrors of famine ensued, and in less than six months not more than sixty of the five hundred persons whom he had left were alive. This period, extending over the first half of 1610, was long remembered as the "starving time."

**10.** In consequence of their destitution and gloomy prospects, the colonists determined to seek safety among the English fishermen at Newfoundland. In four vessels they embarked; but, just as they were drawing near the mouth of the river, Lord Delaware appeared with emigrants and supplies, and persuaded them to return. The new administration was a wise one, and under it the colony prospered. In consequence, however, of ill health, Delaware was soon compelled to return to England. He was succeeded in office by Sir Thomas Gates.

**11.** New settlements were made in the vicinity of Jamestown; and, notwithstanding the laws were harsh and strict, the colony continued to prosper. With a view to greater privileges, the London Company obtained

---

**8.** What misfortune befell them? Where are the Bermudas? (p. 8.) Why did Smith go to England? (The three commissioners afterward reached Virginia.)

**9.** How did the colonists behave after Smith left them? What were the consequences? What further is stated?

**10.** What did the colonists determine upon? Why did they so determine? Did they carry out their plan? Why not? What is said of Lord Delaware's administration? Why did he return to England? Who succeeded him in office?

**11.** When did the London Company receive their third charter? What remarkable feature did the new charter contain?

* See Appendix, page 73, topic 149.

Digitized by Google

their third charter, in 1612. A remarkable feature of the new charter allowed the company to hold meetings for the transaction of business, thus giving to that body a democratic form of government.

**12.** Next year occurred the marriage of Pocahontas to a young Englishman, named John Rolfe (*rolf*). This event proved of great public importance, as it had the effect of establishing a confirmed peace with Powhatan. Three years after her marriage, Pocahontas accompanied her husband to England, where she was an object of interest to all classes of citizens, and was presented at Court. While preparing to return to her native land, she suddenly died, leaving a son, from whom are descended some well-known families in Virginia. (Note 8, end of Sec.)

**13.** The commencement of negro slavery in the English colonies dates from its introduction into Virginia, in 1619, when a Dutch trading-vessel entered the James River with negroes, twenty of whom were landed and sold into perpetual slavery.* During the next year, about a hundred women of good reputation arrived from England, and were married to the planters, each man giving for his wife one hundred and twenty pounds of tobacco, the price of her passage to America. The culture of cotton was begun the next year.

**14.** After the marriage of Pocahontas, until the death of her father, peaceful relations existed between the settlers and the Indians; but, in 1622, Powhatan's successor commenced a bloody war, in one day massacring about three hundred and fifty men, women, and children. The colonists retaliated, slaughtering great numbers of the enemy. In an attack made upon the settlements, in

**12.** What event occurred in 1613? Of what advantage did it prove to the colonists? What further can you state of Pocahontas?

**13.** When did negro slavery commence in this country? State the circumstances. What event took place in 1620? In 1621?

**14.** What occurred in 1622? Give an account of what followed.

* See Appendix, page 63, topic 17.

Digitized by Google

1644, about three hundred persons were killed. Hostilities continued until 1646, when a treaty was made.

**15.** The affairs of the colony caused frequent meetings of the London Company, which were largely attended. The freedom of speech manifested on such occasions displeased the king, James I., and, under the pretext that the disasters to the colony were the result of bad government, he dissolved the company. Thus Virginia became, in 1624, a royal province.

**16.** The "Navigation Act," passed by Parliament in 1651, secured to English shipping the monopoly of the carrying trade with England. Though not at first enforced against Virginia, yet after its re-enactment, in 1660, with new provisions, it was vigorously executed, notwithstanding the remonstrances of the people. (See note, p. 65.)

**17.** The colonists, in consequence, became dissatisfied; and when, in 1673, Charles II. ceded to Lord Culpepper and the Earl of Arlington "all the dominion of land and water called Virginia," for the term of thirty-one years, their dissatisfaction was greatly increased.

**18.** Besides, they were restricted in the elective franchise, were required to conform to the doctrines and rituals of the Church of England, and the taxes levied were unequal and oppressive. A spirit of rebellion, in consequence, broke out among the "common people," who wanted but an excuse for appearing in arms; and it was soon found in an invasion made by the Susquehanna Indians. (Read Note 6, end of Section.)

**19.** The measures for defence adopted by Berkeley, the governor, being inefficient, the people demanded permis-

15. When did Virginia become a royal province? How was the change brought about?

16. When was the "Navigation Act" passed? What feature of it is mentioned? What is said of the enforcement of the act?

17. What made the colonists dissatisfied? What increased their dissatisfaction?

18. What restriction is mentioned? What requirement? What oppression? What was the consequence?

Digitized by Google

sion to arm and protect themselves. This being refused, a struggle for popular liberty broke out in 1676, known as BACON'S REBELLION. Five hundred men under arms, with Nathaniel Bacon as leader, marched against the Indians, whom they defeated. The colonists recovered for a time the rights which they formerly enjoyed; but Bacon dying, Berkeley caused twenty-two of the insurgents to be hung; and fines, imprisonments, and confiscations disgraced the rest of his administration. (Ap., p. 63.)*

**20.** Upon his recall by the king, in 1677, Virginia became a proprietary government, with Culpepper as governor. Culpepper ruled till 1684, when, because of his mismanagement, the king revoked the grant made in 1673, and deprived him of his office. Virginia then became a royal province again, and so remained till the Revolution. (See Appendix, p. 75, topic 176.)

## MASSACHUSETTS.

### FROM ITS SETTLEMENT, IN 1620, TO THE UNION OF NEW ENGLAND COLONIES, IN 1643.

**21.** Captain Smith, who had performed so creditable a part in the settlement of Virginia, set sail from London in 1614, for the purpose of trade and discovery in America. He examined the shores from the Penobscot River to Cape Cod, and prepared a map of the country, to which he gave the name of New England. (App., p. 76, top. 195.)

**19.** Who was Berkeley? What demand did the people make? Why did they make it? How did Berkeley treat their demand? The consequence? Who was Bacon? What further can you say of him? Of Berkeley?

**20.** When was Berkeley recalled? What, then, did Virginia become? What further history of Virginia can you give?

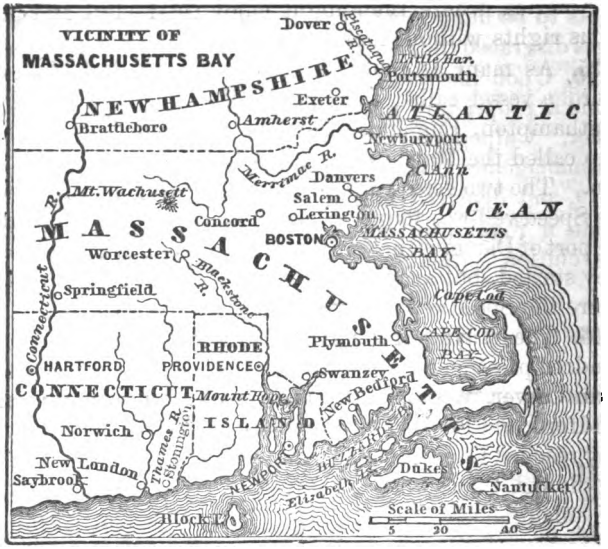
**21.** What explorations did Captain Smith make in 1614? Where had Smith previously made explorations? How did New England get its name?

* "I find no vestiges of the ancient town (Jamestown) except the ruins of a church-steeple and a disordered group of old tombstones. The ruin of the steeple is about thirty feet high, and mantled to its very summit with ivy."—*Wirt's Life of Patrick Henry.*

Digitized by Google

**22.** The original Plymouth Company having been superseded by another, called the Council of Plymouth, the king, James I., granted to the latter, in 1620, all the territory between the fortieth and forty-eighth parallels of north latitude, extending from the Atlantic to the Pacific.

**23.** It was not, however, under the direction of this company, nor with the aid of the king, that the first per-




manent settlement was made in New England, but by a small band of Pilgrims, dissenters from the Church of England, who had fled from their own country to find an

MAP QUESTIONS.—Where is Cape Cod? Cape Cod Bay? Plymouth? Salem? Boston? Little Harbor? Portsmouth? Dover? Merrimac R.? Penobscot R.? (p. 61.) **22.** What company took the place of the Plymouth Company? What grant was made to the new company? **23.** Who were the Puritans? Who were the Pilgrims? Why did the Pilgrims leave England?

NOTE.—The name *Puritans* was first given to those who, during the reign of Elizabeth, refused to conform to the liturgy and ceremonies of the Church of England, on the ground that the Church required further reformation, abandoning all merely traditional practices and doctrines, and following the "pure word of God." The name was afterward given, in derision, not only to such, but to all who were peculiarly strict and serious in religious matters. The Puritans included several sects, as the Presbyterians, and the Brownists, or Independents, who were opposed alike to Episcopacy and Presbyterianism. The Pilgrim Fathers were of this latter class.

Digitized by Google

asylum from religious persecution. They were known in England as Puritans. (See Note, p. 24.)

**24.** They at first went to Amsterdam, in Holland, whence they removed to Leyden (*lī'den*). At Leyden they lived eleven years in great harmony, under the pastoral care of John Robinson; but, from various causes, they became dissatisfied with their residence, and desired to plant a colony in America, where they might enjoy their civil and religious rights without molestation.

**25.** As many as could be accommodated, embarked on board a vessel called the Speedwell. The ship sailed to Southampton, England, where she was joined by another ship called the Mayflower, with other Pilgrims from London. The two vessels set sail, but had not gone far before the Speedwell was found to need repairs, and they entered the port of Dartmouth (*dart'-muth*), England. A second time they started, but again put back—this time to Plymouth, where the Speedwell was abandoned as unseaworthy.

**26.** The Mayflower finally sailed alone, with about one hundred passengers*, the most distinguished of whom were John Carver, William Brewster, Miles Standish, William Bradford, and Edward Winslow. After a boisterous passage, they reached Cape Cod Bay; and there, in the cabin of the Mayflower, they signed a compact for their government, and unanimously elected Carver governor for one year.

**27.** Several days were spent in searching for a favorable locality. At length, on the 21st of December, 1620,

* The most of our knowledge of the Mayflower's passengers is derived from the "History of Plymouth Plantation," written by William Bradford, the second governor of the colony. When the British army retreated from Boston, in 1776, this history, then in manuscript, was, it is supposed, carried away from the tower of the Old South Church. After it had been in manuscript more than two hundred years, it was discovered in the Fulham Library, England. Through the efforts of Mr. Charles Deane, acting for the Massachusetts Historical Society, "an exact copy" was made, and, in the following year (1856), was published by the Society. The list of the Mayflower's passengers given by Bradford, including hired men and servants distinct from the ship's crew, numbers 104; but this includes one that died at sea, one born at sea, and another (Peregrine White, the first child of English parents born in New England), who was born on board, but after the vessel arrived. According, then, to Bradford's list, the Mayflower arrived in Cape Cod Harbor with 102 passengers.

**24.** To what place did they first go? Where next did they go? How long did they live in Leyden? Why did they leave? What did they desire? **25.** In what vessel did the Pilgrims sail from Leyden? What took place at Southampton? At Dartmouth? At Plymouth? **26.** What finally took place? Name five of the Mayflower's passengers. What bay did they reach? Where is that bay? (P. 24.) Compact? Where were the Pilgrims then? The first governor?

Digitized by Google

they landed at a place which they called Plymouth, in memory of the hospitalities which had been bestowed upon them at the last English port from which they had sailed.* The winter was severe, and in less than five months nearly half of that Pilgrim band died from the effects of exposure and privations, Carver and his wife being among the number. Bradford was thereupon elected governor, and he continued, during thirty years, to be a prominent man in the colony. (See Topic 195, Ap., p. 76.)

**28.** In 1621, a treaty of friendship was made with Massasoit (*mas-sa-soit'*), chief of the Wampanoags (*wom-pa-nō'-ags*), that was sacredly observed for more than thirty years. Canonicus (*ka-non'-i-kus*), chief of the Narragansetts, kept the colonists in fear for awhile, but the decisive course of Bradford eventually compelled him to sue for peace.

**29.** Meanwhile other influences were at work to extend the range of settlements. A company of persons interested in the fisheries of New England, having purchased a tract of land, sent a hundred persons, under the charge of En'-di-cott. These settled at Salem, in 1628, thus laying the foundation of the Massachusetts Bay Colony. The proprietors soon after obtained a charter from Charles I.

**30.** Accessions were rapidly made to the new colony, and settlements at Charlestown and other places were begun. An important change, by which the government of the colony was transferred to New England, induced men of fortune and education to join the enterprise. About three hundred families, mostly Puritans, under the care of John Winthrop, arrived in 1630, and settled at and near Boston. Winthrop had been appointed governor.

**27.** When did the Pilgrims land? Is the anniversary of that day celebrated? *Ans.* Owing to a mistake in converting the date from old to new style, the 22d is celebrated instead of the 21st. Where did the Pilgrims land? Why did they call the place Plymouth? What is said of their sufferings? Of Bradford?

**28.** Who was Massasoit? What treaty was made? What is said of Canonicus?

**29.** On what enterprise was Endicott sent? With what success?

**30.** Where is Charlestown? (Map, p. 70.) What change in government took place? What was the effect? What took place in 1630?

* See Note, page 50. Also, topic 227, App. p. 82.

Digitized by Google

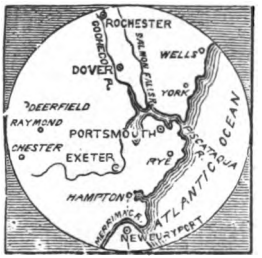



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

**31.** An act of the "General Court" at Boston, in 1636, by which about two thousand dollars were appropriated for the purpose of founding a public school or college, led to the establishment of what is now the oldest literary institution in America. Two years after, the Rev. John Harvard bequeathed upwards of three thousand dollars to it, which, in honor of the benefactor, was named Harvard College. Its location is at Cambridge. (Topic 219, Ap., p. 79.)

## NEW HAMPSHIRE.




PORTSMOUTH AND VICINITY.

**32.** The Council of Plymouth, it will be remembered, obtained, in 1620, a grant of land including the whole of what is now known as New England. Two years after, all that portion of the territory lying between the Merrimac and the Kennebec was ceded by the Council to Sir Ferdinando Gorges (*gor'-jez*) and John Mason. In 1623, the proprietors sent emigrants to America, who settled at Little Harbor, near Portsmouth; and at Dover.

**33.** After these settlements were made, the Rev. John Wheelwright purchased of the Indians the territory between the Merrimac and the Pis-cat'-a-qua, being a part of the same that had been ceded to Gorges and Mason.*

**31.** Where is Cambridge? (Map, p. 70.) What celebrated institution of learning is there? Give the history of its establishment.

**32.** When did the Council of Plymouth obtain their grant? What took place two years after? When was New Hampshire settled? Where?

**33.** By whom was New Hampshire so called? How did Mason come by the territory? Upon what did Wheelwright base his claim? Where is the Kennebec River? (Map, p. 61.)

* A recent writer has cast some doubt upon the validity of the purchase made by Wheelwright, pronouncing his deed from the Indians "a forgery."

Digitized by Google

In the same year (1629) Mason obtained a grant, in his own name, of the country which Wheelwright had purchased, and to this he gave the name of New Hampshire.

**34.** After the death of Mason, a vexatious controversy took place in consequence of the land claims which his heirs made. It was not terminated until the parties to whom the claims were finally conveyed (in 1746) relinquished the occupied portions of the province. New Hampshire was several times connected with Massachusetts, but in 1741 a final separation occurred. (See pp. 33, 34.)

## CONNECTICUT.

**35.** In 1630, the Council of Plymouth ceded the "soil of Connecticut" to the Earl of Warwick; and this grant, the following year, was transferred to Lord Say-and-Seal, Lord Brooke, and others. As the Dutch, at the time, laid claim to the territory thus ceded, they built a fort on the Connecticut, where Hartford now stands, to prevent the English from making any settlements in that section.

**36.** The structure was hardly completed when Captain Holmes (*hōmz*) and a company from Plymouth, sailed up the river. Though menaced by the Dutch, the English passed the fort unhurt, and commenced the settlement of Connecticut, by erecting in that year, 1633, a trading-house at Windsor (*win'-zer*). Important additions were made to this, called the Connecticut Colony, by two large emigrations from Massachusetts—the second conducted by the Rev. Thomas Hooker, in 1636.

**34.** What controversy took place? How ended? Subsequent history of the New Hampshire colony? **35.** What grant was made in 1630? In 1631? Where did the Dutch build a fort? Why did they build it there? **36.** When was Connecticut settled? At what place? By whom? What threat did the Dutch make? What additions were made to the Connecticut colony?

* John T. Mason, great-grandson of John Mason, "the only heir of the original patentee, agreed (in 1738) to release his interest to the Assembly of New Hampshire," but in consequence of delay on the part of the Assembly to ratify the agreement, "he conveyed (Jan. 30, 1746), by deed of sale, for the sum of £1,500, his whole interest to twelve persons. * * These transactions raised a great ferment among the people. Angry and menacing words were plentifully thrown out against the purchasers; but they had prudently taken care to file in the Recorder's office a deed of quit-claim to all the towns which had been settled and granted within the limits of their patent use."—*Belknap's History of New Hampshire.*

Digitized by Google




**37.** Toward the close of 1635, John Winthrop, son of the Massachusetts governor, acting under a commission from the proprietors of Connecticut, built a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut. A colony was also established there, which, in honor of Lord Say-and-Seal, and Lord Brooke, was called Saybrook.

**38.** About this time difficulties with the Indians commenced. The Pequods (*pe'-kwodz*), a warlike tribe inhabiting the southeast part of Connecticut, having committed

MAP QUESTIONS.—Where is Windsor? Saybrook? Hartford? Wethersfield? New Haven? Providence? (p. 24.) What city is on the island of Rhode Island? *Ans.* Newport? In what direction is Newport from Providence? What State is on the south of New Hampshire? (p. 24.) What two on the south of Massachusetts? Describe the Connecticut River.

**37.** When was the Saybrook colony established? Why so called? Origin?

**38.** Who were the Pequods? What united action was taken by the settlers? Why was the action taken? Give the result.

*Hooker's Emigration.*—"There were of the company about one hundred souls. They drove before them numerous herds of cattle; and thus they traversed on foot the pathless forests, advancing hardly ten miles a day through the tangled woods, across the swamps and numerous streams, and over the highlands that separated the several intervening valleys; subsisting, as they slowly wandered along, on the milk of the kine, which browsed on the fresh leaves and early shoots; having no guide through the nearly untrodden wilderness, but the compass, and no pillow for their nightly rest but heaps of stones."—*Bancroft.*

NOTE.—For an account of the founding of Yale College, see topic 219, Appendix, p. 79.

Digitized by Google

many acts of hostility, Hartford, Windsor, and Wethersfield, in 1637, united in declaring war against them. Captain Mason, with a force of colonists and friendly Indians, proceeded against the Pequods, burned their fort and wigwams, killed more than six hundred of their number, and completely broke them up as a tribe.*

**39.** A third colony was established in Connecticut, in 1638, called the New Haven Colony. The land was bought of the Indians; and, under the guidance of Theophilus Eaton and the Rev. John Davenport, a colony, remarkable for the religious spirit that marked its laws, was planted and flourished. (Appendix, p. 65, topic 41.)

**40.** In 1639, the people of Hartford, Windsor, and Wethersfield, finding their settlements beyond the limits of Massachusetts, met at Hartford, and united in forming a government for themselves. The colony of Saybrook maintained its separate existence until 1644. By its annexation in that year to the Connecticut Colony, only two colonies remained, which were united, in 1665, under a liberal royal charter granted by King Charles II., of England. (Read topics 214, 215, Appendix, p. 78.)

**41.** Sir Edmund Andros, who had been made royal governor of New England, in 1687 appeared before the Connecticut Assembly, in session at Hartford, and demanded the surrender of the charter. A discussion at once arose, which was protracted till evening, when the charter was brought in and laid upon the table; but just as Andros was stepping forward to take it, the lights were suddenly extinguished. When the candles were relighted, the document could not be found. It had been carried away and hid in the hollow of a tree. (Appendix, p. 62, topic 6.)

**39.** When was New Haven commenced? Its origin? What further?
**40.** What union took place in 1639? In 1644? In 1665?
**41.** What appointment did Andros receive? What demand? How met?

* "The few that survived, about two hundred, surrendering in despair, were enslaved by the English, or incorporated among the Mohegans and the Narragansetts. There remained not a sannup, nor squaw, not a warrior nor child, of the Pequod name. A nation had disappeared from the family of man."—*Bancroft's U. S.* (Read Note 1, end of Section.)

Digitized by Google

## RHODE ISLAND.

**42.** Rhode Island was settled by Roger Williams, who had been banished from Massachusetts because of his denunciation of the religious intolerance practised there, as well as for certain opinions touching civil matters. The settlement was made in 1636 at Providence, on lands purchased of the Indians, and so called by Williams to commemorate "God's merciful providence to him in his distress." The great freedom in religious matters, and the democratic government of the colony, caused immigrants to flock thither in large numbers.

**43.** In 1638, William Coddington, who had been subjected to religious persecution in Boston, accepted an invitation from Williams, purchased from the Indians the island of Rhode Island, and settled there. Rather than admit a claim of jurisdiction set up by Plymouth, Williams went to England, and obtained a charter whereby the settlements of Rhode Island were united, in 1644, under one government.

**44.** After Charles II. ascended the throne of England, Rhode Island, in 1663, obtained a new charter. When Andros assumed the government of New England, the management of affairs under the charter was, for the time, necessarily suspended; but directly after he was seized and sent to England, as elsewhere stated, the charter became the fundamental law of the colony, and was the only constitution of the State till 1843.* (P. 141, ¶ 25.)

**42.** Why was Roger Williams banished from Massachusetts? Where did he make a settlement? When. Why did he call the place Providence?
**43.** Coddington? Why did Williams go to England? How did he succeed?
**44.** When did Rhode Is. get a new charter? Who granted it? Its history?

NOTE.—"It was in January, 1636, the sternest month of a New England winter, when Roger Williams left his wife and babes in Salem (Mass.), in order to escape the warrant that would have conducted him to the ship then waiting to bear him to England. He went forth an exiled man, to trust his life and fortune to the rough chances of the wilderness that then skirted the colonies of Plymouth and Massachusetts Bay. Seldom has an exile for opinion's sake been driven from a Christian community to encounter more severe necessities, or endure more crushing privations."—*Sparks's American Biography.*

NOTE.—For an account of the capture and destruction of the schooner Gaspee, see topic 218, Appendix, p. 79.

* See Note 13, end of Section.

Digitized by Google

# MASSACHUSETTS.

## FROM THE UNION OF NEW ENGLAND COLONIES, IN 1643, TO "THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR."

**45.** The four colonies, Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven, formed a union in 1643, for mutual protection against the encroachments of the Dutch and French, and for better security against the hostility of the Indians. This union lasted nearly fifty years. Rhode Island was refused admittance into it, because she would not consent to be incorporated with Plymouth, and lose her separate existence.*

**46.** In 1656 a serious trouble commenced, growing out of the arrival in that year of a number of Quakers from England. They had been represented as a people of peculiar opinions and conduct, and consequently they were persecuted. Many were banished, four were executed, and others were whipped or cast into prison. The great severity of the measures at last produced a reaction in public feeling; and, after five years of trouble, the Quakers were allowed to come and enjoy their opinions in peace.†

**47.** KING PHILIP'S WAR.—During the life of Massasoit, the treaty of friendship between him and the people of Plymouth was faithfully kept; but, after his death, Philip, commonly known as King Philip, his son and successor, made war upon the colonists. It became evident to the Indians that the spreading settlements were fast breaking

**45.** What union in 1643? How long did it last? Rhode Island?
**46.** What trouble commenced in 1656? Give an account of it? The end?
**47.** Philip? Evident? What did they see? What other cause of war?

* "The confederation was no less than an act of absolute sovereignty on the part of the contracting states. The first two articles bound together the four colonies and their dependencies under the name of '*The United Colonies of New England*, in a 'firm and perpetual league of friendship and amity for offence and defence, mutual advice and succor, upon all just occasions, both for preserving and propagating the truth and liberties of the Gospel, and for their own mutual safety and welfare.' * * * Of this confederation which 'offers the first example of coalition in colonial story, and showed to party leaders in after times, the advantage of concert,' it was not without apparent reason that an unfriendly historian (Chalmers) remarked, that 'its principles were altogether those of independency, and that it cannot easily be supported by any other.'"—*Palfrey's Hist. of New England.*

† Read Note 9, end of Section.

Digitized by Google

up their hunting-grounds; and they saw, too, in the growing power of the whites, their own inevitable extinction. Besides, they were burning to avenge personal wrongs.

48. Nothing short of a union of the New England tribes for the extermination of the colonists, it was thought, could arrest the tide against them; and Philip, so it was alleged, was the leading spirit in plotting the combination. It is related that a converted Indian, who had been sent as a missionary among his people, was the principal informer against Philip. This man was found murdered. The execution by the whites of three Indians, convicted of the murder, may be considered as the immediate cause of the war.

49. The first attack was made by Philip, in 1675, upon the people of Swan'-zey, as they were returning, one Sunday, from church. Although a treaty of peace had been made with the Narragansetts, they joined in the war against the English. A strong force was sent against the Indians; and, in an immense swamp in the southern part of Rhode Island, they were defeated with great loss. Yet they continued their depredations till the death of Philip, which occurred in 1676, he being shot by one of his own tribe. (Read Note 10, end of Section.)

50. A controversy which had been going on for a number of years, between the heirs of Gorges and Mason and the Massachusetts colony, concerning the ownership of Maine, was, in 1677, decided in favor of the heirs, and Massachusetts then purchased their interest. Three years after, a separation of New Hampshire from Massachusetts

48. How, only, could the Indians look for success? What charge was made against Philip? What was the immediate cause of the war?

49. Where is Swanzey? (Map, p. 24.) What took place there? How did the Narragansetts act? What defeats did the Indians meet? Give the closing history of the war.

50. What controversy was settled in 1677? How was it settled? How did Massachusetts get to own Maine? Which was the first royal province in New England? When was that brought about?

Note.—For an account of the early efforts to provide a currency for the people of Massachusetts, read Note 2, *The Pine-Tree Shilling*, at the end of the Section.



Digitized by Google

having been declared, the former became a royal province—the first in New England.

**51.** The opposition which Massachusetts had shown to the "Navigation Act," and other obnoxious laws of Parliament, displeased the king, Charles II., and he declared her charter void.* His death occurring not long after, his successor, James II., pursued the same arbitrary policy, and, in 1686, deprived Massachusetts of her charter-government. In the same year Andros was appointed royal governor of New England. (See p. 22, ¶ 16.)

**52.** These proceedings on the part of King James rendered him so unpopular, that, when the news of the English Revolution and of his dethronement reached Boston, in 1689, it caused great rejoicing. Andros and his officers, whose tyranny had made them odious to the people, were seized and sent to England, when the New England colonies established their former modes of government.

**53.** KING WILLIAM'S WAR.—James fled to France, and William, Prince of Orange, and Mary, his wife, the eldest daughter of James, were called to the English throne as king and queen of that country. The cause of the fugitive king was espoused by the French monarch; and this, principally, led to a contest between the two powers, known as King William's War, in which the respective colonists became involved.

**54.** An expedition, fitted out by Massachusetts, commanded by Sir William Phipps, captured Port Royal, now Annapolis, and secured a large amount of booty. A second expedition, also commanded by Phipps, for the conquest of Canada, proved a failure. These were the

51. Why did Charles II. declare the Massachusetts charter void? What afterward took place? When was Andros appointed governor?

52. What news reached Boston in 1689? What effect did it have there? Why did it have that effect? What treatment was reserved for Andros?

53. What was the cause of King William's War?

54. Give an account of Phipps's first expedition. Where is Annapolis? (Map, p. 61.) Of his second expedition. How long did the war last? What was the result as regards the ownership of territory?

* See note, p. 65.

Digitized by Google

most important events of the contest in America. The war lasted from 1689 to the peace of Ryswick (*riz'-wick*), in 1697, a period of about eight years. The claims to territory in America remained as before the war.

**55.** SALEM WITCHCRAFT.—During the war, King William, refusing to restore to Massachusetts the charter which James II. had taken away, granted a new one, which united Plymouth, Massachusetts, Maine, and Nova Scotia in a royal government. Upon Phipps was conferred the office of governor (1691).

**56.** One of the first acts of the new governor was the formation, in 1692, of a court to try certain persons who, because of their real or supposed strange conduct, were accused of practising witchcraft. Most of the inhabitants of Salem and vicinity, where the accused parties lived, believed the accusations to be true; and, before the delusion was dispelled, twenty persons were put to death, more than fifty were tortured or frightened into confessing themselves guilty, and many suffered imprisonment. (Read Note 4, end of Section.)

**57.** QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.—Upon the death of James II., which occurred in France, the French monarch acknowledged his son king of England. This tended to produce a spirit of resentment in England, where the crown had previously been settled upon Anne (*an*), the second daughter of James. While the English were making preparations for war, King William died, and Anne became Queen of England.

**58.** The interference of France in the succession to the English crown, in connection with other causes, led

---

55. What appointment was conferred upon Phipps?
56. What act of Phipps is mentioned? What belief prevailed at Salem? Where is Salem? (See Map, p. 24.) Give an account of the "Salem Witchcraft."
57. Where was James II. when he died? What action did the French king take? What effect did his action have? What followed?
58. What was the principal cause of Queen Anne's War? By what name is the war known in Europe? Where is Nova Scotia? (Map, p. 61.)

Digitized by Google

to a war between England on the one side, and France and Spain on the other, which is known in America as Queen Anne's War; but in Europe, is called the War of the Spanish Succession. Hostilities were commenced in 1702.

**59.** The capture of Port Royal, in 1710, by a force from Massachusetts, after an unsuccessful attempt three years before, was the most important event of the war in America. The name of the place was changed to Annapolis, in honor of the English queen, and Acadia was annexed to the British realm. The contest continued about eleven years, being terminated by the treaty of Utrecht (*u-'trekt*), in 1713.

**60.** KING GEORGE'S WAR.—A peace of nearly thirty years followed, which was broken, during the reign of George II., by *King George's War.* This contest had its origin in European disputes, relating, principally, to the kingdom of Austria, and was therefore known in Europe as the *War of the Austrian Succession.*

**61.** War having been declared between England and France in 1744, the colonists soon became involved. The most important event of the struggle in America was the taking of Louisburg (*loo'-is-burg*), a fortress erected by the French, and which, from its strength, was called the *Gibraltar of America.*

**62.** The capture of this place was effected in 1745, by a force, mostly of New England troops, under William Pepperill, aided by an English fleet commanded by Com-

---

**59.** When did the French finally lose Port Royal? What change of name was made? What change in ownership of territory took place? How long did the war last?

**60.** How did King George's War originate? What other name did the war have? Why was it so called?

**61.** When was war declared? What is stated of Louisburg? Where is Louisburg? (See Map, p. 61.)

**62.** When did the English capture it? Give an account of the capture. When did the war end? How did it result as regards ownership of territory? Who, then, owned Louisburg?

Digitized by Google

modore Warren. The contest was terminated by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (*ākes lah sha-pel'*), in 1748, by which all acquisitions of territory, made during the war, were mutually restored. (See p. 54, ¶ 1.)

## NEW YORK.

**63.** Henry Hudson, an English navigator, while sailing in the service of "The Dutch East India Company," in 1609, discovered the river which now bears his name. His object was to find a northwest passage to the Pacific Ocean; in pursuance of which he sailed up the river to the head of ship navigation, and, in a small boat, continued his exploration some miles further.* (Ap., p. 68, top. 12.)

**64.** The Dutch, claiming that Hudson's discoveries gave them a title to the country, in 1614 built a fort on Man-hat'-tan Island. Their claim to territory included the whole region from Cape Cod to the southern shore of Delaware Bay. This became known as New Neth'-erlands, though the name was more generally applied to only that part actually in possession of the Dutch.

**65.** The colonization of the country did not commence until 1623. In that year, under the auspices of a new organization, known as "The Dutch West India Company," two settlements were made—one on Manhattan Island, called New Amsterdam, and the other at Albany, called Fort Orange. The company, to encourage emi-

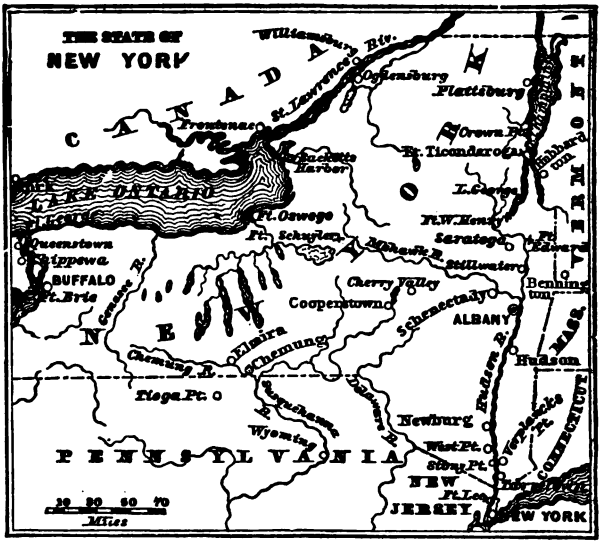
**63.** Who was Henry Hudson? What river did he discover? What was he trying to do when he discovered the river? How much of the river did he explore? Who first discovered the Hudson river? *Ans.* Verrazzani, in 1524.

**64.** What claim to territory did the Dutch make? What was their title to the claim? What name did they give to the territory claimed by them? What States are now included in the territory so claimed? [See Progressive Map, No. 3.] Where did the Dutch build a fort in 1614? By what name is Manhattan Island now generally known? *Ans.* New York Island.

**65.** When did the Dutch begin to colonize New Netherlands? Where were

* On his return to Holland, Hudson stopped at Dartmouth, England.—"When at length the East India directors heard of Hudson's arrival at Dartmouth, they instructed him to return with his vessel to Holland as soon as possible. As he was about complying with their orders early in the following year (1610), he was arbitrarily forbidden to leave his country, by the English authorities, who were jealous of the advantages which the Dutch had gained by reason of Hudson's discoveries while in their service; and the Half Moon (Hudson's vessel) was detained for several months quietly at anchor in Dartmouth harbor."—*Brodhead's Hist. of the State of New York.*

Digitized by Google




gration, offered a large tract of land and certain privileges to every individual who would form a settlement of fifty persons. (Read Note 11, end of Section.)

**66.** The first Dutch governor was Peter Min'-u-its; the second, Wout'-er Van Twil'-ler; the third, Sir William Kieft (*keeft*); and the fourth and last, Peter Stuyvesant (*sti'-ve-sant*).* Kieft, who was haughty and unscrupulous, involved the colony in a strife with the Swedes on the Delaware, and the English on the Connecticut. He also,

settlements made that year? What was Albany then called? What offers were made to induce persons to settle in New Netherlands? **66.** Who was the first Dutch governor of New Netherlands? The second? The third? The fourth? What can you say of Kieft's character? Of his acts?

MAP QUESTIONS.—What country is on the north of New York State? What States on the east? What, on the South? Describe the Hudson River. What is New Amsterdam now called? *Ans.* New York. How is New York city situated? Albany?

* "A better day dawned on New Netherlands, when the brave and honest Stuyvesant, a soldier of experience, and a scholar of some learning, was promoted for his services, and entered on the government of the province. Sad experience dictated a milder system towards the natives; and it was resolved to govern them with lenity."—*Bancroft's History of the United States.*

Digitized by Google

by his inhuman conduct, brought on a disastrous war with the Indians. (Read Note 12, end of Section.)

**67.** The rule of Stuyvesant was vigorous, though often arbitrary. He conciliated the Indians, agreed to a western boundary for Connecticut, and gained by conquest the Swedish territory in Delaware. But a new danger appeared. In 1664, Charles II., of England, disregarding the claims of the Dutch, granted to his brother, the Duke of York, the whole region from the Connecticut River to Delaware Bay; and a fleet, under Colonel Nicolls, was sent to take possession of the country. (P. 45, ¶ 87.)

**68.** When the fleet appeared before New Amsterdam, the people, hoping to enjoy more freedom under English rule, determined at once to surrender; but Stuyvesant held out until the town was actually in possession of the English. Nicolls was the first English governor. The province, as well as New Amsterdam, was called New York; and Fort Orange received the name of Albany. In 1673, during a war between England and Holland, the Dutch regained their former possessions; but after a period of fifteen months, returned them to the English. Andros was then appointed governor*. (Ap., p. 62, top. 6.)

**69.** In 1741 several incendiary fires occurred in the city of New York, and a house was robbed by slaves. Witnesses testified that the negroes had conspired to burn the city, murder the inhabitants, and set up a government of their own. An intense excitement followed; and before it was allayed more than thirty persons, condemned as having been engaged in the alleged plot, were executed, and others were transported. A plot of some kind there

**67.** What is said of Stuyvesant's rule? What did he accomplish? What grant was made in 1664? Did King Charles do right? Upon what did he base his claim to the territory? *Ans.* The discoveries and explorations of the Cabots.

**68.** Give an account of the surrender of New Netherlands. Who was the first English governor? What changes in names were made? What is the subsequent history of New Netherlands as a Dutch province?

**69.** What occurred in 1741? State what followed.

* Read topics 228 and 229. App. pp. 82, 83.

Digitized by Google

may have been, though it is certain the accounts of it were greatly exaggerated, and many innocent persons suffered. (See Appendix, p. 63, topic 17.)

## NEW JERSEY.

**70.** The Dutch, who included New Jersey in the province of New Netherlands, established a trading-post at Bergen as early as 1622, and built a fort on the Delaware; but the settlement of Elizabethtown, now Elizabeth, in 1664, by emigrants from Long Island, is considered as the beginning of colonization in New Jersey.

**71.** In 1664, before the settlement of Elizabethtown, the Duke of York, to whom Charles II. had granted New Netherlands, sold New Jersey to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. The liberal offers at first made to emigrants induced many to settle. After the Dutch, as elsewhere related, had, for the second time, relinquished New Netherlands, the whole territory was again granted to the Duke of York.

**72.** The duke, in total disregard of the rights of Berkeley and Carteret, appointed Andros governor over the entire reunited province, but afterward agreed to restore New Jersey to the rightful proprietors. Notwithstanding this promise, he repeatedly interfered with the rights of Berkeley and Carteret.

**73.** Berkeley sold his interest in New Jersey to an English Quaker; and, in 1682, the whole territory became, by purchase, the property of William Penn and other Quakers.* In 1702, the proprietors surrendered

**70.** What trading settlement did the Dutch make? Where is Bergen? (Map, p. 43.) Where, in New Jersey, did they build a fort? When was Elizabeth settled? What is considered as regards that settlement? Where is Elizabeth? (Map, p. 43.) Where is Long Island? (Map, p. 39.)

**71.** To whom did Charles II. give New Jersey? To whom did the Duke sell it? When did the duke get a second grant of it?

**72.** Of what wrong was the duke guilty? And afterward of what wrong?

* In 1676, New Jersey was divided into East and West Jersey, the former falling to Carteret; hence the term, "the Jerseys."

Digitized by Google

their powers of government to the Crown, when New Jersey became a royal province, united to New York. In 1738, the connection was severed, and from that time New Jersey had a government of its own. (Top. 219, Ap., p. 79.)

## MARYLAND.

**74.** By the second charter granted to the London Company, the limits of Virginia embraced all the territory which afterward formed the States of Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina; but, by the dissolution of the company in 1624, the whole region became the property of the Crown. In 1631, William Clay'-borne obtained a license from Charles I. to traffic with the Indians; and, under this authority, a trading-post was established on an island in Chesapeake Bay, and another at the mouth of the Susquehanna.

**75.** Influenced by a desire to provide an asylum for Catholics, then persecuted in England, Sir George Cal'-vert, a Roman Catholic nobleman, whose title was Lord Baltimore, applied for a charter to establish a colony in America. The king, Charles I., readily agreed to make the grant, but before the document received the royal seal, Calvert died. It was then issued to Ce'-cil Calvert, son of Sir George, who, by the death of his father, inherited the title of Lord Baltimore.*

---

**73.** To whom did Berkeley sell his interest in New Jersey? How was New Jersey afterward divided? *Ans.* Into East Jersey and West Jersey, Carteret owning the former. Give the subsequent colonial history of New Jersey.

MAP QUESTIONS.—(p. 58.) What States are on the South of New York? On the south of Pennsylvania? What river separates Maryland from Virginia? What large bay divides Maryland? What large river flows into it from the north? Where was St. Mary's situated?

**74.** What license? Where did Clayborne establish trading-posts?

**75.** Who was George Calvert? What great desire did he have? For what did he apply? With what success? To whom was the grant then made?

* "It was intended, it is said, that the country granted by this charter should have been called *Crescentia*; but when it was presented to the king (Charles I., of England) for his signature, in conformity to his majesty's wishes the name of the province was changed to that of Maryland, in honor of his queen, Henrietta Maria, a daughter of the great king Henry IV., of France."—*Bozman's Hist. of Maryland.*

Digitized by Google

**76.** This charter was the most liberal one, in every respect, that had thus far been granted by the English Crown. "Christianity, as professed by the Church of England, was protected; but beyond this, silence left room for equality in religious rights, not less than in civil freedom." The province was called Maryland, in honor of Henrietta Maria, wife of King Charles.

**77.** The first body of emigrants sent by Lord Baltimore consisted of about two hundred persons, mostly Roman Catholics. They arrived in 1634, and at once commenced a settlement, which they anticipated would become a great city, calling it St. Mary's. Leonard Calvert, brother of the proprietor, was the first governor. (Note 14, end of Sec.)

**78.** Clayborne, who had refused to submit to the authority of the governor, in 1645 incited a rebellion, which compelled Calvert to seek safety for a time in Virginia. After the governor resumed his office, the Assembly enacted a law known as the "Toleration Act," which secured the free exercise of religious opinions to all persons professing belief in Jesus Christ. Thus did the right not denied by the charter receive the sanction of law.

**79.** During the supremacy of Cromwell in England, Parliament appointed commissioners to administer the government of the colony. The Protestants gaining a majority in the Assembly, the Catholics were deprived of their rights as citizens, and an act was passed declaring them not entitled to the protection of the laws. A civil war between the Catholics and the Protestants followed. After Cromwell's death, the rights of Lord Baltimore were restored to him.

**80.** Upon the death of Cecil Calvert, his son Charles

---

**76.** What was the character of the charter? What name was given to the province? Why was it so named?

**77.** Did Lord Baltimore go to America? Whom did he send? When and where did they make a settlement?

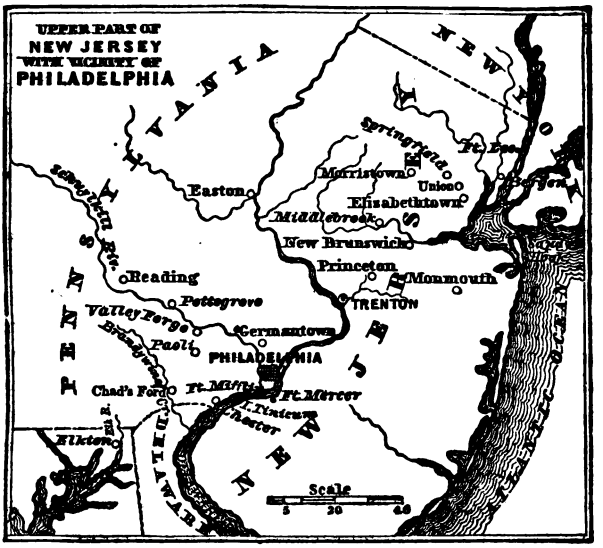
**78.** Give an account of "Clayborne's Rebellion." Of the "Toleration Act."

**79.** Give an account of the civil war. Of after events.

Digitized by Google

became the proprietor of the province, of which he retained possession until deprived of it by King William, in 1691. In 1715 the proprietor's rights were restored to his infant heir, the fourth Lord Baltimore, and Maryland remained a proprietary government from that time till the Revolution. (See Appendix, p. 71, topic 111.)

## PENNSYLVANIA.




**81.** Actuated by a desire to found a colony where civil and religious liberty might be enjoyed, and where the

**80.** Of what injustice was King William guilty? What, of Maryland?
MAP QUESTIONS.—What river separates New Jersey from Pennsylvania? How is Philadelphia situated? Trenton? Tinicum Island?

NOTE.—"There was a large sum of money due from the (English) government to the Admiral (Wm. Penn's father) at the time of his death. * * * In consequence of his death, Wm. Penn, in the summer of 1680, petitioned King Charles the Second, that letters patent might be granted him for a tract of land in America, lying north of Maryland; on the east, bounded by Delaware River; on the west limited by Maryland; and northward to extend as far as plantable."
—*Proud's Hist. of Pennsylvania.*

Digitized by Google

people might dwell together in peace, William Penn obtained from Charles II. a tract of land west of the Delaware. The domain thus granted was called Pennsylvania. From the Duke of York, Penn also obtained a grant of Delaware, then called "The Territories," or "The Three Lower Counties on the Delaware."

**82.** Though small settlements of Swedes had been previously made within the limits of both Pennsylvania and Delaware, the permanent settlement of Pennsylvania dates from the founding of Philadelphia in 1682, by Penn. After several conferences with the Indians, he met them beneath a wide-spreading elm, at a place now called Kensington, a portion of Philadelphia, where he made his famous "treaty of peace and friendship" with the "red men." This treaty was "never sworn to and never broken." * (Read, also, Note 3, end of Section.)

**83.** To the Swedes on the Delaware, Penn gave assurance that they should not be molested in their religion or laws. The wisdom of his course toward the Swedes and Indians, as well as of his government in general, was soon apparent; for the colony had a more rapid and peaceful growth than any other in America.

**84.** Upon the death of Penn, which occurred in England in 1718, he left his American possessions to his sons. They administered the government, most of the time by deputies, until the Revolution, when their claims were purchased by the commonwealth of Pennsylvania.

**81.** What desire had Penn? What did he obtain? From the Duke of York?
**82.** When was Philadelphia founded? By whom had Pennsylvania been previously settled? By whom Delaware? What bargain did Penn make with the Indians? Where did Penn make his famous treaty? What is said of it?
**83.** What assurance? Growth of the colony? To what attributed?
**84.** Where and when did Penn die? Further history of Pennsylvania.

* "The great elm-tree, under which this treaty was made, became celebrated on that account, and when the British were quartered near it during the war of American Independence, their general so respected it, that, when his soldiers were cutting down every tree for firewood, he placed a sentinel under it that not a branch of it might be touched. A few years ago it was blown down, when it was split into wood, and many cups, bowls, and other articles were made of it, to be kept as memorials." "The tree (in 1782) was one hundred and fifty years old. Under its spreading branches friendly nations had been wont to meet to arrange differences and smoke the calumet of peace long before the pale faces had landed on these shores."—*Dixon's Life of Penn.*

Digitized by Google

## DELAWARE.

**85.** The settlement of Delaware may be said to have had its origin in the desire of Gus-ta'-vus Adolphus, the renowned king of Sweden, to found a free colony in the New World for all persecuted Christians. His death occurring before the project was undertaken, a delay of several years followed; but finally a charter was granted by the government of that country to the Swedish West India Company.

**86.** In 1638 a body of emigrants, sent out by the company under the care of Minuits, a former governor of New Netherlands, arrived at Cape Hen-lo'-pen. Having purchased of the Indians all the lands from the cape to the falls in the Delaware at Trenton, they commenced a settlement on Chris-ti-an'-a Creek, near the present site of Wilmington. To the country thus purchased was given the name of New Sweden.

**87.** Other settlements were formed, but the one on Tin'-i-cum Island, a few miles below Philadelphia, was made the capital. The Dutch, regarding these settlements as intrusions upon their territory of New Netherlands, Governor Stuyvesant proceeded against the Swedes, in 1655, and subjected them to the authority of Holland, which government retained possession of the country till 1664. (See page 39, ¶ 67.)

---

**85.** What was the origin of the settlement of Delaware? What further can you state of the project?

**86.** What territory was called New Sweden? By whom was it so called? Where did the Swedes first settle? Where is Wilmington? (Map, p. 53.) What two capes are at the entrance of Delaware Bay?

**87.** What is stated of Tinicum and other settlements? Give an account of the subjugation of New Sweden.

---

NOTE.—"In the year 1623, a number of emigrants from Holland, under the guidance of Cornelius May, arrived in the Delaware (hence, Cape May), * * * landed his forces, and built Ft. Nassau. So far as our information extends, May was the first European who sailed up the Delaware, and the first adventurer who made a settlement on its shores. * * * In ten years after, De Vries found the establishment in the possession of the Indians."—*Ferris's Hist. of the Original Settlements on the Delaware.*

Ft. Nassau was on Big Timber Creek, New Jersey, about five miles south of Camden.

Digitized by Google

**88.** During the period from 1664 to 1682, Delaware, being claimed by the Duke of York, formed a part of the province of New York. By the grant to Penn, in 1682, it was united to Pennsylvania; and, although the settlers in "The Territories" became dissatisfied with Penn's government, and were granted an Assembly of their own, Pennsylvania and Delaware continued under one governor until the Revolution. (See Appendix, p. 66, topic 48.)

## NORTH AND SOUTH CAROLINA.




**88.** What is said in connection with the claim of the Duke of York? What further account can you give of Delaware? (See p. 39.)

MAP QUESTIONS.—What State is on the south of Virginia? On the south of North Carolina? On the west of South Carolina? What body of water on the east of the two Carolinas? Describe the Chowan River. Where is Edenton? Wilmington? Charleston? The Savannah River?

Digitized by Google

**89.** The earliest attempts to settle North Carolina, as before described, were made by parties sent by Raleigh in 1585 and 1587. More than sixty years later, probably in 1650, emigrants from Virginia made a settlement upon the Cho-wan' River, near the present village of E'-den-ton.

**90.** In 1663 a vast territory, south of Virginia, was granted by Charles II. to Lord Clar'-en-don and seven other noblemen of England; and, in the same year, a government was instituted over the settlement on the Chowan, which was called "The Albemarle County Colony." Two years later a second colony was planted in North Carolina. A company from Barbadoes (*bar-ba'-doz*) selected a place near Wilmington, and there established "The Clarendon County Colony."

**91.** It having been discovered that the settlement on the Chowan was outside of the limits of the domain granted to Clarendon and associates, a new grant was made to the same parties, by which the boundaries were extended so as to embrace the country from Virginia to about the middle of Florida. (Topic 230. App. p. 83.)

**92.** In 1670, a colony, known as "The Carteret County Colony," was planted on the western bank of the Ashley River. This, in consequence of not being well located for commercial facilities, was removed, ten years after, to the junction of the Cooper and Ashley rivers, and thus the foundation of Charleston was laid. In 1729, Carolina was sold to the king of England, and separated into North and South Carolina. From that time till the Revolution they were royal provinces. (App. p. 72, topics 125, 126.)

---

**89.** Which were the earliest attempts made to settle North Carolina? What settlement was made in 1650?

**90.** Give the early history of "The Albemarle County Colony." Of "The Clarendon County Colony." What grant was made in 1663?

**91.** What discovery was made? What then was done?

**92.** When was "Old Charleston" settled? Why was a removal made? When was Charleston settled? How is Charleston situated? (Map, p. 73.) Describe the Cooper River. The Ashley River. What occurred in 1729?

Digitized by Google

## GEORGIA.

**93.** Though Spain claimed the territory of Georgia as a part of Florida, the English king, George II., disregarded the claim; and, in 1732, granted to a corporation, consisting of James Oglethorpe (*ō'-gl-thorp*) and twenty other trustees, for twenty-one years, all the country between the Savannah and the Altamaha (*al-ta-ma-haw'*). In honor of the king it was called Georgia. The object of the trustees was to provide an asylum for their destitute countrymen, the grant being "in trust for the poor."

**94.** The first settlement was made in 1733, at Savannah. The colony made rapid increase in numbers; but, owing to the poverty and idle habits of the settlers, as also to the impolitic regulations of the trustees, the bright anticipations of plenty and comfort which had been entertained were not, for a time, realized. (Read Note 15, end of Sec.)

**95.** In consequence of the claim to territory set up by Spain, hostilities took place between the English settlers and their Spanish neighbors. Owing, however, to the bravery and skill of Oglethorpe, the result was to the advantage of the English. The trustees governed till 1752, when, wearied with their troublesome charge, they surrendered their charter to the Crown, and Georgia became a royal province. (See Appendix, p. 67, topic 61.)

**93.** What grant was made in 1732? What distinguished person was born in that year? *Ans.* George Washington. Describe the Altamaha River. (Map p. 174.) The Savannah. Why was Georgia so called? Object of Oglethorpe?

**94.** When was Georgia settled? Where? Progress of the colony?

**95.** What hostilities occurred? How did they end? How long did the trustees govern? What then did they do? What followed?

MAP QUESTIONS.—(Map, p. 46.) How is Edenton situated? Charleston? Savannah? Wilmington? Name eight rivers of North Carolina. What river is between South Carolina and Georgia?

NOTE.—"John Wesley, the celebrated founder of the sect of Methodists," joined the colony in 1736, but "resided in America less than two years." "George Whitefield, the celebrated preacher and founder of the Calvanistic Methodists," also joined the colony, and, says Bancroft, "founded and sustained an orphan home at Savannah, by contributions which his eloquence extorted. He became more nearly identified with America (than Wesley), visited all the provinces from Florida to the northern frontier, and made his grave in New England." "His eloquence was wonderful, his voice powerful, rich, and sweet, and Dr. Franklin estimated that 30,000 persons might hear him distinctly when preaching in the open air."—*Drake's Am. Biography.*

Digitized by Google

## CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

1607. Virginia was settled at Jamestown.
1609. The Hudson River was discovered by Henry Hudson.
1610. The "Starving Time" prevailed in Virginia.
1613. The marriage of Pocahontas occurred.
1614. Smith explored the coast of New England.
New York was settled by the Dutch.
1619. Negro slavery was introduced into Virginia.*
1620. The Council of Plymouth received a grant.
Massachusetts was settled by the Pilgrims at Plymouth.
1621. A treaty was made with Massasoit.
1622. The first Indian massacre in Virginia occurred.
1623. New Hampshire was settled at Little Harbor and Dover.
The Dutch began to colonize New York.
1628. A settlement was made at Salem by Endicott.
1630. A settlement was made at Boston by Winthrop.
1633. Connecticut was settled at Windsor by Holmes.
1634. Maryland was settled at St. Mary's.
1635. The Saybrook Colony, Connecticut, was established.
1636. Rhode Island was settled at Providence by Williams.
1637. The Pequod War, in Connecticut, occurred.†
1638. Delaware was settled near Christiana Creek by the Swedes.
The New Haven Colony was established.
1639. Settlements on the Connecticut united as the Conn. Colony.
1643. A union of New England colonies was formed.
1644. The Connecticut and Saybrook colonies were united.
The Second Indian Massacre in Virginia occurred.
The two settlements of Rhode Island united, forming R. I.
1645. Clayborne's Rebellion in Maryland occurred.
1650. North Carolina was settled on the Chowan River.
1651. The Navigation Act was passed by Parliament.
1655. A civil war in Maryland occurred.
New Sweden was conquered by Stuyvesant.
1656. The Quakers, in Massachusetts, were persecuted.
1663. Carolina was granted to Clarendon and others.
The Albemarle County Colony was established.
1664. New Netherlands was taken by the English and named N. Y.

* Many authors give 1620 as the date of the introduction of slavery into Virginia, but this, it has been shown, is incorrect.

† The name of the Connecticut tribe of Indians is now generally written Pequots by the officials of that State.

Digitized by Google

1664. New Jersey was settled at Elizabethtown (now Elizabeth).
1665. The Clarendon County Colony was established.
The Connecticut and New Haven colonies were united.
1670. South Carolina was settled on the Ashley River.
1673. Virginia was ceded to Culpepper and Arlington.
1675. King Philip's war began by an attack at Swanzey.
1676. Bacon's Rebellion broke out in Virginia.
1680. The settlement at Charleston, South Carolina, was begun.
New Hampshire became a separate royal province (first time).
1682. Pennsylvania was settled at Philadelphia by William Penn.
The Duke of York granted Delaware to William Penn.
1686. Andros was appointed royal governor of New England.
1687. The Connecticut Charter was hid in the "Charter Oak."
1689. Andros was seized and sent to England.
King William's War began.
1690. Port Royal was captured by the English under Phipps.
1692. The Salem Witchcraft delusion prevailed.
1697. The treaty of Ryswick ended King William's War.
1702. Queen Anne's War began.
1710. Port Royal was captured (a second time) by the English.
1713. The treaty of Utrecht ended Queen Anne's War.
1729. Carolina was separated into North and South Carolina.
1732. Washington was born in Virginia, February 22d.
1733. Georgia was settled at Savannah.
1741. New Hampshire became a separate royal province (last time).
1744. King George's War began.
1745. Louisburg was taken by the English.
1748. The treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle ended King George's War.
1752. Georgia became a royal province.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS.


| | PAGE |
|---|---|
| 1. Give the history of Virginia under the first charter | 18, 19 |
| 2. Give the history under the second charter | 19, 20 |
| 3. State what you can of Pocahontas | 19, 21 |
| 4. Give the history of Virginia under the third charter | 21, 22 |
| 5. Give an account of Bacon's Rebellion | 22, 23 |
| 6. State all you can in relation to Captain John Smith | 18–23 |
| 7. All, in relation to the Council of Plymouth | 24, 27, 28, 29 |
| 8. In relation to the pilgrims before they came to America | 24, 25 |
| 9. Give an account of their movements from Holland to America | 25 |
| 10. When and where did they make their settlement? | 25, 26 |


NOTE.—By the old style of reckoning, the date of the landing of the Pilgrims at Plymouth is December 11. When the practice of celebrating the anniversary of the landing began (in 1769), eleven days, instead of ten, were erroneously added to the recorded date to make it conform to the Gregorian (from Pope Gregory) style, which had been adopted in England seventeen years before. But as, in 1620, the derangement of the calendar amounted to only ten days, the anniversary should be celebrated on the 21st of December, instead of the 22d, as it is.

Digitized by Google

PAGE

11. Give their early history at Plymouth ..... 26
12. What can you state of the treaty made with Massasoit? ..... 26, 32
13. Give the early history of the Massachusetts Bay Colony ..... 26
14. Give the history of the founding of Harvard College ..... 27
15. Whence did Massachusetts derive its name? *Ans.* From the name of a tribe of Indians.
16. Give an account of the settlement of New Hampshire ..... 27
17. Give the subsequent colonial history of New Hampshire ..... 28, 33, 34
18. How did New Hampshire get its name? *Ans.* It was so called by John Mason, who lived in Hampshire county, England.
19. Give an account of the first settlement of Connecticut ..... 28
20. Give the history of the Saybrook Colony ..... 29, 30
21. Give an account of the Pequod War ..... 29, 30
22. Give the history of the New Haven Colony ..... 30
23. State how Andros was foiled in his attempt to get the Conn. Charter .. 30
24. Whence did Connecticut get its name? *Ans.* From the name of its principal river, which the Indians called the Connecticut. The word signifies *the long river*.
25. Give an account of Williams's settlement of Rhode Island ..... 31
26. Give an account of Coddington's settlement of Rhode Island ..... 31
27. Give the subsequent colonial history of Rhode Island ..... 31
28. How did Rhode Island get its name? *Ans.* It (the island) was "so called from a fancied resemblance to the island of Rhodes." Another authority says: that in consequence of the reddish appearance of the island, it "was soon known by the Dutch as *Roode*, or Red Island. From this is derived the name of the island and state."
29. Give an account of the Union of New England colonies ..... 32
30. Give an account of the persecution of the Quakers ..... 32
31. Give an account of King Philip's War ..... 32, 33
32. Give an account of King William's War ..... 34, 35
33. Give an account of Queen Anne's War ..... 35, 36
34. Give an account of King George's War ..... 36, 37
35. Give an account of the settlement of New York ..... 37, 38
36. What can you state of Kieft and his administration ..... 38, 39
37. What can you state of Stuyvesant and his administration ..... 39, 45
38. Give the subsequent colonial history of New York ..... 39, 40
39. Why was New York so called? *Ans.* In compliment to the Duke of York, to whom it had been granted.
40. Give an account of the settlement of New Jersey ..... 40
41. Give the subsequent colonial history of New Jersey ..... 40, 41
42. Why was New Jersey so called? *Ans.* In honor of Sir George Carteret, who had been governor of the island of Jersey.
43. Give an account of the settlement of Maryland ..... 41, 42
44. Give the history of Clayborne's Rebellion ..... 41, 42
45. What is said of the charter granted to Maryland? ..... 42
46. What is said of the Maryland Toleration Act? ..... 42
47. What were the causes of the civil war in Maryland? ..... 42
48. Give the subsequent colonial history of Maryland ..... 42, 43
49. Why was Maryland so called? ..... 42
56. Give an account of the first settling of Pennsylvania ..... 43, 44

Digitized by Google

| | | PAGE |
|---|---|---|
| 51. | What induced William Penn to form a colony? | 43, 44 |
| 52. | What two tracts of land did Penn get? | 44 |
| 53. | Give the history of their conversion to him | 44 |
| 54. | What were the important events of 1682? | 44, 50 |
| 55. | State what you can of Penn's treaty with the Indians | 44 |
| 56. | Of his treatment of the Swedes, and of his government | 44 |
| 57. | Give the subsequent colonial history of Pennsylvania | 44 |
| 58. | How did Pennsylvania get its name? *Ans.* The word *sylva* means a wood or forest. William Penn, thinking that *sylvania* would be an appropriate name for a land covered with forest, suggested it for his territory. The prefix *Penn* was put to the word, in honor, as the king said, of Penn's father. | |
| 59. | When and by whom was Delaware settled? | 45 |
| 60. | What had Adolphus done in relation to the settlement? | 45 |
| 61. | Name two important events of 1638 | 49 |
| 62. | What was accomplished in New Sweden that year? | 45 |
| 63. | Give an account of Stuyvesant's expedition against the Swedes | 45 |
| 64. | Give the subsequent colonial history of Delaware | 46 |
| 65. | Name, in order, ten important events from 1607 to 1621 | 49 |
| 66. | Name, in order, ten important events from 1622 to 1637 | 49 |
| 67. | Name, in order, ten important events from 1638 to 1651 | 49 |
| 68. | Give an account of the attempts to settle Roanoke Island | 14, 15, 16 |
| 69. | Give the history of the Albermarle County Colony | 47 |
| 70. | Give the history of the Clarendon County Colony | 47 |
| 71. | Give the history of the Carteret County Colony | 47 |
| 72. | State how North and South Carolina derived their names | 13, 47 |
| 73. | Give the closing colonial history of the two Carolinas | 47 |
| 74. | Name, in order, ten important events from 1655 to 1670 | 49, 50 |
| 75. | Name, in order, ten important events from 1673 to 1689 | 50 |
| 76. | Why was Georgia so called? | 48 |
| 77. | Give the history of the settlement of Georgia | 48 |
| 78. | Give an account of the subsequent colonial progress of Georgia | 48 |
| 79. | Name, in order, ten important events from 1682 to 1702 | 50 |
| 80. | Name, in order, ten important events from 1710 to 1752 | 50 |
| 81. | How many colonies have you learned the history of? | 18–48 |
| 82. | Give their names in the order of their settlement | 49, 50 |
| 83. | Give their names in their geographical order, beginning with New Hampshire (Progressive Map, No. 2). | |
| 84. | Which of them were settled by the English? | 18–48 |
| 85. | Which were settled by other nations than the English? | 18–48 |
| 86. | Which offered asylums for persecuted Christians? | 18–48 |
| 87. | Which were settled because of religious persecutions? | 18–48 |
| 88. | Give the date and place of settlement of each. (Table, end of history.) | |
| 89. | Give the name of the most prominent man in the settlement of each | 18–48 |
| 90. | State what Indian troubles occurred in each | 18–39 |
| 91. | Name the colonies of which Andros was governor | 18–46 |
| 92. | Name nine events belonging to the history of Virginia | 49, 50 |
| 93. | Name ten belonging to the history of Massachusetts | 49, 50 |
| 94. | Name five events belonging to the history of New Hampshire | 49, 50 |
| 95. | Name four events belonging to the history of New York | 49 |


Digitized by Google

**1. The Last Fight of the Pequods** (p. 29, ¶ 38).—"The Pequod fort was a nearly circular area of an acre or two, enclosed by trunks of trees, twelve feet high or thereabouts, set firmly in the ground so closely as to exclude entrance. . . . . Within, arranged along two lanes, were some seventy wigwams covered with matting and thatch. . . . . Two hours before dawn, under a bright moonlight, the little band was set in motion toward the fort, two miles distant. Mason had come within a few feet of the sally-port which he was seeking, when a dog barked, and the cry, *Owanux! Owanux!* Englishmen! Englishmen! which immediately followed, showed that the alarm was given. With sixteen men, he instantly pushed into the enclosure. Underhill did the same on the other side. The terrified sleepers rushed out of their wigwams, but soon sought refuge in them again from the English broadswords and fire-arms. Snatching a live brand from a wigwam, Mason threw it on a matted roof. Underhill set fire in his quarter with a train of powder, and the straw village was soon in flames. All was over in an hour. The muskets of the English brought down those who escaped the conflagration, and most of the stragglers who avoided this fate, fell into the hands of the native allies, who had kept cautiously aloof from the conflict, but had no mercy on the fugitives."—*Palfrey's History of New England.*

**2. The Pine-Tree Shilling.**—Captain John Hull was the mint-master of Massachusetts, and coined all the money that was made there. This was a new line of business; for, in the earlier days of the colony, the current coinage consisted of gold and silver money of England, Portugal, and Spain. These coins being scarce, the people were often forced to barter their commodities instead of selling them. For instance, if a man wanted to buy a coat, he perhaps exchanged a bear-skin for it. If he wished for a barrel of molasses, he might purchase it with a pile of pine boards. Musket bullets were used instead of farthings. The Indians had a sort of money, called wampum, which was made of clam shells; and this strange sort of specie was likewise taken in payment of debts by the English settlers. Bank bills had never been heard of. There was not money enough of any kind, in many parts of the country, to pay the salaries of the ministers; so that they sometimes had to take quintals of fish, bushels of corn, or cords of wood, instead of silver or gold. As the people grew more numerous, and their trade one with another increased, the want of current money was still more sensibly felt. To supply the demand, the general court passed a law for establishing a coinage of shillings, sixpences, and threepences. Captain John Hull was appointed to manufacture this money, and was to have about one shilling out of every twenty to pay him for the trouble of making them. Hereupon all the old silver in the colony was handed over to Captain John Hull. The battered silver cans and tankards, I suppose, and silver buckles, and broken spoons, and silver buttons of worn-out coats, and silver hilts of swords that had figured at court—all such curious old articles were doubtless thrown into the melting-pot together. But by far the greater part of the silver consisted of bullion from the mines of South America, which the English buccaneers—who were little better than pirates—had taken from the Spaniards, and brought to Massachusetts. All this old and new silver being melted down and coined, the result was an immense amount of splendid shillings, sixpences, and threepences. Each had the date, 1652, on the one side, and the figure of a pine tree on the other. Hence they were called pine-tree shillings. In the course of time their place was supplied by bills of paper on parchment, which were nominally valued at threepence and upwards. The value of these bills kept sinking, because the real hard money could not be obtained for them. They were a great deal worse than the old Indian currency of clam shells."—*Hawthorne.*

Digitized by Google

**3. Penn's Treaty with the Indians** (p. 44, ¶ 82).—"This conference has become one of the most striking scenes in history. Artists have painted, poets have sung, and philosophers have praised it. In the center stood William Penn, in costume undistinguished from the surrounding group, save by his silken sash. . . When the Indians approached in their old forest costume, their bright feathers sparkling in the sun, and their bodies painted in the most gorgeous manner, the proprietor received them with the easy dignity of one accustomed to mix with European courts. The venerable Indian king then seated himself on the ground, with the older sachems on his right and left; the middle-aged warriors ranged themselves in the form of a crescent, or half-moon, round them; and the younger men formed a third and outer semicircle. Penn then arose and addressed them in their own language, and, unfolding the writing of the treaty of friendship, laid the scroll on the ground. The sachems received his proposal of peace and friendship with decent gravity, and accepted it for themselves and their children. No oaths, no seals, no official mummeries were used: the treaty was ratified with a yea, yea."—*Dixon's Life of William Penn.*

**4. Salem Witchcraft** (p. 35).—"A frenzy which led to the death of many innocent persons, had originated in the wicked arts of a few children. They belonged to the Rev. Mr. Parris, minister of Salem. These children complained of being pinched and pricked with pins, and otherwise tormented by the shapes of men and women, who were supposed to have power to haunt them invisibly, both in darkness and daylight. Often in the midst of their family and friends the children would pretend to be seized with strange convulsions, and would cry out that the witches were afflicting them. These stories spread abroad, and caused great tumult and alarm. Nobody could be certain that his nearest neighbor or most intimate friend was not guilty of this imaginary crime. The number of those who pretended to be afflicted by witchcraft grew daily more numerous; and they bore testimony against many of the best and worthiest people. A minister, named George Burroughs, was among the accused. In the months of August and September, 1692, he and nineteen other innocent men and women were put to death. The place of execution was a high hill, on the outskirts of Salem; so that many of the sufferers, as they stood beneath the gallows, could discern their own habitations in the town; but the martyrdom of these guiltless persons seemed only to increase the madness."—*Hawthorne.*

**5. The Gentry of Virginia.**—"The whole usages of Virginia were fondly modeled after the English customs. It was a loyal colony. The Virginians boasted that King Charles II. had been king in Virginia before he had been king in England. English king and English church were alike faithfully honored there. The resident gentry were allied to good English families. They held their heads above the Dutch traders of New York, and the money-getting Roundheads of Pennsylvania and New England. Never were people less republican than those of the great province which was soon to be foremost in the memorable revolt against the British crown. The gentry of Virginia dwelt on their great lands after a fashion almost patriarchal. For its rough cultivation, each estate had a multitude of hands, who were subject to the command of the master. The land yielded their food, live stock, and game. The great rivers swarmed with fish for the taking. Their ships took the tobacco off their private wharves on the banks of the Potomac or the James River, and carried it to London or Bristol, bringing back English goods and articles of home manufacture in return for the only produce which the Virginia gentry chose to cultivate. Their hospitality was boundless. No stranger was ever sent away from their gates. The gentry received one another, and traveled to each other's houses, in a state almost feudal."—*Thackeray's Virginians.*

Digitized by Google

**6. Virginia in 1674** (p. 22, ¶ 18).—"The generation now in existence were chiefly the fruit of the soil; they were children of the woods, nurtured in the freedom of the wilderness, and dwelling in lonely cottages, scattered along the streams. No newspapers entered their houses: no printing-press furnished them a book. They had no recreations but such as nature provides in her wilds; no education but such as parents in the desert could give their offspring. The paths were bridleways rather than roads; and the highway surveyors aimed at nothing more than to keep them clear of logs and fallen trees. I doubt if there existed what we should call a bridge in the whole Dominion, though it was intended to build some. Visits were made in boats, or on horseback through the forests; and the Virginian, traveling with his pouch of tobacco for currency, swam the rivers, where there was neither ferry nor ford. Almost every planter was his own mechanic. The houses, for the most part of but one story, and made of wood, often of logs, the windows closed by convenient shutters for want of glass, were sprinkled at great distances on both sides of the Chesapeake, from the Potomac to the line of Carolina. There was hardly such a sight as a cluster of three dwellings. Jamestown was but a place of a statehouse, one church, and eighteen houses, occupied by about a dozen families. Till very recently the legislature had assembled in the hall of an alehouse. Virginia had neither towns nor lawyers. A few of the wealthiest planters lived in braver state at their large plantations, and, surrounded by indentured servants and slaves, produced a new form of society, that has sometimes been likened to the manners of the patriarchs, and sometimes to the baronial pride of feudalism."—*Bancroft's History of the United States.*

**7. The Gold Delusion in Virginia** (p. 19).—"An unlucky incident turned the attention of the colonists from that species of industry which alone could render their situation comfortable. In a small stream of water that issued from a bank of sand near Jamestown, a sediment of some shining mineral substance, which had some resemblance to gold, was discovered. At a time when the precious metals were conceived to be the peculiar and only valuable productions of the New World, when every mountain was supposed to contain a treasure, and every rivulet was searched for its golden sands, this appearance was fondly considered as an infallible indication of a mine. Every hand was eager to dig, and large quantities of the glittering dust were amassed. From some assay of its nature, made by an artist as unskillful as his companions were credulous, it was pronounced to be extremely rich. 'There was now,' says Smith, 'no talk, no hope, no work, but dig gold, wash gold, refine gold.' With this imaginary wealth the first vessel returning to England was loaded, while the culture of the land and every useful occupation were totally neglected."—*Robertson's History of America.*

**8. Pocahontas in England** (p. 21, ¶ 12).—"From Plymouth the young couple proceeded to London, and here the Indian princess, Lady Rebecca, as she was officially styled, received all the attention due to her rank. We are told that she had previously already accustomed herself to civility, and now carried herself as the daughter of a king; so there was no difficulty in the way when she appeared at Court under the patronage of Lady de la Ware (Delaware), and was formally presented. Her début was a perfect success. All doors were thrown open to her, and rank and fashion vied with each other in doing honor to the strange being thus suddenly transplanted from savage life in distant forests to the strict etiquette and artificial manners of an English Court. We read glowing accounts of her being attended by divers persons of fashion. Nor does she seem to have disliked the gay and brilliant life of

Digitized by Google

London, for she appeared at the 'maskes' and other entertainments, and even at a great festival given with much state and pomp in her honor by the Bishop of London."—*De Vere's Romance of American History.*

**9. Early Customs in New England Churches** (p. 32, ¶ 46).—Public worship took place in what was called the meeting-house, where assemblies for transacting the town's business and for other purposes were also held. In most of the congregations, bells being obtained but slowly, the assembly was summoned by beat of drum. At the religious services, families were divided, men and women sitting apart on their respective sides of the house. The children sat by themselves, and a man was appointed to keep them in order and to keep the older folks awake. He carried a staff of office with a knob at one end and a feather brush at the other. With the knob, he knocked the heads of the men who slept, and with the feathers he tickled the faces of the women. The men, or such portion of them as was from time to time thought sufficient, were required to come to their worship completely armed. But few of the meeting-houses were warmed even in the coldest weather; for the strict professors thought it wrong to have a fire in the house of God. So they sat and suffered until it became the practice to use hot bricks and stones for the hands and feet. The next thing were the foot-stoves, which were filled with wood coals. Books were scarce and expensive, and when the hymn was not familiar, the minister read off two lines, which were sung by the congregation; then other two lines were read and sung, and so on through the hymn. The services consisted of extemporaneous prayer, of singing without instrumental accompaniment, and of a sermon of which the approved length was an hour, measured by an hour-glass which stood upon the pulpit.—*Palfrey's History of New England, and Elliott's New England History* (abridged).

**10. Indian Warfare** (p. 33, ¶ 49).—"The war, on the part of the Indians, was one of ambushes and surprises. They never once met the English in open field; but always, even if eightfold in numbers, fled timorously before infantry. But they were secret as beasts of prey, skillful marksmen, and in part provided with fire-arms; fleet of foot, conversant with all the paths of the forest, patient of fatigue, and mad with a passion for rapine, vengeance, and destruction; retreating into swamps for their fastnesses, or hiding in the greenwood thickets, where the leaves muffled the eyes of the pursuer. By the rapidity of their descent they seemed omnipresent among the scattered villages, which they ravaged like a passing storm; and, for a full year (1675), they kept all New England in a state of terror and excitement. The exploring party was waylaid and cut off, and the mangled carcasses and disjointed limbs of the dead were hung upon the trees to terrify pursuers. The laborer in the field, the reapers as they went forth to the harvest, men as they went to mill, the shepherd's boy among the sheep, were shot down by skulking foes, whose approach was invisible. Who can tell the heavy hours of woman? The mother, if left alone in the house, feared the tomahawk for herself and children. On the sudden attack, the husband would fly with one child, the wife with another, and, perhaps, one only escape. The village cavalcade, making its way to meeting on Sunday, in files, on horseback—the farmer holding the bridle in one hand and a child in the other, his wife seated on a pillion behind him, it may be with a child in her lap, as was the fashion in those days—could not proceed safely, but, at the moment when least expected, bullets would whiz amongst them, discharged with fatal aim from an ambuscade by the wayside. The forest that protected the ambush of the Indians secured their retreat. They hung upon the skirts of the English villages 'like the lightning on the edge of the clouds.'"—*Bancroft's History of the United States.*

Digitized by Google

**11. Supplies sent to New Netherlands** (p. 88, ¶ 65).—"Hulft, one of the directors in Holland, undertook to convey to the colony, at his own risk, such necessary articles as might be provided. Two ships were accordingly fitted out in the spring (of 1625), and loaded with one hundred and three head of cattle—horses, bulls, cows, swine, and sheep. Each beast had its own separate stall, arranged upon a flooring of sand three feet deep, which was laid upon a deck specially constructed in the vessel. Under this deck, each ship carried three hundred tuns of fresh water, for the use of the cattle. Hay and straw were provided in abundance for the voyage; and all kinds of seed, and plows and other farming implements, were sent on board, for the use of the colony. Hulft also added a third ship to the expedition. Along with these three vessels went a fast-sailing yacht, or 'fluyt,' fitted out by the directors of the company, on their own account. These vessels carried out six entire families, besides several free emigrants; so that forty new settlers were thus added to the population of New Netherlands. The voyage was entirely successful; only two of the beasts died at sea."—*Brodhead's History of the State of New York.*

**12. The Indian Confederacy in New York** (pp. 89, 87).—"Foremost in war, foremost in eloquence, foremost in their savage arts of policy, stood the fierce people called by the French the *Iroquois* (*ĕ'-ro-quah*). They occupied Central New York, but extended their conquests and their depredations from Quebec to the Carolinas, and from the Western prairies to the forests of Maine. They consisted of five tribes or nations—the Mohawks, the Oneidas, the Onondagas, the Cayugas, and the Senecas (to whom a sixth, the Tuscaroras, was afterwards added, in 1715). * * * Both reason and tradition point to the conclusion that the Iroquois formed, originally, one undivided people. Sundered, like countless other tribes, by dissensions, caprice, or the necessities of the hunter-life, they separated into five distinct nations. * * * At length, says tradition, a celestial being, incarnate on earth, counseled them to compose their strife and unite in a league of defense and aggression. Another personage—wholly mortal, yet wonderfully endowed—a renowned warrior and a mighty magician, stands, with his hair of writhing snakes, grotesquely conspicuous through the dim light of tradition, at this birth of Iroquois nationality. This was *At-o-tar'-ho*, a chief of the Onondagas; and from this honored source has sprung a long line of chieftains, heirs not to the blood alone, but to the name of their great predecessor. A few years since, there lived in Onondaga Hollow (State of New York) a handsome Indian boy, on whom the dwindled remnant of the nation looked with pride, as their destined Atotarho. With earthly and celestial aid, the league was consummated, and, through all the land, the forests trembled at the name of the Iroquois."—*Parkman's Jesuits in North America.*

**13. The Great Charter of Rhode Island Saved** (p. 31, ¶ 44).—"Stopping at Newport with his troops, Andros proposed to take possession of the charter of Rhode Island (1687). But in this attempt he was foiled by the foresight of the cautious Clarke (Governor of the colony), who, on hearing of his arrival, sent the precious parchment to his brother, with orders to have it concealed in some place unknown to himself, but within the knowledge of the secretary. He then waited upon Sir Edmund (Andros) and invited him to his home. A great search was made for the coveted document, but it could nowhere be found while Andros remained in Newport. After he left it was returned to Governor Clarke, who kept it until the fall of Andros permitted a resumption of the government under it. * * * In his letter to the Board of Trade, Andros makes no allusion to the successful ruse of the Governor of Rhode Island.—*Arnold's History of Rhode Island.*

Digitized by Google

**14. The First Settlement in Maryland** (p. 42, ¶ 77).—"The native inhabitants having suffered from the superior power of the Susquehannas, who occupied the district between the bays, had already (1634) resolved to move into places of more security, in the interior; and many of them had begun to migrate before the English arrived. To Calvert, the spot seemed convenient for a plantation. It was easy, by presents of cloth and axes, of hoes and knives, to gain the good-will of the natives, and to purchase their rights to the soil, which they were preparing to abandon. They readily gave consent that the English should occupy one-half of their town, and, after the harvest, should become the exclusive tenants of the whole. Mutual promises of friendship and peace were made, so that the Catholics took quiet possession of the little place; and religious liberty obtained a home, its only home in the wide world, at the humble village which bore the name of St. Mary's."—*Bancroft's History United States.*

**15. Oglethorpe and the Indian Boy** (p. 48).—"In 1743, General Oglethorpe took with him to England an Indian boy, the son of one of the greatest chiefs in Georgia. Oglethorpe was animated by an earnest desire to make the boy, at any expense and by every effort on his part, a fit instrument to carry the advantages of civilization, and the blessings of Christianity, to his unfortunate brethren. The youth received a liberal education—the best that England could afford in those days—and became a polished man, moving freely in the best society. He then went back to his tribe, the Creeks; and great were the expectations of his noble old friend, and high the hopes of all who wished well to the Indians, when he parted with them, at Savannah. (A fine portrait of Oglethorpe, with his young Indian friend standing in an affectionate attitude by his side, commemorated the event, and was kept in the Garden City of the South—as Savannah was often called—till the British captured the town, in 1778, and destroyed the picture.) But the result was a sad disappointment. In a short time, the accomplished courtier became a wily Indian once more: he laid aside his European costume, and, with it, the habits he had acquired in England; and, before a short year had passed, he had become an Indian warrior once more, in the full and most painful sense of the word."—*De Vere's Romance of American History.*

**16. Death of La Salle** (p. 6, ¶ 8; also topic 99, Ap. p. 70).—"Leaving twenty men at Fort St. Louis (Texas), La Salle, with sixteen men, departed for Canada (1687). * * In the little company of wanderers, there were two men, Duhaut (*dü-o'*), and L'Archevêque (*lar-she-vake*), who had embarked their capital in the enterprise. Of these, Duhaut had long shown a spirit of mutiny. * * Inviting Mo-ran'-get (La Salle's nephew) to take charge of the fruits of a buffalo hunt, they quarreled with him and murdered him. Wondering at the delay of his nephew's return, La Salle went to seek him. At the brink of the river (Trinity) he observed eagles hovering as if over carrion; and he fired an alarm gun. Warned by the sound, Duhaut and L'Archevêque crossed the river: the former skulked in the prairie grass: of the latter, La Salle asked, 'Where is my nephew?' At the moment of the answer, Duhaut fired, and, without uttering a word, La Salle fell dead. 'You are down now, grand bashaw! you are down now!' shouted one of the conspirators, as they despoiled his remains, which were left on the prairie, naked and without burial, to be devoured by wild beasts. Such was the end of this daring adventurer. For force of will and vast conceptions; for various knowledge, and quick adaptation of his genius to untried circumstances; for a sublime magnanimity, that resigned itself to the will of Heaven, and yet triumphed over affliction by energy of purpose and unfaltering hope, he had no superior among his countrymen."—*Bancroft's History of the United States.*

Digitized by Google




Digitized by Google

## SECTION III.

### *The French and Indian War.*

**1.** Although the boundaries between the British and French possessions in America had been, for more than a quarter of a century, a subject of dispute, the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, made in 1748, left them still undefined.

**2.** The English, basing their title upon the discoveries made by the Cabots, laid claim to all the territory from Newfoundland to Florida, extending from the Atlantic to the Pacific. The French claimed all the interior portion adjacent to the rivers St. Lawrence and Mississippi and their tributaries, upon the ground that they had explored and occupied it; and, the better to secure this claim, they erected forts at various places through the region.

**3.** In consequence of these conflicting claims, a war broke out between England and her colonies, with a few Indians, on the one side, and France and her colonies, largely aided by the Indians, on the other, which is known as "The French and Indian War." It was a contest for territory and dominion in America.*

**4.** EVENTS OF 1753.—At the time of the breaking out of the war, there was in existence an organization, known

---

MAP QUESTIONS.—(Map, p. 53.) What river is the outlet of Lake Ontario? What, the outlet of Lake Erie? What are the head branches of the Ohio? Describe the Alleghany. The Monongahela. The Mohawk. Where is Williamsburg? Crown Point? Albany? Fort Edward? Montreal? Ticonderoga? Lake George? Lake Champlain? Kittanning? Where was Fort Venango? Fort Le Bœuf? Fort Duquesne? Fort Necessity? Fort Niagara? Fort Wm. Henry? Fort Frontenac?

1. When, treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle? What dispute still continued?
2. What territory did the English claim? By what right? The French claim? What was the basis? *Ans.* That which exploration and occupancy gave.
3. To what did the conflicting claims lead? The object of the contest?

* "The settlements of the French, stretching from north to south, necessarily interfered with those of the English, extending from east to west. Their plan, if executed, would completely have environed the English. Canada and Louisiana united would, as has been aptly said, have formed a bow, of which the English colonies would have constituted the string. * * * The delightful region between the summit of the Alleghany Mountains and the Mississippi was the object for which these two powerful nations contended; and it now became apparent that the sword alone could decide the contest."—*Marshall's Life of Washington.*

NOTE.—For an account of the early occupation of the Mississippi Valley, see topic 209, Appendix, p. 77.

Digitized by Google

as the Ohio Company, which had obtained from the king of England a grant of land on and near the Ohio River, for the purpose of carrying on the fur-trade with the Indians, and of settling the country.

5. The French having seized three British traders, and also built forts on the land of the Ohio Company, Governor Din-wid'-die, of the Virginia colony, determined to send a letter to their commander, remonstrating against the aggressive acts. This message was intrusted to George Washington, a young man not then twenty-two years of age.

6. Washington set out on his mission on the last day of Oct., 1753, from Williamsburg, then the capital of Virginia. He had before him a difficult and dangerous journey of four hundred miles, more than half of which was through a wilderness inhabited by hostile Indians. Having reached Fort Ve-nan'-go, he was conducted thence to Fort Le Bœuf (*buf*), where he found the French commander, St. Pierre (*pe-ãre'*).

7. Events of 1754.—After an absence of eleven weeks, during which he encountered severe hardships amid snow, icy floods, and hostile Indians, Washington delivered to Dinwiddie St. Pierre's letter in reply. In it St. Pierre stated that he was acting under orders from Du Quesne (*doo-kane'*), governor of Canada, and that he could not leave the territory. This document and the report made by Washington of warlike preparation which he had seen during his journey, convinced the English that, if they would secure possession of the region on and near the Ohio, they must act without delay. (Note 1, end of Se-

4. What can you state of the formation of the Ohio Company?
5. What message was sent to the French? What part was assigned to Washington? When and where was Washington born? *Ans.* In Virginia, on the 22d of February, 1732.
6. Give an account of Washington's journey to Le Bœuf.
7. Of his journey back to Williamsburg. What reply did he bring? Of what were the English convinced? What produced that conviction?

Digitized by Google

8. At the confluence of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers, the Ohio Company commenced the construction of a fort; and a body of troops, of which Washington became the commander, was sent to protect the works. Before, however, he had time to reach the place, a party of French and Indians suddenly appeared and took possession. The works were then completed, and called Fort Duquesne.

9. Receiving intelligence of the disaster, and that a strong force was marching to intercept him, Washington fell back, and took a position at a place called the Great Meadows. Here word came to him that a small detachment of the French had advanced to within a few miles of his position, where they were skulking, evidently with hostile intent. With the determination of forestalling their design, he sallied forth, came upon them by surprise, and, in the contest that followed, 28th of May, 1754, killed or captured all but one.

10. In little more than a month after, a force of fifteen hundred French and Indians, commanded by De Villiers (*vil-le-āre'*), made an attack upon a small fort which Washington had constructed and named Fort Necessity.* A brave defence of ten hours was made, but, on the morning of the 4th of July, Washington was compelled to surrender, though upon condition that he and the garrison should be permitted to return to Virginia.

11. EVENTS OF 1755.—Four expeditions, on the part of the English, were planned for 1755; namely, against Nova Scotia, Crown Point, Fort Niagara, and Fort Duquesne. The one against Nova Scotia was commanded by Col. Monckton (*monk'-tun*). Two forts there were

8. What measures were then taken against the French? What followed? What name was given to the fort?
9. What course did Washington then pursue? Give an account of the contest that took place. Where were the Great Meadows? (Map, p. 53.)
10. Give an account of the battle of Fort Necessity.
11. What expeditions were planned for 1755? Give an account of the first.

* "The palisaded fort was named Fort Necessity, from the pinching famine that had prevailed during its construction."—*Irving.*

Digitized by Google

captured in June; a beautiful and fertile country was reduced to a solitude; and the inhabitants by thousands were driven on board the English ships, and scattered among the colonists of New England and other places.*

**12.** Gen. Brad'-dock, who had been sent to America as commander-in-chief of the royal forces, headed the expedition against Duquesne. Disregarding the suggestions of Washington, who was acting as his aid-de-camp, he fell into an ambush of French and Indians, July the 9th, when within a few miles of the fort, and was defeated with great loss, he himself being mortally wounded. This conflict is known as the battle of the Mo-non-ga-he'-la.†

**13.** The expedition against Niagara was also a failure. Gov. Shir'-ley, who commanded it, advanced as far as Oswego; but the defeat of Braddock paralyzed his efforts, his Indian allies deserted, and finally the enterprise was abandoned. Leaving garrisons for two new forts which had been commenced, Shirley returned to Albany.

**14.** To Gen. Johnson had been confided the expedition against Crown Point. He was preceded by Gen. Ly'-man, who, at the "carrying place" between the Hudson and Lake George, constructed Fort Edward. Johnson advanced as far as the head of the lake, and, while encamped there, his Indian scouts brought word that two thousand French and Indians were marching to attack Fort Edward. Dieskau (*de-es-ko'*), commanding this force, had made his way from Montreal.

**15.** Losing no time, Johnson sent Col. Williams, with twelve hundred men, two hundred of whom were Indians, to intercept the enemy. But Dieskau changed his plan. As he approached the fort, Sept. 8th, his Indian allies,

**12.** Of the expedition against Duquesne. What battle was fought?
**13.** Give an account of the expedition against Niagara.
**14.** How was the expedition against Crown Point undertaken? Where did Johnson encamp? What word did he receive?
**15.** What detachment did he send? Dieskau's plan? What followed?

* Longfellow's poem of "Evangeline" is based on an incident in this act of tyranny. Read Note 2, end of Section.
† Read Note 3, end of Section.

Digitized by Google

fearful of its cannon, refused to proceed. Then, taking another direction, to surprise the army at the lake, he drew the forces of Williams into an ambush, and routed them with fearful slaughter, pursuing the fugitives to Johnson's camp.

**16.** From behind a breastwork of trees, Johnson fired upon his assailants; but he receiving a wound early in the action, the defence was continued by Lyman, and finally turned into an attack. The French and their allies were defeated; and Dieskau, incurably wounded, was made a prisoner. Johnson, after erecting Fort William Henry, retired to Albany. (See, for Dieskau, App., p. 66, top. 46.)*

**17.** EVENTS OF 1756.—The Marquis de Montcalm (*mont-kam'*), Dieskau's successor, in August, 1756, made an attack upon Oswego, and compelled the English, numbering fourteen hundred men, to surrender. A large amount of stores and money also fell into the hands of the victor. Incited by French emissaries, the Indians of the Ohio committed great desolation; but Col. Armstrong, after a long and perilous march, reached Kittanning (*kit-tan'-ning*), their chief town, and destroyed it by fire.

**18.** EVENTS OF 1757.—In the beginning of August, 1757, Montcalm, with nine thousand men, two thousand of whom were Indians, laid siege to Fort William Henry. For six days its commander, Col. Monro, kept up a vigorous defence, trusting to receive aid from Gen. Webb, who, at the time, was in command of a large force at Fort Edward, only fifteen miles off.

**19.** At length, learning that no assistance would be sent, and being without ammunition, he was compelled

**16.** Account of the battle at the lake. What did Johnson then do?
**17.** What did the French accomplish in 1756? Where is Oswego? (p. 53.) Give an account of Armstrong's expedition. Where is Kittanning? (p. 53.)
**18.** What was the principal military operation of 1757? Give an account of it. Where was Fort Wm. Henry? (p. 53.)

* "Dieskau was found by his pursuers leaning against a stump of a tree. As they approached, he felt for his watch to secure kind treatment by delivering it up. A soldier, thinking he was drawing forth a pistol to defend himself, shot him through the hips."—*Irving.*

Digitized by Google

to surrender, on the 9th, capitulating that his men should have a safe escort to Webb's quarters. Notwithstanding the stipulation, the English had hardly left the fort before the Indian allies of Montcalm, incited by the hope of plunder, attacked them and massacred a large number The fort was demolished by order of Montcalm.

**20.** EVENTS OF 1758.—Upon the death of Braddock, which occurred four days after his defeat in 1755, the general command devolved upon Shirley. Shirley was soon succeeded by Lord Lou'-don, and he, in turn, by Gen. Ab'-er-crom-by.* With the celebrated William Pitt, afterward Lord Chatham, at the head of the British government, preparations to carry on the war were made with great vigor. Three expeditions were planned for 1758: one, under Gen. Amherst (*am'-erst*), against Louisburg; another, under Abercromby, against Fort Ticonderoga; and a third, under Gen. Forbes, against Fort Duquesne.

**21.** On the 26th of July Louisburg surrendered, after a desperate resistance of more than forty days, during which two officers, Wolfe and Montgomery, greatly distinguished themselves by their bravery. St. John's Island, now Prince Edward, as well as the island of Cape Breton (*brit'-un*), fell into the hands of the British.

**22.** Abercromby, making his way northward, sailed down Lake George, and, debarking near its outlet, commenced a march through the forests toward Ticonderoga, then commanded by Montcalm. In a conflict which took place, July 6th, between advanced bodies of the contending parties, Lord Howe, an officer greatly beloved, was slain. Two days after, an unsuccessful assault

**19.** Why was Monroe compelled to surrender? What capitulation was entered into? State how it was violated.

**20.** Who, up to 1758, were the successive English commanders? What expeditions were planned for that year? Who was William Pitt?

**21.** Where is Louisburg? (Map, p. 61.) Cape Breton Island? St. John's Island? Give an account of the expedition against Louisburg. What were the further results of the victory?

**22.** Give an account of the expedition commanded by Abercromby.

NOTE.—For Braddock, see Appendix, p. 64, topic 22.

* Abercromby's name is misspelled by many writers.

Digitized by Google

upon the fort was made in full force, the assailants losing nearly two thousand men in killed and wounded.*

**23.** While Abercromby, at the head of Lake George, was wasting away the rest of the season, a detachment of his army, under Col. Bradstreet, achieved an important success. Proceeding by way of the Mohawk and Oswego, Bradstreet crossed Lake Ontario, and captured Fort Fron'-te-nac, situated where Kingston now stands. A vast amount of military stores and several vessels fell into his hands.

**24.** In the expedition against Fort Duquesne, Washington held a prominent command. Instead of advancing by the old road which Braddock had taken in 1755, it was decided, against the judgment of Washington, that a new one further east should be opened for the expedition. The progress of the army was, consequently, slow, and a feeling of discouragement pervaded the troops, which was greatly increased by a defeat sustained by Major Grant, while leading an advanced detachment.

**25.** It was then determined to abandon the expedition, but before the order to return was given, prisoners were brought in who made known the fact that the garrison at the fort was in a weak condition. The march was therefore resumed, but when Duquesne was reached, it was found in flames and deserted. In honor of their illustrious statesman, the English changed the name of the place to Fort Pitt. (See topic 135, App. p. 72.)

**26.** EVENTS OF 1759.—The great object of the campaign of 1759 was the reduction of Canada. Gen. Wolfe was to lay siege to Quebec; Amherst, who had succeeded Abercromby as commander-in-chief, was to reduce Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and then co-operate with Wolfe;

**23.** Of the one under Bradstreet. Where was Fort Frontenac? (p. 53.)
**24.** Give an account of the progress of the expedition against Duquesne.
**25.** State what afterward occurred. What change in name was made?
**26.** What plan of operation was adopted for 1759?

* Read Note 4, end of Section.

Digitized by Google



WOLFE.



ROGER WILLIAMS.



HANCOCK.



PATRICK HENRY.



FRANKLIN.



WARREN.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google




and Gen. Prideaux (*prid'-o*) was to capture Niagara and Montreal, and then join Amherst.

**27.** Prideaux reached Niagara in July, but, during the siege of the place, was killed. Johnson, having succeeded to the command, defeated a relief force of French and Indians, and compelled the besieged to surrender.* Instead, however, of proceeding to Montreal, he made his

MAP QUESTIONS.—Into what body of water does the St. Lawrence flow? The St. John's? The Penobscot? The Kennebec? The Connecticut? What country is on the north of the St. Lawrence? What natural division of land is Nova Scotia? Describe it. Where is Louisburg? St. John's, or Prince Edward Island? Cape Breton I.? Quebec? Isle of Orleans? Point Levi?

**27.** Give an account of the expedition against Niagara. Of Amherst's expedition. Where are Ticonderoga and Crown Point?

* Johnson came from Ireland about the year 1734. "Settling in the valley of the Mohawk, he carried on a prosperous traffic with the Indians, and gained an extraordinary influence over the neighboring Iroquois. As his resources increased, he built two mansions, known respectively by the names of Johnson Castle and Johnson Hall, the latter of which, a well-constructed building of wood and stone, is still standing in the village of Johnstown. Both were fortified against attack, and the latter was surrounded with cabins built for the reception of the Indians, who often came in crowds to visit the proprietor, invading his dwelling at all hours, loitering in the doorways, spreading their blankets in the passages, and infecting the air with the fumes of stale tobacco." (See topic 83, Ap. p. 69.) — *Parkman's Conspiracy of Pontiac.*

Digitized by Google

way to Albany. Amherst reached the vicinity of Ticonderoga, when the French abandoned both it and Crown Point without striking a blow. He went into winter-quarters at the latter place, and thus failed to co-operate with Wolfe.

**28.** With eight thousand men Wolfe ascended the St. Lawrence and landed his army upon the Isle of Orleans. On the 31st of July he made a daring though unsuccessful attempt upon the French intrenchments before Quebec. Not discouraged by the disaster, the English effected a landing at night about two miles above the city, and climbing the steep banks of the river, by daybreak, on the following morning, September 13th, stood on the Plains of Abraham in battle array. (Note 5, end of Sec.)

**29.** Montcalm, surprised at the advantage gained by the English, left his strong position, and at once attacked them. A fierce and bloody battle followed, which resulted in the defeat of the French. Wolfe fell in the moment of victory.* Montcalm, who was mortally wounded, on being told that he could not live long, replied: "So much the better; I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec." The city capitulated five days after.

**30.** EVENTS OF 1760, AND CLOSE OF THE WAR. — De Levi, Montcalm's successor, made extensive preparations for the recovery of Quebec. He marched to Sillery, three miles above the city, and there, on the 28th of April, 1760, was fought one of the most desperate battles of the war.

---

**28.** Give an account of Wolfe's operations. Where is the Isle of Orleans? (See Map, p. 61.) Where are the Plains of Abraham?

**29.** Give an account of the battle that followed. What memorable reply did Montcalm make? When did Quebec fall into the hands of the English?

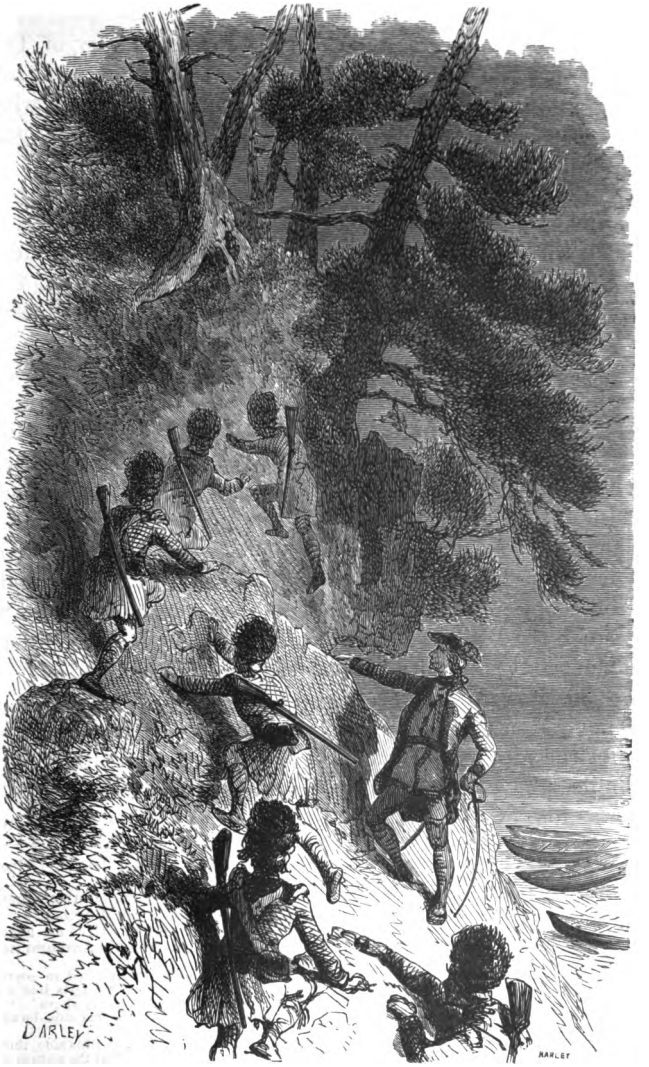
**30.** Who was De Levi? What preparation did he make? Give an account of the battle that followed. Where is Sillery? What success did Amherst have?

---

* "'See how they run,' one of the officers exclaimed, as the French fled in confusion before the levelled bayonets. 'Who run?' demanded Wolfe, opening his eyes like a man aroused from sleep. 'The enemy, sir,' was the reply; 'they give way everywhere.' * * * 'Now, God be praised, I die in peace,' he murmured; and turning on his side, he calmly breathed his last."—*Parkman's Conspiracy of Pontiac.*

"He wrote, from the testimony of a brother aide-de-camp, who was by his side, that the [illegible] (Wolfe) never spoke at all after receiving his death-wound; so that the phrase which [illegible] put into the mouth of the dying hero may be considered as no more authentic than [illegible] of Livy or Thucydides."—*Thackeray's Virginians.*

Digitized by Google




**Scaling the Heights of Abraham.**

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

At length the English, after losing a thousand men, fell back; but the opportune arrival of a British fleet, some days after, compelled the French to retreat. Amherst proceeded against and invested Montreal. The governor, unable to resist, signed a capitulation, by which not only that city but the whole of Canada was surrendered to the English.

**31.** The war between France and England continued until 1763, when a treaty of peace was signed at Paris, by which France ceded to Great Britain all her American possessions east of the Mississippi, and north of the Iberville (*i'-ber-vil*) River, in Louisiana.* At the same time Spain ceded Florida to Great Britain.

**32.** PONTIAC'S WAR.—The transfer of the posts between the lakes and the Ohio to the British, whom the Indians disliked, exasperated the savages; and they, in a short time, gained possession of them all, except Niagara, Fort Pitt, and Detroit. Hundreds of families were butchered or driven from their homes. Detroit was besieged six months, but was finally relieved; and at last the Indians were compelled to sue for peace. Pon'-ti-ac, their principal chief, a few years after, was assassinated by an Indian.

## CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

1753. Washington was sent with a letter from Dinwiddie ..Oct 31.
1754. Washington defeated the French at Great Meadows..May 28.
Washington capitulated at Fort Necessity.....July 4.
1755. Monckton expelled the French from Nova Scotia.
Braddock was defeated at the Monongahela .....July 9.
Dieskau defeated the British near Lake George, } ...Sept. 8.
The British defeated Dieskau at Lake George, }
1756. War between England and France was proclaimed.
The French, under Montcalm, captured Oswego ...Aug. 14.
Armstrong defeated the Indians, at Kittanning.....Sept. 8.
1757. Webb surrendered Fort Wm. Henry to Montcalm...Aug. 9.
1758. Montcalm repulsed Abercromby at Ticonderoga.....July 8.
The English, under Amherst, captured Louisburg...July 26.

**31.** When was the war closed? Terms of the treaty? Florida?
**32.** Next war? Its cause? Account of it. Where is Detroit? (P. 105.)

* The Iberville is an outlet of the Mississippi, fourteen miles south of Baton Rouge, connecting the Mississippi with Lake Maurepas.

Digitized by Google

1758. English, under Bradstreet, captured Ft. Frontenac..Aug. 27.
Aubry defeated Grant near Fort Duquesne.....Sept. 21.
Fort Duquesne fell into the hands of the English...Nov. 25.
1759. The English, under Johnson, captured Ft. Niagara..July 25.
Wolfe was defeated in the battle of Montmorenci....July 31.
Wolfe defeated Montcalm on the Plains of Abraham, Sept. 13
Quebec was surrendered to the English.....Sept. 18
1760. De Levi defeated the English at Sillery, near Quebec, Apr. 28
Montreal surrendered to the English, under Amherst, Sept. 8.
1763. The Treaty of Paris ended the French and Indian War, Feb. 10.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS.


| | PAGE |
|---|---|
| 1. What was the principal cause of the French and Indian War? | 54 |
| 2. On what mission was Washington sent in 1753? | 55 |
| 3. Give an account of his journey and success | 55 |
| 4. In what direction was Fort Le Bœuf from Williamsburg? | 53 |
| 5. Give the history of the construction of Fort Duquesne | 56 |
| 6. Give an account of the battle of the Great Meadows | 56 |
| 7. Name three principal events of 1753 and 1754 | 63 |
| 8. Name four principal events of 1755 | 63 |
| 9. Name nine principal events of the next three years | 63, 64 |
| 10. Name seven principal events that next occurred | 64 |
| 11. State all you can of General Braddock | 57 |
| 12. State all you can of Governor Shirley | 57–59 |
| 13 State all you can of General Johnson | 57, 58, 61, 62 |
| 14. State what you can of Baron Dieskau | 57, 58 |
| 15. State what you can of Montcalm | 58, 59, 62 |
| 16. Give an account of the expedition against Kittanning | 58 |
| 17. State what you can of General Amherst | 59, 60, 62, 63 |
| 18. Give an account of Bradstreet's expedition against Frontenac | 60 |
| 19. Give an account of Forbes's expedition against Duquesne | 60 |
| 20. State what you can of General Wolfe | 59, 60, 62 |
| 21. Give an account of the military events of 1760 | 62, 63 |
| 22. Name, in order, sixteen battles of the war | 63, 64 |
| 23. Name seven in which the English were successful | 63, 64 |
| 24. Name nine in which the French were successful | 63, 64 |
| 25. Name five battles that were fought in Pennsylvania | 63, 64 |
| 26. Name six that were fought in New York | 63, 64 |
| 27. Name four that were fought in Canada | 63, 64 |
| 28. Give an account of Monckton's expedition | 56, 57 |
| 29. Give the history of Louisburg to the close of 1758 | 36, 59 |
| 30. Give the history of Fort Duquesne to the close of 1758 | 56, 55, 57, 59, 60 |
| 31. When did the French and Indian War begin and end? | 62, 64 |
| 32. Give an account of Pontiac's War | 63 |


NOTE.—"The victory on the Plains of Abraham and the downfall of Quebec filled all England with pride and exultation. From north to south, the land blazed with illuminations, and resounded with the ringing of bells, the firing of guns, and the shouts of the multitude. In one village alone all was dark and silent amid the general joy, for here dwelt the mother of Wolfe. The populace, with unwonted delicacy, respected her lonely sorrow, and forbore to obtrude the sound of their rejoicings upon the grief for one who had been through life her pride and solace, and repaid her love with a tender and constant devotion."—*Parkman's Conspiracy of Pontiac.*

Digitized by Google

English. French.

Henry VII. | Henry VIII. | Elizabeth. | James I. | Charles I. | Charles VIII. | Louis XII. | Francis I. | Charles IX. | Henry III. | Henry IV. | Louis XIII.

## Discoveries and Explorations.

1492. The West Indies were discovered by Columbus.
1497. North America was discovered by the Cabots.
1498. Coast of N. America explored by Sebastian Cabot.
South America was discovered by Columbus.
1499. " " was visited by Amerigo Vespucci.
1513. Florida was discovered by Ponce de Leon.
The Pacific Ocean was discovered by Balboa.
1517. Yucatan was discovered by Cordova.
1520. The coast of Carolina was visited by De Ayllon.
1521. Mexico was explored and conquered by Cortez.
1524. Coast of North America explored by Verrazzani.
1528. Florida was explored by Narvaez.
1534. The St. Lawrence was discovered by Cartier.
1541. The Mississippi was discovered by De Soto.

## Colonial Events.

1562. The Huguenots attempted to colonize Carolina.
1564. The second Huguenot colony was begun in Florida.
1565. Florida, at St. Augustine, was settled by Spaniards.
1579. West coast of North America explored by Drake.
1584. Carolina coast explored by Raleigh's expedition.
1585-7. Raleigh made two attempts to colonize Carolina.
1602. The Massachusetts coast was explored by Gosnold.
1606. The London and Plymouth Co's received charters.
1607. The London Co. planted a colony at Jamestown.
1609. The Hudson River was discovered by Hudson.
1614. The New England coast was explored by Smith.
New York was settled by the Dutch.
1619. Negro slavery was introduced into Virginia.
1620. Plymouth, Massachusetts, was settled.
1621. The treaty with Massasoit was made.
1622. The first Indian massacre in Virginia occurred.
1623. New Hampshire was settled.
1630. Boston settled by the Massachusetts Bay colony.
1633. Connecticut was settled at Windsor.
1634. Maryland (at St. Mary's) was settled.
1635. Saybrook (2d colony in Connecticut) was settled.
1636. Providence (1st colony in Rhode Island) was settled.
1637. The Pequods of Connecticut were destroyed.
1638 The second colony of Rhode Island was established.
The Swedish colony in Delaware was established.
New Haven (3d colony in Connecticut) was settled.
1643. Four New England colonies formed a Union.
1644. The two colonies of Rhode Island were united.

Digitized by Google

English. French.

The Commonwealth.

1650. North Carolina (on the Chowan) was settled.
1651. Parliament passed the "Navigation Act."
1655. New Sweden (Delaware) conquered by the Dutch.
1656. The "Persecution of Quakers" in Massachusetts.

Charles II.

1663. The grant of Carolina to Clarendon and others.
1664. New York taken by the English from the Dutch.
New Jersey (at Elizabeth) was settled.
1665. The Connecticut colonies united under one charter.
1670. South Carolina (on the Ashley) was settled.
1673. Virginia was ceded to Culpepper and Arlington.
1675. King Philip's War in New England.
1682. Pennsylvania (at Philadelphia) was settled.
Delaware granted by the Duke of York to Penn.

Louis XIV.

Wm. III.

1689. **King William's War** began in America.
1690. Port Royal (Nova Scotia) captured by the English.
1692. Plymouth was united with Massachusetts.
1697. The "Treaty of Ryswick" ended the war.

Anne.

1702. **Queen Anne's War** began in America.
1710. Port Royal captured (2d time) by the English.
1713. The "Treaty of Utrecht" ended the war.
1729. Carolina separated into North and South Carolina.
1732. Washington was born in Virginia, Feb. 22.
1733. Georgia (at Savannah) was settled.
1744. **King George's War** began in America.
1745. Louisburg was taken (1st time) by the English.
1748. The "Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle" ended the war.

George II.

1754. **The French and Indian War.**
Washington defeated the French at Gt. Meadows.
Washington capitulated at Fort Necessity.
1755. The French were expelled from Nova Scotia.
Braddock was defeated at the Monongahela.
1756. Oswego was captured by the French.
1757. Fort William Henry surrendered to the French.
1758. Abercromby was defeated at Ticonderoga.
Louisburg was taken (2d time) by the English.
Ft. Frontenac (Kingston) was taken by the English.
1759. Ft. Niagara was taken by the English.
The battle of Montmorenci: Wolfe was defeated.
Wolfe defeated Montcalm before Quebec.
Quebec was surrendered to the English.
1760. The English were defeated near Quebec.
Montreal was surrendered to the English.
1763. The "Treaty of Paris" ended the war.

Louis XV.

G. III.

Digitized by Google

## SUGGESTIVE SUMMARY BY COLONIES.

The pupils will prepare written exercises in narrative form, taking each colony as a topic. They should make the statements with fulness, and as near as possible in their own language; or, the exercise may be prepared in the form of an analysis, according to the model given before page 18.

---

**Virginia.**—First Charter—Jamestown—Sufferings—Wingfield — Ratcliffe — Smith — Pocahontas — Second Charter—Starving Time—Lord Delaware—Third Charter—Slavery—Planters' Wives—Indian Massacres—Fate of the third Charter—Navigation Act—Grant to Culpepper and Arlington—Causes for dissatisfaction—Subsequent history—Bacon's Rebellion—French and Indian War—Government *—Name.*

**Massachusetts.**—Gosnold—Pring—Plymouth Co.—Smith—Council of Plymouth—Pilgrims—The Mayflower—Plymouth—Carver—Brewster and others—Distress—Treaty with Massasoit — Massachusetts Bay Colony—Boston—Other settlements—Harvard College—Union of Colonies—Quakers—King Philip's War—Fate of the Charter, and why—King William's War—Witchcraft—Union of Plymouth with Massachusetts—Queen Anne's War—King George's War—French and Indian War—Government—Name.

**New Hampshire.**—Smith—Council of Plymouth—Grant to Gorges and Mason—Settlements—Wheelwright—Mason's subsequent ownership—Union with Massachusetts—Land Controversy—Government—Name.

**Connecticut.**—Council of Plymouth — Subsequent Proprietors—Connecticut Colony — Saybrook Colony—Pequod War—New Haven Colony—Union of the Colonies—Andros—The Charter—Government—Name.

**Rhode Island.**—Roger Williams—Providence Settlement—Coddington — Rhode Island Settlement—Union of the Settlements—Charter—Government—Name.

---

* See Appendix, page 9; also topics at the end of the book.

Digitized by Google

**New York.**—Henry Hudson—Settled—Inducements to settlers—Dutch Governors—Stuyvesant in Delaware —The Grant to the Duke of York—The surrender to the English—Change of Names—Under English Rule—Recovery by the Dutch—Slaves—French and Indian War —Battles near Fort George—Oswego—Ft. Wm. Henry—Ticonderoga—Government—Name.

**New Jersey.**—New Netherlands — Dutch trading posts and forts—Grant to the Duke of York—To Berkeley and Carteret—Elizabeth—The Duke of York's conduct—The disposition of Berkeley's interest—The subsequent ownership of New Jersey—The Union with New York—Government—Name.

**Maryland.**— Part of Virginia — Clayborne — The Charter—Settlement—Clayborne's Rebellion—Toleration Act — Protestant Intolerance — Subsequent History — Government—Name.

**Pennsylvania.**—Swedish Settlements—Penn—Philadelphia—Indian Treaty—Penn's Government—French and Indian War—Great Meadows—Fort Necessity—Braddock's Defeat—Kittanning—Fort Du Quesne—Government—Name.

**Delaware.**—Gustavus Adolphus—Purchase of land —Charter—Name of New Sweden—New Settlements— New Netherlands—Dutch Conquest—Part of New York —Subsequent history—Government—Name.

**North and South Carolina.**—Exploration of Amidas and Barlow—Raleigh's attempts at settlement —The Albemarle County Colony—The First Grant to Clarendon & Co.—The Clarendon County Colony—The Second Grant to Clarendon & Co.— The Carteret County Colony—Charleston—The Separation of the Carolinas—Subsequent history—Government—Name.

**Georgia.**—Different Claims to the Territory—The Grant to Oglethorpe and others—Settlement—Character of Settlers—Regulations of the Trustees—Hostilities with Spanish Neighbors—Final action of the Trustees—Government—Name.

Digitized by Google

**1. Washington's Perils returning from Venango** (p. 55, ¶ 7).—"Washington had expected to find the river (the Alleghany) frozen completely over; it was so only for about fifty yards from either shore, while great quantities of broken ice were driving down the main channel. Trusting that he had out-traveled pursuit, he encamped on the border of the river; still, it was an anxious night, and he was up at daybreak to devise some means of reaching the opposite bank. No other mode presented itself than by a raft, and to construct this they (he and one companion named Gist) had but one poor hatchet. With this they set resolutely to work, and labored all day, but the sun went down before their raft was finished. They launched it, however, and getting on board, endeavored to propel it across with setting poles. Before they were half way over, the raft became jammed between cakes of ice, and they were in imminent peril. Washington planted his pole on the bottom of the stream, and leaned against it with all his might to stay the raft until the ice should pass by. The rapid current forced the ice against the pole with such violence that he was jerked into the water, where it was at least ten feet deep. He only saved himself from being swept away and drowned, by catching hold of one of the raft logs. It was now impossible, with all their exertions, to get to either shore; abandoning the raft, therefore, they got upon an island, near which they were drifting. Here they passed the night, exposed to intense cold, by which the hands and feet of Mr. Gist were frozen. In the morning they found the drift ice wedged so closely together, that they succeeded in getting from the island to the opposite side of the river; and before night they were in comfortable quarters at the house of Frazier, the Indian trader, at the mouth of Turtle Creek, on the Monongahela."—*Irving's Life of Washington.*

**2. The Acadians expelled from Nova Scotia** (p. 56, ¶ 11).—"Proclamations, drawn up with perfidious skill, ordered the people to assemble in the principal villages. Four hundred and eighteen unarmed men, heads of families, putting their trust in British honor, met in the church of Grand-Pré. A body of soldiers, hitherto kept in the background, now started from their hiding-place and surrounded the church. The soldiers then collected the women and children outside. More than a thousand persons were thus made prisoners in Grand-Pré alone. . . . . Before embarking, the prisoners were ranged six abreast, the young men in front. The latter refused to move, claiming the execution of the promise made to them that they should accompany their relatives; but a body of soldiers was called, who drove them on with fixed bayonets. The road from the chapel to the river was a mile long. It was lined on both sides with women and children, who, on bended knees, and in tears, encouraged their husbands, sons, fathers; pouring upon them their parting blessings. The sad procession passed on slowly, praying and singing hymns. At length the train reached the sea-shore, when the males were consigned to this vessel and that; the women and children were stowed away pell-mell in other vessels. The transports, freighted with victims, set sail for the Anglo-American colonies, and they discharged their living cargoes, at intervals, along the whole seaboard, from Boston to Carolina, destitute of means of subsistence and without any protection."—*Bell's History of Canada.*

**3. Washington could not be Slain in Battle** (p. 57, ¶ 12).—"There is a tradition, worthy of notice, which rests on the authority of Dr. Craik, the intimate friend of Washington from his boyhood to his death, and who was with him at the battle of the Monongahela. Fifteen years after that event, they traveled together on an expedition to the western country with a party of woodsmen, for the purpose of exploring wild lands. While near the junction of

Digitized by Google

the Great Kenhawa and Ohio Rivers, a company of Indians came to them with an interpreter, at the head of whom was an aged and venerable chief. This personage made known to them by the interpreter, that, hearing Colonel Washington was in that region, he had come a long way to visit him, adding, that, during the battle of the Monongahela, he had singled him out as a conspicuous object, fired his rifle at him many times, and directed his young warriors to do the same, but, to his utter astonishment, none of their balls took effect. He was then persuaded that the youthful hero was under the special guardianship of the Great Spirit, and ceased to fire at him any longer. He was now come to pay homage to the man who was the particular favorite of Heaven, and who could never die in battle."—*Sparks's Life of Washington.*

**4. Abercromby descending Lake George** (p. 59, ¶ 22).—"Nine thousand provincials, from New England, New York, and New Jersey, assembled on the shore of Lake George. There were the six hundred New England rangers, dressed like woodmen; armed with a firelock and a hatchet; under their arm a powder-horn; a leathern bag for bullets at their waist; and to each officer a pocket compass as a guide in the forest. . . . . On the 5th of July (1758), the armament of more than fifteen thousand men, the largest body of European origin that had ever been assembled in America, struck their tents at daybreak, and in nine hundred small boats, and one hundred and thirty-five whale boats, with artillery mounted on rafts, embarked on Lake George; the fleet, bright with banners, and cheered by martial music, moved in procession down the beautiful lake, beaming with hope and pride, though with no witness but the wilderness. They passed over the broad expanse of waters to the first narrows; they came where the mountains, then mantled with forests, step down to the water's edge; and in the richest hues of the evening light, they halted at Sabbath-day Point. Long afterwards, Stark remembered, that on that night, Howe, reclining in his tent on a bearskin, and bent on winning a hero's name, questioned him closely as to the position of Ticonderoga, and the fittest mode of conducting the attack."—*Bancroft's History of the United States.*

**5. Scaling the Heights of Abraham** (p. 62, ¶ 28).—"The ebbing tide sufficed to bear the boats along, and nothing broke the silence of the night but the gurgling of the river, and the low voice of Wolfe as he repeated to the officers about him the stanzas of Grey's 'Elegy in a Country Churchyard,' which had recently appeared. Perhaps, as he uttered those strangely appropriate words,—'*The paths of glory lead but to the grave,*'—the shadows of his own approaching fate stole with mournful prophecy across his mind. 'Gentlemen,' he said, as he closed his recital, 'I would rather have written those lines than take Quebec to-morrow.' . . . . They reached the landing-place in safety. The General was one of the first on shore. He looked upward at the rugged heights that towered above him in the gloom. 'You can try it,' he coolly observed to an officer near him, 'but I don't think you'll get up.' At the point where the Highlanders landed, one of their captains, Donald Macdonald, was climbing in advance of his men, when he was challenged by a sentinel. He replied in French, by declaring that he had been sent to relieve the guard. Before the latter was undeceived, a crowd of Highlanders were close at hand, while the steps below were thronged by eager climbers, dragging themselves up by trees, roots, and bushes. The guard turned out, and made a brief but brave resistance. In a moment they were cut to pieces, dispersed, or made prisoners; while men after men came swarming up the heights, and quickly formed upon the plain above. . . . . The sun rose (Sept. 13), and from the ramparts of Quebec the astonished people saw the Plains of Abraham glittering with arms, and the dark red lines of the English forming in array of battle."—*Parkman's Conspiracy of Pontiac.*

Digitized by Google

## SECTION IV.

### *The American Revolution.*

**1.** CAUSES OF THE WAR.—The expenses which Great Britain had incurred in the French and Indian War, greatly increased her national debt. The English ministry, asserting that this had been done in defending their American possessions, proposed to lessen the burden by taxing the colonies. In connection with the proposition thus made, it was affirmed that the right to tax the colonies was inherent in Parliament.

**2.** On the other hand, it was maintained that the colonies had been founded at their own expense; and that, while they had already contributed their full proportion in defending themselves, the advantages resulting from their preservation were shared by England in common with themselves. The colonists also maintained that they could be justly taxed only by a legislature in which they were represented. Inasmuch, then, as they were not allowed to send representatives to the British Parliament, that body had no right to tax them.

**3.** Besides, the policy of Great Britain toward her colonies had been, for years, unjust and illiberal, and calculated to incite a rebellious spirit. The Navigation Act,* previously described, and the issuing of "Writs of Assistance," in 1761, were measures which were loudly com-

1. How did the French and Indian War affect the debt of Great Britain? What assertion was made? What affirmation? What proposition was made?
2. What reply did the colonists make? What was the conclusion?
3. What policy had been pursued? What is said of the Writs of Assistance?

* "March (1763) had not ended when a bill was brought in (the House of Commons) giving authority to employ the ships, seamen, and officers of the navy as custom-house officers and informers. The measure was Grenville's own (Lord Grenville was a member of the British Cabinet, George III. being king), and it was rapidly carried through; so that in three short weeks it became lawful, from the mouth of the St. Lawrence to Cape Florida, for each commander of an armed vessel to stop and examine, and, in case of suspicion, to seize every merchant ship approaching the colonies."—*Bancroft's History of the United States.*

Digitized by Google

plained of. These "Writs" were general search-warrants empowering custom-house officers to break open ships, stores, and private dwellings, in search of merchandise on which it was suspected no duty had been paid.

4. When, therefore, the news of the Stamp Act, passed by Parliament in 1765, reached America, intense indignation was produced. By the provisions of the Act, it was required that stamps, to be furnished by the British government, were to be put upon all instruments, such as deeds, bonds, and notes; as well as upon newspapers, almanacs, and other printed matter. This was "taxation by means of a stamp duty." (Read Note 11, end of Sec.)

5. The first burst of opposition appeared in the Legislature of Virgina, where Patrick Henry distinguished himself by his bold eloquence. Afterward a more formidable opposition was shown, when, upon the recommendation of the Massachusetts Assembly, a Colonial Congress, in which nine colonies were represented, was held in New York. Of this Congress, Timothy Ruggles, of Massachusetts, was elected president; and, after mature deliberation, a Declaration of Rights, a Petition to the King, and a Memorial to Parliament, were adopted.*

6. When the day came on which the Stamp Act was to go into effect, there were no officials courageous enough to carry it into execution; and, besides, all the stamps had been concealed or destroyed. Business continued to be conducted without stamps, and the colonial merchants agreed to import no more goods while the obnoxious measure remained a law. A change in the British ministry occurring, the act was repealed in 1766.

7. Parliament, still claiming the right to tax the colo-

4. What took place in 1765? What effect did the news have in America? What provisions of the Stamp Act are named?
5. What opposition did the Stamp Act meet with?
6. How were the operations of the Stamp Act prevented? What was the consequence?

* See Appendix for Patrick Henry, page 63, topic 70.

Digitized by Google

nies, passed a bill, in 1767, for levying duties on glass, paper, painters' colors, and tea. The news of this and other obnoxious measures of the British government, produced a revival of the feelings which had been caused by the passage of the Stamp Act; and non-importation associations were formed. (Read topic 16, App., p. 63.)

8. The opposition of the people of Boston being particularly bold, two regiments were ordered by Gen. Gage from Halifax to overawe them. The presence of the troops exasperated the people; and affrays ensued, in one of which, called the "Boston Massacre," occurring on the 5th of March, 1770, the soldiers fired upon the populace, killing three men and wounding others.

9. The opposition to the revenue measures induced Parliament to revoke all the duties laid in 1767, except that of three pence per pound on tea; but as the people were contending against the *principle* of "taxation without representation," and not against the *amount* of taxes imposed, the concession was not satisfactory.

10. The tea for New York and Philadelphia was sent back: that for Charleston being stored in damp cellars, perished. At Boston a party of men, since known as the "Boston Tea Party," disguised as Indians, boarded the ships on a moonlight night in December, 1773, broke open the chests of tea, and emptied their contents into the water. (Read topic 218, Appendix, p. 79.)

11. For the purpose of punishing the Bostonians, Parliament passed the Boston Port Bill, which prohibited all

---

7. What right did Parliament still claim? By what act was the claim made known? What was the effect?

8. What military measure was adopted? What was the effect? Give an account of the "Boston Massacre." Where is Halifax? (Map, p. 61.)

9. What concession was made by Parliament? Why was not the concession satisfactory to the colonists?

10. What was done with the tea brought to America? Where is Philadelphia? (Map, p. 43.) Where is Charleston? (Map, p. 46.)

11. What retaliatory measure did Parliament adopt? What generous conduct did the people of Salem manifest? Where is Salem? (Map, p. 94.)

NOTE.—"The whole number of white inhabitants in all the thirteen colonies was, in 1774, about 2,100,000; of blacks, about 500,000."—*Bancroft.*

Digitized by Google

intercourse with Boston by water, and removed the custom-house to Salem. But the people of Salem generously refused to thrive at the expense of their neighbors, and the wharves of that town were offered for the use of the Boston merchants, free of charge.* (Note 4, end of Sec

12. A general Congress, known as "The First Continental Congress," with Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, as president, met at Philadelphia, in September, 1774. All the colonies, except Georgia, were represented. After due deliberation, a Declaration of Rights was made; the suspension of all commercial intercourse with Great Britain recommended; and addresses were voted to the king and the people of Great Britain and Canada.

13. A conflict with Great Britain seemed inevitable. The men in Massachusetts capable of bearing arms were daily trained in military exercises, and pledged to take the field at a minute's notice,—hence their name of "Minute Men." Military measures were also adopted in other colonies, and a general determination was manifest to resist, even with arms, the new oppressions attempted to be imposed by Great Britain.

14. EVENTS OF 1775.—On the night of the 18th of April, 1775, Gen. Gage dispatched eight hundred troops, under Col. Smith and Major Pitcairn (*pit'-kārne*), to destroy some military supplies which the Americans had collected at Concord, a town in Massachusetts, about sixteen miles from Boston.

15. The patriots of Boston, having had a suspicion of such a movement, were on the alert. By preconcerted

12. What convention was held by the colonists? Give an account of its organization and doings.

13. What seemed inevitable? What is said of the "Minute Men?" What is said of military preparations?

MAP QUESTIONS.—(Map, p. 24.) How is Boston situated? Newburyport? Newport? New Bedford? New London? In which direction is Lexington from Boston? Concord from Boston? Salem from Boston?

14. What was Gage's first important measure against the Americans?

* The people of Newburyport made a similar offer.

Digitized by Google

signals, the alarm was given, and when the British reached Lexington, early on the following morning, April 19th, about seventy of the militia were drawn up under arms. The king's troops fired upon them, killing and wounding several. Then was shed the first blood of the Revolution.

**16.** At Concord some of the supplies were destroyed, but the militia beginning to assemble, a skirmish took place, in which several were killed on both sides. On their way back to Boston, the British were re-enforced at Lexington, but during their retreat, as far as Charlestown, the Americans pursued, keeping up a constant and destructive fire upon them. The loss of the British during the day was over two hundred; that of the patriots was about ninety. (Read Note 1, end of Sec.)

**17.** When the news of the day's contest spread, the militia from all parts of New England hastened to join those of Massachusetts in forming a camp near Boston, where General Ward, of Massachusetts, was exercising a limited command. It being deemed important to possess Ticonderoga and Crown Point, both places were captured in May by Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold, and a large supply of military stores secured for the patriots.

**18.** Upon the arrival of re-enforcements from England, under Generals Howe, Bur-goyne', and Sir Henry Clinton, Gage issued a proclamation declaring all Americans in arms rebels and traitors, but offering pardon to those who should return to their allegiance. John Hancock and Samuel Adams, whose offences were pronounced

**15.** What action did the patriots take? Give an account of what occurred at Lexington. Where is Lexington? (Map, p. 21.)

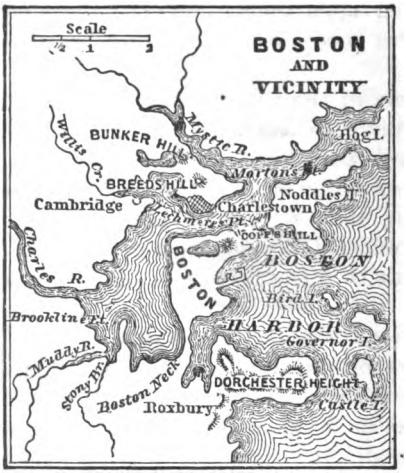
**16.** Give an account of what took place at Concord. Of the other events of the day. Where is Charlestown? (Map, p. 70.)

**17.** What effect did the news have? What success did Allen and Arnold have? Where is Ticonderoga? (Map, p. 38.) Crown Point?

**18.** What re-enforcements came to Gates? What proclamation was issued? Who were excepted? Why were they excepted?

Digitized by Google

too great to admit of pardon, were excepted from this offer.*




**19.** It becoming evident that the British meditated offensive operations, Col. Prescott was sent, on the evening of the 16th of June, with a detachment of one thousand men to fortify Bunker Hill; but, on attaining the heights, he concluded to fortify Breed's Hill instead, this being nearer to Boston. When the British, on the following morning, discovered the redoubt which the Americans had constructed during the night, they commenced a cannonade upon it.

**20.** This failing, three thousand men, under Howe, were sent to dislodge the patriots. Twice did the British approach within a few rods of the redoubt, but they were each time repulsed with heavy loss. Clinton arriving, the third charge was more successful; and the Americans, their ammunition being exhausted, were forced to retreat.

**21.** The British lost, in killed and wounded, more than a thousand men; the Americans, less than half that num-

---

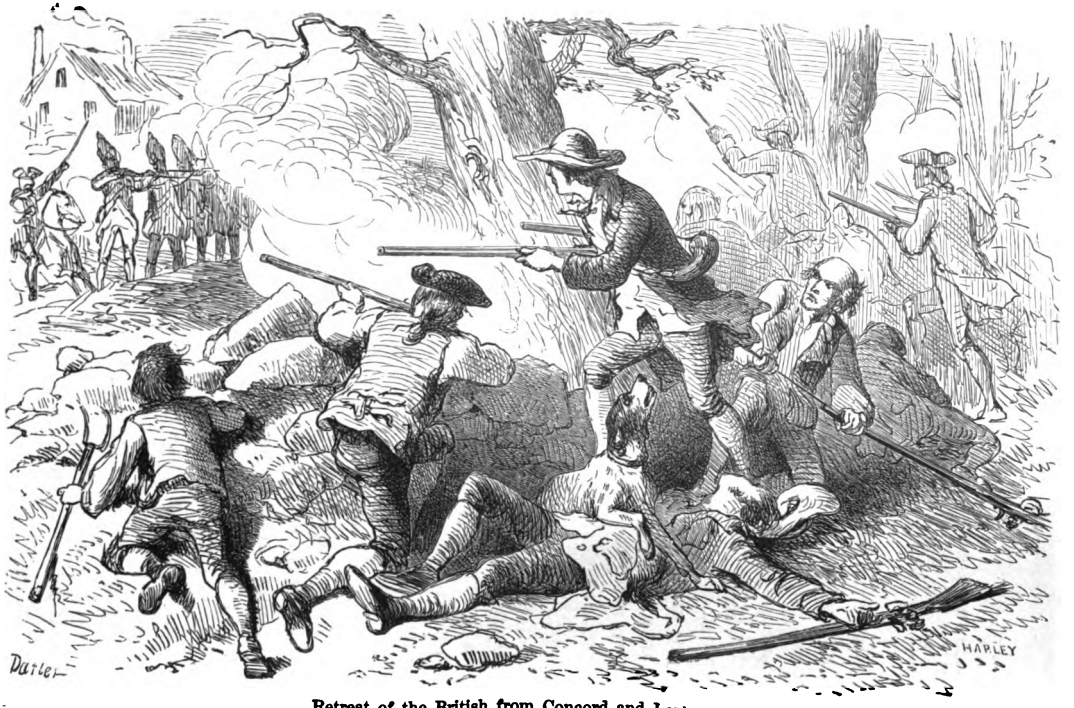
MAP QUESTIONS.—How is Boston situated? In what direction is Boston from Bunker Hill? From Breed's Hill? From Charlestown? From Cambridge? Where was Copp's Hill? Where are Dorchester Heights? Where is South Boston? *Ans.* On and about Dorchester Heights. Of what city does South Boston now form a part? *Ans.* Boston.

**19.** What defensive measures did the patriots adopt?

**19, 20.** Give an account of the battle of Bunker Hill.

* See App., p. 62, topic 2 (Adams); also App., p 63, topic 63 (Hancock).

Digitized by Google




Retreat of the British from Concord and Lexington.

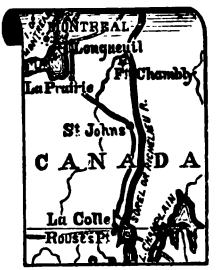
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

ber, but among their slain was the distinguished patriot, Joseph Warren.* Though the British had gained the hill, the victory to them was more disastrous and humiliating than an ordinary defeat; while, to the Americans, the defeat had the effect of a triumph.

**22.** On the very day of the capture of Ticonderoga, May 10th, the second Continental Congress convened at Philadelphia. That body decided to raise an army of twenty thousand men; and, on the 15th of June, by a unanimous vote, elected George Washington commander-in-chief of "the forces raised or to be raised in defence of American liberties."

**23.** Lord Dunmore, the governor of Virginia, took a decided course against the patriots; but, owing to the activity of Patrick Henry and others, he was compelled to make compensation for a quantity of powder which he had seized. Some months later a force of tories and negroes which he had collected attacked a body of Virginians near Norfolk; but the assailants were repulsed with great loss. In revenge, Dunmore, on the first day of the new year, reduced Norfolk to ashes.† (Read Note 11, end of Sec.)



PART OF THE SOREL R.

**24.** To prevent the use of Canada by the British as a place of rendezvous and supply, an invasion, by two forces, was determined upon. Accordingly, Gen. Schuyler (*ski'-ler*), commanding one, was sent by the

**21.** What losses did each party sustain? How did the victory affect the British? How did the defeat affect the patriots?

**22.** When and where did Congress, a second time, meet? What measures were adopted by Congress?

**23.** Give an account of the difficulties in Virginia, with Dunmore. Where is Norfolk? (Map, p. 126.)

**24.** What plan of action against Canada was adopted? Describe the Kennebec River. (Map, p. 61.) How did Montgomery get the command? What success did Montgomery have?

* For account of Warren, see App. p. 74, topic 165; and read also Note 2, end of Section. For the burning of Charlestown, read topic 231, App. p. 83.

† For Henry, see topic 70, App. p. 63.

Digitized by Google

way of Lake Champlain; while the other, under Gen. Arnold, took the route by the Kennebec River. Schuyler proceeded but a short distance when, sickness compelling him to return, the next in command, Gen. Montgomery, gained possession of Fort Chambly (*sham'-ble*), St. John's, and Montreal, and then moved against Quebec.

**25.** Arnold, having performed a tedious march through the wilderness, effected a junction of his force with that of Montgomery, and, with the latter officer in the chief command, Quebec was besieged for three weeks. Finally, at dawn, on the last day of 1775, and during a violent snow-storm, the American army, in four columns, advanced to assail the city; but the attempt was unsuccessful. Montgomery was among the first who fell, and Arnold was severely wounded.*

**26.** Arnold, though wounded, took command of the troops that had effected a retreat, and, in an encampment a short distance from Quebec, passed a rigorous winter. In the spring, Gen. Woos'-ter arrived and took the command; and he, in turn, was succeeded by Gen. Thomas. By the middle of June, 1776, the Americans had abandoned one place after another, and entirely evacuated Canada.

**27.** EVENTS OF 1776.—Washington, who had arrived at Cambridge about three weeks after his appointment as commander-in-chief, and had there taken command of the army, determined to drive the British from Boston; but no plan of operations was fully determined upon before the early part of March, 1776. Then, in one night, intrenchments were thrown up on Dor'-ches-ter Heights, which completely commanded the city and harbor of Boston.

---

**25.** What did Arnold accomplish? Give an account of the operations against Quebec. Where is Quebec? (Map, p. 61.)

**26.** What did Arnold do after the battle? How was the design against Quebec terminated?

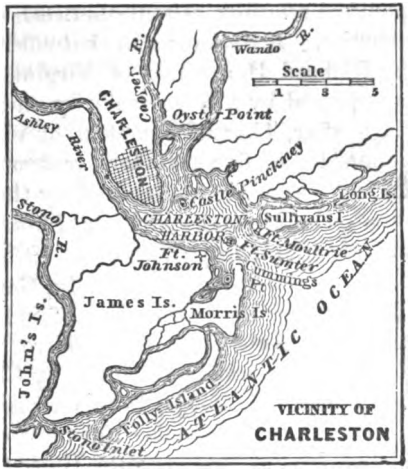
**27.** At what place did Washington take command of the army? What was his first aim? What means did he adopt?

* For account of Montgomery, see App., p. 70, topic 102.

Digitized by Google

**28.** Gen. Howe, who had succeeded Gage in the command, being unable to dislodge the Americans, informally agreed to evacuate the city without setting fire to it, upon condition that, while doing so, his army should not be molested from the batteries on the heights. Accordingly, on the 17th of March, 1776, the British troops, accompanied by several hundred families of loyalists, embarked on board the ships in the harbor, and sailed for Halifax.*

**29.** Surmising that an expedition, conducted by Clinton, which had been previously sent from Boston, was destined to attack New York, Washington sent Gen. Charles Lee to protect that city. It happened that on the very day of Lee's arrival there, Clinton arrived off Sandy-Hook. Thus foiled in his attempt against New York, Clinton sailed to the South, and was joined by Sir Peter Parker and Lord Corn-wal'-lis, with a fleet and troops from England, when the whole force proceeded against Charleston.




**28.** What agreement was made between the two parties? Give an account of what followed. Where is Halifax? (Map, p. 61.)

MAP QUESTIONS.—How is Charleston situated? Sullivan's Island? What fort is on Sullivan's Island? What other forts defend Charleston? Where is Sandy Hook? (Map, p. 43.)

**29.** What can you state of an expedition against New York? What was then done by Clinton? What was done by Clinton and Parker?

NOTE.—For account of General Lee, see Appendix, p. 69, topic 96.

*Read Note 12, end of Section.

Digitized by Google

**30.** The people of Charleston had made preparations against an attack, by erecting a fort of palmetto-wood on Sullivan's Island, which commanded the channel leading to the town. This was garrisoned by five hundred men, under Col. Moultrie (*mōle'-tre*). On the morning of the 28th of June, the fleet approached Sullivan's Island; but, after a conflict of nine hours, during which Clinton was defeated in an attempt to reach the island, the ships, much shattered, drew off, and afterward sailed to the North.*

**31.** In the mean time, Congress, then in session at Philadelphia, was preparing to declare a separation of the political relations existing between Great Britain and the colonies. A resolution to that effect, having been offered by Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, on the 7th of June, was passed by a large majority on the 2d of July. Two days after, Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, in behalf of a committee of five members, presented a document which he had prepared; and then, July the 4th, 1776, this document, the DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE, was unanimously adopted by Congress. (See note, App., p. 8.)†

**32.** In the beginning of July, Gen. Howe arrived from Halifax and took possession of Staten Island, at the entrance of New York Bay. Here he was joined by his brother, Admiral Lord Howe, by Clinton, and by a large body of hired troops, from Germany. These last were called Hessians, because the most of them had been furnished by the landgrave of Hesse-Cassel. While Howe soon had an army of thirty-five thousand men, Washington's effective force, in New York and vicinity, did not exceed seventeen thousand. (Topic 232, App. p. 83.)

**30.** How were the people of Charleston prepared? Give an account of the battle fought there.

**31.** What was Congress doing in the mean time? What is said of a resolution? What afterward took place?

**32.** Where, meanwhile, were the British concentrating a large force? What troops joined Howe there? What is said of the Hessians?

* Read Note 3, end of Section.

† For the Declaration itself, with the names of the signers, see App., p. 3.

Digitized by Google

**33.** Howe's troops were landed on the western end of Long Island, and, in three divisions, by three different roads, advanced toward the American camp at Brooklyn, then in command of Gen. Putnam.* While two of the divisions, Aug. 27th, were engaging the Americans, the third, under Clinton, having taken a circuitous route, fell upon their rear. Some of the patriots cut their way through the host of foes, but nearly two thousand were killed, wounded, or taken prisoners. The British lost less than four hundred.



NEW YORK BAY.

**34.** The British encamped in front of the American lines, but made no attack during two days, their design being to await the arrival and co-operation of the fleet. Washington, perceiving that his army in Brooklyn might be surrounded and entrapped, began a movement on the night of the 29th; and, favored by a fog which hung over the city, succeeded in getting all his troops to New York.

**35.** Influenced by his officers, Washington retreated to the northern part of New York island, and then to White Plains. Here a partial engagement, to the disadvantage of the Americans, took place on the 28th of October, when they withdrew to North Castle. Instead of following, the British general turned his attention to the forts on the Hudson. (Read Note 5, end of Section.)

**36.** Leaving one detachment, under Lee, at North Cas-

---

**33.** What movement did Howe first make from Staten I.? Give an account of the battle. By what name is it known? *Ans.* The Battle of Long Island.

**34.** Give an account of Washington's masterly retreat.

**35.** What course did Washington then adopt? Give an account of the battle of White Plains. To what objects did Howe next turn his attention?

MAP QUESTIONS.—(Map, p. 29.) Where is Brooklyn? North Castle? Sagg Harbor? Esopus (now Kingston)? West Point? Tarrytown? Where was Fort Washington? Fort Lee? Fort Clinton? Fort Montgomery?

* See Appendix, page 72, topic 136.

Digitized by Google

tle, another, under Col. Magaw, at Fort Washington, and a third, under Gen. Heath, at Peekskill, Washington crossed the Hudson and entered New Jersey. On the 16th of November, the British attacked Fort Washington, and, although they were successful, the victory cost them 2 thousand men.

37. To the number of six thousand, with Lord Cornwallis in command, they crossed the Hudson, and took possession of Fort Lee, which the Americans had abandoned on their approach. Closely pursued by Cornwallis, Washington retreated through New Jersey, and, on the 8th of December, crossed the Delaware with his diminished and disheartened army. Congress, then in session at Philadelphia, soon after adjourned to Baltimore.

38. Lee, who had been urged to hurry to the support of the main army, instead of obeying, at first delayed, and then advanced leisurely. Having incautiously taken quarters at a distance from his detachment, he was surprised and taken prisoner. Sullivan, who had been made a prisoner at the battle of Long Island and recently exchanged, then promptly conducted the detachment to Washington's camp.

39. A feeling of despondency, occasioned by the many disasters, prevailed among the patriots. This was dispelled by a bold enterprise accomplished by Washington. On Christmas night, he crossed the Delaware, and on the following morning, Dec. 26th, attacked a body of Hessians stationed at Trenton. Rahl, their commander, was mortally wounded, about thirty were slain, and nearly a thousand taken prisoners.* The Americans lost only four men.

36. Where did Washington leave detachments? What movement did he then make? State what took place at Fort Washington.

37. Give an account of Washington's retreat and Cornwallis's pursuit.

38. What is stated of Lee? What is stated of Sullivan?

39. Give an account of the battle of Trenton. Where is Trenton? (Map, p. 77.) Princeton? Morristown?

* "Understanding that the brave but unfortunate Rahl was in a dying state, Washington paid him a visit before leaving Trenton, accompanied by General Greene. They found him at his quarters in the house of a Quaker family. Their visit, and the respectful consideration and unaffected sympathy manifested by them, evidently soothed the feelings of the unfortunate soldier."—*Irving's Life of Washington.*

Digitized by Google

**40.** Washington recrossed the Delaware with his prisoners, but, encouraged by his success and finding his army strengthened by recent recruits, he again crossed the river, and took post at Trenton, resolved to act on the offensive. This was a bold movement, for the enemy were assembled in great force at Princeton, only ten miles distant.

**41.** EVENTS OF 1777.— Though Washington had been joined by troops under Generals Mifflin and Cadwallader, the whole force with him, on the 1st of Jan., 1777, did not exceed five thousand men. Toward the evening of the 2d, Cornwallis reached Trenton, and after making several unsuccessful attempts to cross the stream which runs through the town, concluded to defer hostilities till the morning, feeling sure of then capturing Washington and his entire army.



CENTRAL PART OF NEW JERSEY.

**42.** The position of the American army was critical. Any attempt to cross the Delaware, then obstructed by floating ice, would undoubtedly end in disaster; while to remain and risk a battle with a force so much superior to his own, appeared to Washington equally dangerous. In this emergency a bold expedient was adopted. Leaving his camp-fires burning, he marched by a circuitous route toward Princeton, intending to surprise the enemy at that place.*

**40.** What movement did Washington next make?
**41.** What force did he have at Trenton? State what occurred there on the evening of Jan. 2, 1777.
**42.** Describe the situation in which Washington was placed. How did he extricate himself from the danger?

* "To deceive the British, men were employed to dig trenches, others to go the rounds, relieve guards, and keep up the camp-fires. At daybreak they were to hasten to the army."

Digitized by Google

**43.** At sunrise, January 3d, the van of his forces encountered, near Princeton, a division of the British troops already on their march to join Cornwallis. At first the American militia gave way; but Washington coming up with a select corps, turned the tide of battle and routed the enemy. The loss of the British in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was about four hundred men; that of the patriots did not exceed thirty, but Gen. Mercer was among their mortally wounded.*

**44.** Early in 1776 Congress sent Silas Deane to France to solicit aid.* Deane was afterward joined by Dr. Franklin and Arthur Lee. Though France hesitated to extend the aid solicited, the Marquis de Lafayette (*lah-fā-ett'*) and other citizens of that country acted generously. At his own expense, Lafayette fitted out a vessel, and, in the spring of 1777, arrived in America. He joined the army as a volunteer without pay, but was soon after appointed a major-general. (See App., p. 70, topic 98.)

**45.** Toward the close of April, Gen. Try'-on, late royal governor of New York, proceeded against Danbury, and after destroying the stores there, burned the town. On his retreat back to his shipping, he was harassed by the militia, commanded by Generals Wooster, Arnold, and Silliman. His loss, during the expedition, amounted to nearly three hundred men: that of the patriots was not so large, but Wooster was among their slain.

**46.** Two small expeditions on the part of the Americans were successful. Col. Meigs, at the head of one, destroyed the British stores and shipping at Sag Harbor; and Col. Barton, at the head of the other, captured

**43.** Give an account of the battle of Princeton.
**44.** What efforts were made to secure the aid of France? Success?
**45.** Give an account of Tryon's first expedition. Where is Danbury? (p. 29.)
**46.** How did the Americans offset Tryon's wantonness?

* "His career as a general had been brief, but long enough to secure him a lasting renown. His name remains one of the consecrated names of the Revolution."—*Irving's Washington.*

† For Deane, see App., p. 65, topic 44. For Franklin, p. 66, topic 58.

Digitized by Google



PUTNAM.



SCHUYLER.



MOULTRIE.



GATES.



KOSCIUSKO.



BURGOYNE.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Gen. Prescott, the commander at Rhode Island. Prescott, in 1778, was exchanged for Lee.

47. Washington's army was encamped at Morristown during the early part of 1777; but in the spring he removed to Middlebrook. Howe having failed to draw Washington from this latter place, and bring on an engagement, withdrew his troops to Staten Island, thus leaving the Americans in complete possession of New Jersey.




48. The British troops, to the number of eighteen thousand men, then embarked on board the fleet of Lord Howe, and the vessels put to sea, leaving Clinton in command of a large force at New York. The destination of the fleet being unknown to Washington, he remained for many days in painful uncertainty about it.

49. At last the enemy's expedition was heard from. Their fleet had sailed up Chesapeake Bay, the troops had been landed, and a march commenced against Philadelphia. Washington hastened to dispute the progress of the British, and, with the main part of his army, took a position at Chad's Ford, on Brandywine Creek, where, on the 11th of September, a battle was fought.

50. The enemy advanced in two divisions, and while one made a direct attack upon the left wing of the Americans, the other crossed the stream above, and un-

---

MAP QUESTIONS.—Where is Paoli? Chad's Ford? Germantown? Fort Mercer? Fort Mifflin? Red Bank? Valley Forge? Reading?

47. What scheme did Howe endeavor to carry out in New Jersey? What movement did he next make?

48. What further can you state of Howe's movements?

49. In what way did Washington try to save Philadelphia?

49, 50. Give an account of the battle of Brandywine.

Digitized by Google

expectedly fell upon their right. The patriots defended themselves with great valor, but were at length forced to give way. The loss of the Americans, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, amounted to twelve hundred men; that of the British to about five hundred. Among the wounded was Lafayette. Pulaski (*pu-las'-ke*), a Polish nobleman, was also in the battle, doing brave service for the cause of liberty. (See p. 91, ¶ 88.)

**51.** Washington in vain endeavored to save Philadelphia. The two armies again met, but a violent storm prevented a battle; and Gen. Wayne (*wāne*), who had been detached with fifteen hundred men to hang upon the rear of Howe's army, was attacked at night near Paoli (*pā-o'-le*), and defeated. On the 26th Howe entered Philadelphia, but the main body of his army encamped at Germantown.*

**52.** Seven or eight miles below Philadelphia, the Americans held two forts on opposite sides of the Delaware, and thus commanded the river. Learning that a strong detachment of the British had left for their reduction, Washington attacked the force remaining at Germantown, Oct. 4th; but the patriots, although at first successful, were finally repulsed, with the loss of a thousand men.

**53.** Both forts were attacked, Oct. 22d;—Mercer, by a force of two thousand troops, under Count Do'-nop; and Mifflin, by a number of frigates and other vessels. But the assailants were repulsed with heavy loss. Donop was mortally wounded, about five hundred Hessians and marines were killed or wounded, and two large ships were destroyed.

**51.** What next occurred? Give an account of the battle of Paoli. When did Howe enter Philadelphia?

**52.** What induced Washington to go against the enemy at Germantown? Give an account of the battle that followed.

**53.** What took place on the 22d of Oct.? Give an account of the operations.

* Germantown is now a part of Philadelphia.

NOTE.—The United States flag was adopted in July of this year. See App. p. 76, topic 194.

Digitized by Google

**54.** On the 10th of November a second attempt to reduce Fort Mifflin was commenced. After a heroic defence of five days, during which the British kept up a destructive fire from a battery and also from their ships, the garrison evacuated the fort and crossed to Red Bank. A force appearing before Fort Mercer soon after, it, too, was abandoned.

**55.** During the winter of 1777–78, Washington's troops were quartered in huts at Valley Forge. The position, besides being easy of defence, enabled Washington to watch Howe's movements and protect his own military stores at Reading (*red'-ing*). But the patriots suffered greatly from insufficient food, clothing, and shelter; and many of the officers resigned in consequence of not receiving their pay.* (Read, also, topic 50, App., p. 66.)

**56.** BURGOYNE'S INVASION.—During the early part of the summer of 1777, an army of ten thousand men, British and German troops, Canadians and Indians, was fitted out in Canada for the invasion of the United States. The design of General Burgoyne, the commander of this large force, was to effect a junction of his own army with another from New York, and thus cut off Washington's communication with the Eastern States.

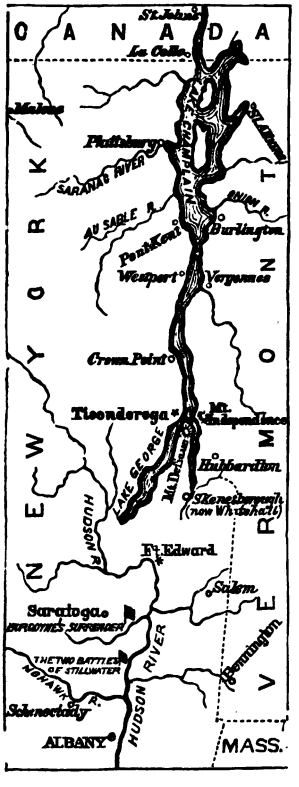
**57.** After taking possession of Crown Point, Burgoyne proceeded to invest Fort Ticonderoga, then garrisoned by three thousand men under General St. Clair. St. Clair had determined upon a resolute defence, but discovering, to his dismay, that the enemy had erected batteries on Mount Defiance, a rocky height commanding the fort, he made a hasty retreat. (Read topic 153, App., p. 73.)

**54.** Give an account of the next attempt against Fort Mifflin.
**55.** What can you state of Washington's army during the winter?
**56.** What invading army at the North in 1777? Burgoyne's design?
**57.** First movements of Burgoyne? His success at Ticonderoga?

* "That winter they lay on the ground. So scarce were blankets, that many were forced to sit up all night by their fires. At one time more than a thousand soldiers had not a shoe to their feet. You could trace their march by the blood which their naked feet left in the ice."—*Theo. Parker's Historic Americans.*

Digitized by Google

58. The retreating army crossed over to Mount Independence, and took a road through the woods toward Fort Edward, the headquarters of Gen. Schuyler, who then commanded the American forces at the North; but, at Hubbardton, the rear division was overtaken, on the morning of the 7th of July, and routed with considerable loss. The ammunition and stores, which had been sent by water, were also overtaken, and were destroyed.




59. Schuyler, deeming his force inadequate to make a successful stand against the invaders, gradually fell back to the islands at the mouth of the Mohawk. Burgoyne reached the head of Lake Champlain, and thence his march to Fort Edward was slow and difficult, owing to the impediments which Schuyler had placed in his way, by destroying the bridges and felling immense trees across the roads.

60. The story of the murder of Miss McCrea, about this time, excited wide-spread abhorrence, and had the

MAP QUESTIONS.—Where is Crown Point? Ticonderoga? Mt. Defiance? Mt. Independence? Hubbardton? Ft. Edward? Bennington? Stillwater? Albany? Saratoga? Into what river does the Mohawk flow?

58. Give the particulars of the disasters that followed St. Clair's retreat.

59. What retreat and advance next took place?

60. Relate the story in relation to Jane McCrea.

Digitized by Google

effect of greatly increasing the number of Schuyler's troops. The lady, it appeared, had been captured by some Indians attached to Burgoyne's army, during a visit she was making at the house of a friend; and while they were conducting her to his camp, she met her death. Accounts differ as to how she was killed; but the savages brought her scalp into Burgoyne's camp, and the opinion prevailed that they were her murderers.*

**61.** Burgoyne had previously sent a detachment under Col. St. Leger (*lej'-er*) to capture Fort Schuyler. On reaching the place and finding it resolutely defended, St. Leger determined upon a siege. While this was in progress, Gen. Her'-ki-mer, in advancing to the relief of the garrison, fell into an ambuscade, August 6th, and was defeated, he being mortally wounded. At last the Indian allies of St. Leger, hearing that Arnold, who had been dispatched by Schuyler, was approaching with a large army, fled in great haste, and the siege was consequently abandoned.

**62.** Burgoyne, having arrived at Fort Edward, and finding himself in want of supplies, sent five hundred men, under Col. Baum (*boum*), to seize the stores which the Americans had collected at Bennington. Baum was met near Bennington by the New Hampshire militia, under Gen. Stark, and defeated; and, on the same day, August 16th, a detachment which had been sent to the aid of Baum, was also defeated. (Topic 225, Ap., p. 82.)

**63.** The reverses experienced by the British at Fort Schuyler and Bennington embarrassed the movements of Burgoyne, and weakened and dispirited his army. Just then, when the Americans were in good force to confront

---

**61.** Give the particulars of St. Leger's operations. Where was Fort Schuyler? (Map, p. 88.) By what name is Herkimer's battle known? *Ans.* O-ris'-ka-ny.

**62.** Give an account of the battle of Bennington.

**63.** How did the reverses of the British affect them? What change in commanders took place?

---

* See Appendix, page 75, topic 190

Digitized by Google

the enemy, General Gates, by act of Congress, was appointed to succeed Schuyler.

**64.** Gates advanced to Bem'-is Heights, near Stillwater, and Burgoyne crossed the Hudson. On the 19th of Sept was fought the first battle of Stillwater, sometimes called the battle of Bemis Heights, in which Arnold displayed great bravery. Both parties claimed the victory; but, though the British remained on the field of battle, their progress toward Albany was effectually checked.

**65.** The two armies remained in sight of each other for more than two weeks. Burgoyne, in the mean time, strengthened his position, to await the co-operation of Clinton from New York; but, at last, despairing of aid from that quarter, he determined, if possible, to cut his way through the American lines. This brought on, October 7th, the second battle of Stillwater, often called the battle of Saratoga. (Read Note 6, end of Section.)

**66.** After a fierce conflict of several hours, in which the loss of the British was severe, they were compelled to give way. Arnold again distinguished himself, though fighting without any assigned command, and was severely wounded. Burgoyne retired to Saratoga, where, finding himself so surrounded by the Americans that all chance of retreat was cut off, and being without provisions, on the 17th of October he surrendered his whole army, numbering more than five thousand men, prisoners of war.*

**67.** Clinton, in the mean time, had ascended the Hudson as far as forts Clinton and Montgomery, and captured both forts; but instead of hastening to the co-operation of Burgoyne, he sent an expedition to devastate the coun-

**64.** Give an account of the first battle of Stillwater.
**65.** What positions did the two armies then hold? What determination did Burgoyne at last form?
**65, 66.** Give an account of the second battle of Stillwater. Give an account of Burgoyne's final movements and surrender.
**67.** What had Clinton been doing meanwhile? What did the British do on hearing of Burgoyne's surrender?

* Read Note 7, end of Section.

Digitized by Google

try. The British, on the northern frontiers, upon hearing of their disaster at Saratoga, abandoned Ticonderoga and other forts; and Clinton's expedition, after burning Kingston, returned to New York.

**68.** In November of this year ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION for the government of the United States were adopted by Congress. These, however, in consequence of not being ratified by all the states till 1781, did not go into effect before that time. (See Appendix, p. 76, topic 192.)

**69.** EVENTS OF 1778.—The success of the Americans at Saratoga decided the negotiations which had been set on foot in 1776. France acknowledged the independence of the United States, and an alliance was concluded between the two nations. The French government at once fitted out a squadron, of which Count D'Estaing (*des-tang'*) was given the command, and, about the middle of April, the fleet sailed for America. (Read topic 53, App., p. 66.)

**70.** In England the tidings of Burgoyne's surrender produced alarm; a more conciliatory spirit began to prevail; and two bills, in keeping with this feeling, were passed by Parliament. Commissioners were sent to America to negotiate a restoration of peace; but Congress refused to treat with them until Great Britain should withdraw her fleets and armies, or acknowledge the independence of the United States.

**71.** In the mean time, Gen. Howe having resigned his command, Gen. Clinton was appointed his successor; and the British government, fearing for the safety of their army at Philadelphia, ordered Clinton to proceed to New York. In July D'Estaing arrived in Delaware Bay, but

**68.** What is stated of the Articles of Confederation? **69.** What effect did Burgoyne's surrender have in France? **70.** In England? How did Congress receive the Commissioners? **71.** What change in commanders? What instructions were sent to Clinton? What escape did the British fleet make?

"Burgoyne's reverses at Saratoga caused much dissatisfaction in England, and one of the poems of the day ran thus:

'Burgoyne, unconscious of impending fates,
Could cut his ways through woods, but not through *Gates*.'

He was dismissed from the British army for refusing to return to America, his visit to England being on his parole, but was restored three years after."—*R. Shelton Mackenzie.*

Digitized by Google

not in time to capture the British fleet, as Lord Howe had sailed a few days before.

**72.** On the 18th of June Clinton evacuated Philadelphia, and commenced his march through New Jersey to New York. The Americans gave pursuit; and at Monmouth, on the 28th, a severely contested battle was fought. In the early part of the conflict Lee's division fell back, and was in full retreat just as Washington came up. Lee was rebuked by the commander-in-chief, and directed to assist in further operations: he complied, and, during the rest of the battle, displayed both faithfulness and courage.

**73.** Though, at the close of the day, the result of the engagement was indecisive, the advantage was with the Americans, and they slept on their arms, intending to renew the contest on the following morning; but Clinton silently departed before dawn. The loss of the British in the battle and by desertions during the march, amounted to fifteen hundred men. The patriots lost more than two hundred, many of whom fell from the excessive heat and fatigue of the day.

**74.** Lee's pride having been wounded by the rebuke which he had received, he addressed two disrespectful letters to Washington. For this disrespect and his conduct on the battle-field, he was tried by a court-martial, found guilty, and sentenced to be suspended from command for one year. He, however, never rejoined the army, but, just before the close of the war, died in Philadelphia.

**75.** A combined attack by D'Estaing and Gen. Sullivan was planned for the expulsion of the British from Rhode Island, where, under Gen. Pig'-ot, they had established a

---

**72.** Give an account of the battle of Monmouth.

**73.** Give the result and consequences of the battle. Where is Monmouth? (Map, p. 43.) Morristown?

**74.** What offensive course did Lee take? Give an account of the trial and consequences.

Digitized by Google




Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

military depot. Tempted by the hope of a victory, D'Estaing sailed from Newport to meet Lord Howe, who had heard of Pigot's danger and hastened to his relief; but a furious storm having disabled the two fleets just as they were about to engage, he returned to Newport, and soon after departed for Boston, to repair his ships.

**76.** Sullivan, finding himself thus deserted, withdrew to the northern part of the island; and, being followed by the enemy, an engagement took place, August 29th, resulting in a loss of over two hundred on each side, and in the repulse of the British. Learning that a fleet with troops was coming to the aid of Pigot, Sullivan gained the mainland just in time to avoid being intercepted by Clinton.

**77.** An expedition, commanded by Gen. Grey, committed great destruction at New Bedford and other places; but no acts of the enemy during the entire war were considered more atrocious than those of which they were guilty at Wy-o'-ming, in Pennsylvania, and Cherry Valley, in New York.

**78.** Early in July a large force of tories and Indians, under Col. John Butler, entered the valley of Wyoming, spread desolation in every direction, and slaughtered a body of the inhabitants who had marched against them. In November a party of the same mixed character fell upon the settlement of Cherry Valley, and killed or carried into captivity many of the settlers.

**79.** Toward the close of the year Clinton sent an expedition of two thousand men to invade Georgia. Col.

---

**75.** What enterprise was planned for D'Estaing and Sullivan? Give an account of D'Estaing's movements.

**76.** Give an account of the land battle and Sullivan's movements. By what name is that battle known? *Ans.* Quaker Hill, or Batt's Hill.

**77.** What account can you give of Grey's expedition?

**77. 78.** Give an account of the "Massacre of Wyoming." Also of the attack upon Cherry Valley. Where is Wyoming? (Map, p. 38.) Cherry Valley?

**79.** What expedition was sent against Georgia? What did the British accomplish in Georgia?

Digitized by Google

Campbell, its commander, proceeded against Savannah, then defended by a small force under Gen. Robert Howe, and, on the 29th of December, made an attack. The Americans were defeated with much loss, and, in consequence, Savannah fell into the hands of the British, and was retained by them till 1783.

**80.** EVENTS OF 1779.—At the beginning of 1779 only one post in Georgia, that of Sunbury, remained in possession of the Americans. This was captured on the 9th of January by Gen. Pre-vost', who had arrived with troops from Florida. Assuming the command of the British forces in the South, Prevost ordered Campbell to occupy Augusta, his object being to encourage the tories in that region to join the royal standard.

**81.** The tories along the western frontiers of the Carolinas were thus induced to organize themselves into a body, with Col. Boyd in command. They then marched toward the Savannah, committing great devastation and cruelties as they proceeded; but, at Kettle Creek, Feb. 14th, they were attacked by a force of Carolina militia, under Col. Pickens, and utterly defeated. Boyd was among the slain.

**82.** Encouraged by this success, Gen. Lincoln, then in command of the American forces at the South, sent Gen. Ashe (*ash*) to aid in driving the enemy from Augusta. The patriots having concentrated a force opposite that town, Campbell fled. Ashe pursued, but at Brier Creek, March 3d, he was surprised by Prevost, and defeated, losing nearly his whole army by death, captivity, and dispersion.

**83.** Learning that a body of British troops was sta

**80.** What did the British accomplish in Georgia, in January, 1779?
**81.** Give an account of Boyd's operations and defeat.
**82.** Give an account of Ashe's operations and defeat.
**83.** Of Lincoln's operations and defeat. Of the disasters at the North. Where is Stony Point? (Map, p. 38.) Verplanck's Point?

Digitized by Google

tioned at Stono Ferry, ten miles from Charleston, Lincoln determined to drive the enemy from a position so menacing to the city. Accordingly the attempt was made, June 20th, but, after a severe engagement, the Americans were repulsed. Disaster, too, attended the patriotic cause at the North. Tryon made two more expeditions against Connecticut, and Clinton captured Stony Point and Verplanck's Point.




**84.** Washington, desiring to recapture Stony Point, planned an attack to be conducted by Wayne.* At mid-

MAP QUESTIONS.—What State is on the South of Virginia? On the South of North Carolina? On the south and west of South Carolina? Where is Savannah? Sunbury? Augusta? Monk's Corner? Ninety-six? Rocky Mount? Hanging Rock? King's Mountain? Cowpens? Guilford Court House? Wilmington? Camden? Hobkirk's Hill? Eutaw Springs? Into what river does Brier Creek flow? Waxhaw Creek? Sanders Creek? Catawba R.? Yadkin R.? Dan R.?

* Gen. Charles Lee, when he heard of Wayne's achievement, wrote to him as follows: "I do most sincerely declare that your assault on Stony Point is not only the most brilliant, in my opinion, throughout the whole course of the war, on either side, but that it is the most brilliant I am acquainted with in history."

Digitized by Google

night, on the 15th of July, the Americans, in two columns, forced their way into the fort from opposite sides, and, meeting in the centre of the works, the garrison surrendered at discretion. The entire loss of the patriots in this brilliant success, achieved at the point of the bayonet and without firing a gun, was fifteen killed and eighty-three wounded. The enemy lost upward of six hundred in killed and prisoners.

85. About a month after (Aug. 19), another brilliant exploit crowned the efforts of the patriots. The British post at Paulus (*paw'-lus*) Hook, in New Jersey, opposite the city of New York, was surprised at night by Major Lee, and one hundred and fifty of the garrison were made prisoners.

86. Sullivan, who had been sent against the Indians of Western New York to check their depredations and avenge the "Massacre of Wyoming," was completely successful. He defeated a body of Indians and tories in the battle of the Chemung (*she-mung'*), August 29th, and then destroyed forty Indian villages, and a vast amount of corn. (Read topic 233, App. p. 84.)

87. In September an obstinate engagement took place off the eastern coast of England, between a small squadron of French and American vessels, commanded by Paul Jones, and two British frigates. It lasted from seven till ten at night, when both frigates surrendered.*

88. D'Estaing, as has been stated, sailed from Rhode Island to Boston. Thence he went to the West Indies. In September, 1779, he appeared before Savannah, and prepared to co-operate with Lincoln for the recovery of

---

84. Give an account of the battle of Stony Point.
85. Of the exploit at Paulus Hook. Where was Paulus Hook?
86. Give an account of Sullivan's expedition against the Indians. Where was Chemung? (Map, p. 38.)
87. Of Paul Jones's remarkable naval battle.
88. Of the operations and failure of D'Estaing and Lincoln.

* See Appendix, page 69, topic 86.

Digitized by Google

the town. On the 9th of October, after a siege of about three weeks, a disastrous assault was made. Among those who fell was the gallant Count Pulaski. (P. 80, ¶ 50.)

**89.** EVENTS OF 1780.—The principal military operations of 1780 were carried on in the Carolinas. Clinton, with a fleet commanded by Ar'-buth-not, having sailed from New York to the South, appeared before Charleston in February, and, on the 1st of April, commenced a regular siege. The forces defending the city were commanded by Lincoln.

**90.** While the siege was in progress, an American corps, stationed at Monk's Corner to keep open a communication between the city and the interior, was surprised by Col. Tarleton (*tarl'-tun*) and put to flight. On the 12th of May, after a heroic defence of about forty days, Lincoln surrendered; and six thousand prisoners fell into the hands of the British. (Read topic 234, App. p. 84.)

**91.** To complete the subjugation of South Carolina, as Clinton contemplated, expeditions were sent into the interior. One of these captured the post of Ninety-Six; and another, commanded by Tarleton, pursued a body of troops, under Col. Buford (*bū'-furd*). At Wax'-haw Creek, Tarleton overtook the patriots, and, falling upon them impetuously, massacred or maimed nearly every man.

**92.** Clinton, believing South Carolina to be subdued, sailed for New York, leaving Cornwallis to carry the war into North Carolina and Virginia; but Generals Sumter and Marion (*mar'-ē-un*), and other patriot leaders, by their partisan warfare, still kept alive the spirit of freedom at the South.* Though Sumter met with a repulse at Rocky

89. How were the operations of 1780 commenced?
90. Give an account of the battle of Monk's Corner.
89. 90. Give an account of the siege and surrender of Charleston.
91. What post in South Carolina did the British then capture? Give an account of Tarleton's success and inhumanity.
92. At this stage what course did Clinton pursue? What can you state of the doings of Sumter and Marion?
93. Give an account of the battle of Sanders Creek.

* Read Note 8, end of Section—Marion's Dinner of Sweet Potatoes; also topic 103, App., p. 70. For Sumter, see topic 154, App., p. 78.

Digitized by Google

Mount, yet at Hanging Rock, only a week after, he gained a decided victory.*

**93.** On the 16th of August occurred the battle of Sanders Creek. Gen. Gates, who had been appointed by Congress to succeed Lincoln in the command at the South, advanced against the British, and was met by Cornwallis a short distance from Camden. After a desperate contest, the American regulars, being deserted by the militia, were forced to retreat, with a loss of about a thousand men. De Kalb, mortally wounded, was taken prisoner. (See Appendix, p. 66, topic 49.)

**94.** Gates's defeat let loose the enemy against Sumter, who, at Fishing Creek, two days after, was surprised by Tarleton, and routed with great slaughter. Believing South Carolina to be at last subdued, Cornwallis proceeded to overrun North Carolina, detaching Major Ferguson to precede him. Large numbers of tories joined the detachment during its march.

**95.** The excesses of which Ferguson's troops were guilty so exasperated the inhabitants, that a hastily-formed force, under Col. Campbell, attacked them at King's Mountain, Oct. 7th, and killed Ferguson and one hundred and fifty of his men. The remainder, numbering more than eight hundred, surrendered. The loss of the Americans was only twenty.

**96.** Arnold's Treason.—The year 1780 is particularly memorable for the "Treason of Arnold." In 1778, after the British had evacuated Philadelphia, Arnold was put in command of that city. Here he lived at an expense beyond his income, and, to meet the demands of his creditors, appropriated public funds to his own use. Charges

**94.** What disaster was a sequel to that of Sanders Creek? What did Cornwallis proceed to do then?

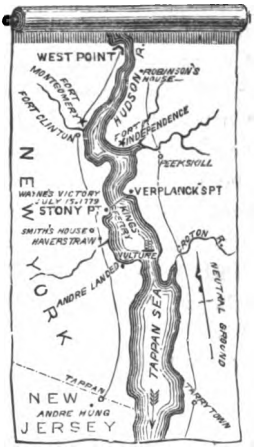
**94, 95.** Give an account of the battle of King's Mountain.

**96.** For what is the year 1780 particularly remarkable? How was Arnold led to take the step in treason?

* See App., page 70, topic 103 (Marion); also App., p. 73, topic 154 (Sumter).

Digitized by Google

were preferred against him, and, in conformity with the decision of the court, he was reprimanded by Washington. He felt the disgrace, and determined to wreak his vengeance.




**97.** Having secured the command of West Point, he offered, by means of a correspondence which he had carried on several months, to betray it into the hands of Clinton. Major An'-dre, aid-de-camp to Clinton, was sent to finish the plan of treason and adjust the traitor's recompense. Andre proceeded up the Hudson, and at a place six miles below West Point, met Arnold, and completed the bargain.

**98.** Instead of returning by water, as had been previously arranged, Andre was compelled by circumstances to cross to the east side of the Hudson and proceed by land. When near Tarrytown, he was stopped by three militiamen,—Paulding, Williams, and Van Wart,—who conducted him to North Castle, the nearest military station of the Americans. (Read Note 9, end of Section.)

**99.** The commander at North Castle, having no suspicion of Arnold's base design, wrote to that officer, informing him of the arrest of Andre. The traitor, startled and alarmed upon reading the letter, escaped on board the British sloop-of-war Vulture, the vessel which had been

---

MAP QUESTIONS.—Where is Stony Point? Verplanck's Point? West Point? Tarrytown? Tappan? Where was Fort Independence? Fort Clinton?

**97.** In what way did Arnold proceed? What further account can you give?

**98.** State how Arnold's design was frustrated. Where is North Castle? (Map. p. 29.)

**99.** What act of stupidity did the commander at North Castle commit? What was the consequence?

Digitized by Google

intended for Andre's return, and took refuge in New York. (See Appendix, p. 62, topic 5.)

**100.** Andre was conveyed to Tappan (*tap-paun'*), a village on the west side of the Hudson, opposite Tarrytown, and was there tried by a court-martial, found guilty, and agreeably to the laws and usages of nations, executed as a spy.* Arnold was made a brigadier-general in the British service. (See Appendix, p. 63, topic 9.)

**101.** EVENTS OF 1781, *and to the beginning of Washington's Administration.*—During the winter of 1780–1, great dissatisfaction existed among the troops of Washington's army, because they had not been paid for several months, and were not provided with sufficient clothing and provisions. This feeling increasing among the Pennsylvania troops, owing to a dispute about the term of their enlistment, they left their camp at Morristown, on the first day of 1781, to seek redress of Congress.

**102.** On the march toward Philadelphia, they were overtaken by two emissaries of Clinton, whom they seized and conducted to Gen. Wayne, to be treated as spies. At Princeton they were met by a committee of Congress, who satisfied their pressing wants, and thus suppressed the revolt. This mutiny, and another among the New Jersey troops, which was speedily quelled by military power, quickened Congress to act for the relief of the army.

**103.** Taxation was resorted to, an agent was sent to Europe for aid, and other measures were adopted. Robert Morris, who had been appointed superintendent of the national treasury, was very active in the discharge of his duties; and, by the financial aid which he rendered, en-

**100.** What further can you state of Andre and Arnold?
**101.** What alarming event marked the opening of 1781?
**102.** Give an account of the mutiny. Of a second mutiny, and what followed. Where is Morristown? (Map, p. 77.) Princeton?
**103.** State what measures were adopted by Congress.

* Read, in connection with the arrest and execution of Andre, the case of Nathan Hale, for which see topic 66, App., p. 67.

Digitized by Google




Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

abled Congress to prosecute the war. Upon his recommendation the Bank of North America was established at a later period, and this institution proved of great service during the rest of the contest.

**104.** Gates, in consequence of his defeat at Sanders Creek, was superseded in the command by Gen. Greene, who at once sent Gen. Morgan to check the devastations of the British in South Carolina. At the Cow'-pens, on the 17th of January, Tarleton overtook Morgan; but, after a severe battle, the British were completely routed, losing about eight hundred men, while the loss of the Americans did not exceed eighty. (Read topic 60, App., p. 67.)

**105.** Morgan, after his victory, hurried off in a northeasterly direction; and Cornwallis, on hearing of Tarleton's defeat, started in pursuit, and reached the Ca-taw'-ba, at evening, on the 29th, just two hours after the Americans had forded the river. He halted, intending to cross in the morning, but, during the night, a heavy rain set in, and, by daybreak, the stream was so swollen as to be impassable. (Read topic 110, App., p. 71.)

**106.** Here, on the east side of the Catawba, Greene came to the aid of Morgan, and, taking the command, continued the retreat. At the Yad'-kin the Americans were again favored by a rain-storm; and, after they crossed the Dan, Cornwallis gave up the pursuit.

**107.** In a few days Greene recrossed the Dan into North Carolina. Receiving re-enforcement, which increased his army to over four thousand men, he no longer avoided a battle. At Guilford (*ghil'-furd*) Court House, where he had taken a position, he was attacked on the 15th of March. The result, though unfavorable to the

**104.** What was the consequence to Gates of his defeat at Sanders Creek? Give an account of the battle of the Cowpens.

**105, 106.** Give an account of the memorable retreat and pursuit through North Carolina.

**107.** What movement and battle soon after took place? Give an account of the battle and its consequences.

Digitized by Google

Americans, left Cornwallis in such a disabled condition that, three days after, he retreated from the field of victory, taking the road to Wilmington. (Note 6, end of Sec.)

**108.** Greene rallied his forces, and for several days pursued Cornwallis; but not being able to overtake him, advanced into South Carolina to attack the enemy at Camden. At Hobkirk's Hill, two miles from that place, Lord Rawdon partly surprised him on the 25th of April. The struggle was waged with varied fortune, but at length a regiment of the Americans breaking, the patriots were forced to retreat. (For Greene, read top. 64, App., p. 67.)

**109.** The battle of Eutaw (*ū'-taw*) Springs, fought on the 8th of September, between Greene and Stuart, closed the contest in the Carolinas. This was a desperate engagement, and at one time victory seemed certain for the Americans; but the British rallying, Greene drew off his troops, taking with him about five hundred prisoners.

**110.** Cornwallis proceeded from Wilmington to Virginia, where, during the summer, his operations were very distressing to the patriotic inhabitants. To Lafayette was intrusted the defence of Virginia, but, owing to the inferiority of his force, he was not able to make a stand against the enemy. In August, Cornwallis concentrated his forces at Yorktown, and at once began to strengthen his position by fortifications.

**111.** In the mean time Washington had made preparations by which a large force of French troops, co-operating with another of Americans, was to make an attack for the recovery of New York. On learning, however, that

---

**108.** What bold movement did Greene then make? Give an account of the battle of Hobkirk's Hill.

**109.** Give an account of the battle of Eutaw Springs.

**110.** What movement did Cornwallis make after leaving Wilmington? What is said of Lafayette's efforts? What position did Cornwallis finally select and fortify? Where is Yorktown? (Map, p. 126.) Into what water does the James River flow? The York River?

**111.** What extensive preparations had Washington in the mean time made? Why did he alter his design?

Digitized by Google

a French fleet would soon arrive in the Chesapeake, Washington was induced to change his design, and proceed against Cornwallis.

**112.** But while continuing preparations, as if against Clinton at New York, Washington actually began his march for Yorktown; consequently, before Clinton became aware of the real intentions of the American commander, the French and American troops were well on their way to Virginia.

**113.** It being too late to adopt any direct measures for the aid of Cornwallis, Clinton undertook to recall Washington, by hurrying off an expedition under Arnold against New London. Fort Griswold made a brave defence, but was finally carried by assault. Col. Led'-yard, its commander, was murdered with his own sword, after yielding it up, and many of the garrison were also slaughtered. The town was reduced to ashes. (Read topic 9, App., p. 63.)



NEW LONDON AND VICINITY.

**114.** Arnold's expedition failed to recall Washington, and Yorktown was soon invested with a large land force, while the French fleet, commanded by Count de Grasse (*gras*), blockaded the York and James rivers. On the 9th of October, the allied armies commenced a cannonade so heavy that in a day or two most of the works of the British were demolished. At length, on the 19th, finding his position untenable, and seeing no prospect of relief, Cornwallis surrendered the place, with more than seven thousand soldiers, to Washington, and his shipping and seamen to De Grasse. (Read Note 13, end of Sec.)

**115.** The surrender of Cornwallis caused great rejoicing

**112.** State how Clinton became deceived.
**113.** What counterplot did Cornwallis adopt? How did Arnold execute the part assigned him?
**114.** Give an account of the siege and surrender of Yorktown.



Digitized by Google

throughout the United States, being considered a death-blow to the war. In England, public opinion, in consequence, became so decidedly opposed to the further prosecution of hostilities, that negotiations were entered into for the establishment of peace.

**116.** On the 30th of November, 1782, a preliminary treaty was signed at Paris by commissioners from the two governments, those from the United States being John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, John Jay, and Henry Laurens. On the 19th of April, 1783, a cessation of hostilities was proclaimed in the American army; and on the 3d of September following, a definitive treaty was signed at Paris.

**117.** By the terms of the treaty, Great Britain acknowledged the independence of the United States, and the boundaries were fixed at the great lakes on the north and the Mississippi on the west. She also conceded the right to fish on the Banks of Newfoundland. Florida was returned to Spain. (See Appendix, p. 66, topic 54.)

**118.** At the close of the war the government was unable to meet the just claims of its creditors, and the consequence was general discontent, particularly among the officers and privates of the army. Through the influence of Washington the ill-feeling among the troops was allayed; and Congress afterward granted five years' whole pay to the officers, instead of, as by resolution passed in 1780, half-pay for life. Four months' whole pay was granted to the privates. (Read Note 14, end of Section.)

**119.** By order of Congress, the army was disbanded on the 3d of November, 1783. On the 25th of the same month New York was evacuated by the British; and in December following, Washington, "with a heart full of

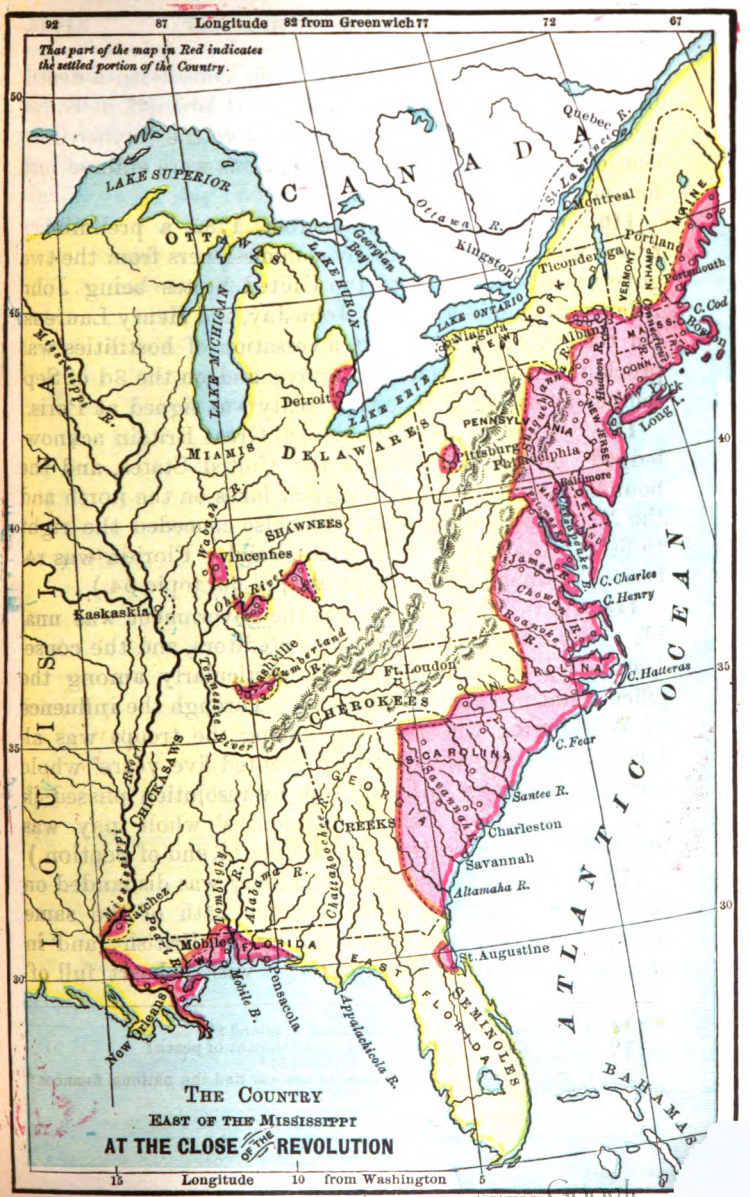
---

**115.** What was the effect in America and England?
**116.** What steps were taken for the establishment of peace?
**117.** What terms of the treaty are mentioned?
**118.** In what condition did the close of the war find the national finances? How were the troubles with the army healed?

NOTE.—For Franklin, see Appendix, page 66, topic 53.

Digitized by Google

# Progressive Map, No. 2.




Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

love and gratitude," took leave of his officers at that city. He then repaired to An-nap'-o-lis; and there, on the 23d of December, in a simple and impressive address, resigned to Congress his commission as commander-in-chief. On the following day he reached his home at Mount Vernon.*

**120.** It was found that, by the ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION, under which the United States had existed since 1781, Congress had no power to raise money and pay the debts incurred by the war. The individual States were therefore called upon for funds; but their efforts to raise them by direct taxation produced great opposition, especially in Massachusetts, where it grew to an open insurrection, known as Shays's Rebellion. This, however, was suppressed in 1787. (See Appendix, p. 76, topic 192.)

**121.** This rebellion and other causes convinced the people that a more powerful general government was needed. Accordingly, a national convention was held at Philadelphia, with Washington as president, and after four months' deliberation, the Constitution was adopted, September 17th, 1787. After being ratified by the requisite number of States, though not without great opposition, it went into operation on the 4th of March, 1789.†

## CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

1765. Parliament passed the Stamp Act.....March 8.
The Colonial Congress met in New York.....Oct. 7.
1766. Parliament repealed the Stamp Act.....March 18.
1767. A bill taxing tea, glass, paper, etc., was passed.....June 29.
1768. A body of British troops arrived at Boston.....Sept. 27.
1770. Affray, known as the "Boston Massacre," occurred.March 5.

**119.** Name some of the closing scenes of the war. To what place did Washington then go? Where is Mount Vernon? (Map, p. 126.) Annapolis?

**120.** Peace being established, what embarrassments beset Congress? What measure for relief was adopted? Give an account of Shays's Rebellion.

**121.** To what conviction did Shays's rebellion and other causes lead? State what followed.

*Read Note 10, end of Section.

†See Appendix, page 9 · and note, Appendix, page 11. Read, also, Notes 15 and 16, end of Section.

Digitized by Google

1773. The tea in Boston harbor was thrown overboard....Dec. 16.
1774. The Boston Port Bill was passed by Parliament...March 31.
The First Continental Congress met in Philadelphia..Sept. 5.
1775. The war commenced with the battle of Lexington..April 19.
Allen and Arnold captured Ticonderoga.....May 10.
Washington was elected commander-in-chief.....June 15.
The battle of Bunker Hill occurred.....June 17.
Montreal surrendered to Montgomery.....Nov. 13.
Montgomery was defeated and slain at Quebec.....Dec. 31.
1776. Boston was evacuated by the British troops.....March 17.
The British were repulsed at Ft. Moultrie, Charleston.June 28.
Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence...July 4.
The Americans were defeated on Long Island.....Aug. 27.
Washington was defeated at White Plains.....Oct. 28.
The British captured Fort Washington.....Nov. 16.
Washington took a thousand prisoners at Trenton...Dec. 26.
1777. Washington gained a victory at Princeton.....Jan. 3.
Tryon made an expedition against Connecticut.....April 26.
Meigs destroyed British property at Sag Harbor....May 23.
Burgoyne commenced his invasion of New York....June 16.
Ticonderoga fell into the hands of Burgoyne.....July 5.
The Americans were defeated at Hubbardton.....July 7.
Prescott was captured by Barton at Rhode Island...July 10.
Fort Schuyler was besieged by St. Leger.....Aug. 3.
Herkimer was defeated at Oriskany.....Aug. 6.
Stark defeated Baum at Bennington.....Aug. 16.
Howe defeated Washington at Brandywine.....Sept. 11.
The battle of Bemis Heights was fought.....Sept. 19.
Grey defeated Wayne at Paoli.....Sept. 20.
Howe took possession of Philadelphia.....Sept. 26.
The British repulsed the Americans at Germantown..Oct. 4.
The British captured Forts Clinton and Montgomery..Oct. 6.
The battle of Saratoga was fought.....Oct. 7.
Burgoyne surrendered his army to Gates.....Oct. 17.
The British were repulsed at Fts. Mercer and Mifflin.Oct. 22.
Am. army went into winter-quarters at Valley Forge.Dec. 11.
1778. France acknowledged the independence of the U. S...Feb. 6.
The British, under Clinton, evacuated Philadelphia June 18.
Washington defeated Clinton at Monmouth.....June 28.
The battle and massacre at Wyoming occurred.....July 3, 4.
Sullivan defeated the British at Quaker Hill, R. I....Aug. 29.

Digitized by Google

1778. Tories and Indians massacred people at Cherry V'y Nov. 11.
Campbell captured Savannah.....Dec. 29.
1779. The British, under Prevost, captured Sunbury.....Jan. 9
Pickens defeated Boyd at Kettle Creek.....Feb. 14.
Prevost surprised and defeated Ashe at Brier Creek. March 3
The British repulsed Lincoln at Stono Ferry.....June 20.
The Americans, under Wayne, captured Stony Point. July 15.
The British garrison at Paulus Hook was captured..Aug. 19.
Sullivan made an expedition against the Indians. Aug., Sept.
Paul Jones gained a victory off the coast of England. Sept. 23.
D'Estaing and Lincoln were repulsed at Savannah....Oct. 9.
1780. Charleston was besieged by the British.....April and May.
Tarleton defeated the Americans at Monk's Corner. April 14.
Lincoln surrendered Charleston to Clinton.....May 12.
Tarleton defeated Buford at Waxhaw Creek.....May 29.
Cornwallis defeated Gates at Sanders Creek.....Aug. 16.
Tarleton routed Sumter at Fishing Creek .....Aug. 18.
Arnold plotted to betray West Point to the British.
Andre was executed as a spy, at Tappan.....Oct. 2.
Ferguson was defeated and slain at King's Mt.....Oct. 7.
1781. The Pennsylvania troops revolted .....Jan. 1.
Morgan defeated Tarleton at the Cowpens.....Jan. 17.
The New Jersey troops revolted..... Jan. 18.
Cornwallis pursued Morgan and Greene.....Jan., Feb.
The Articles of Confederation were ratified by the States.
Cornwallis defeated Greene at Guilford C. H.. ...March 15.
Rawdon defeated Greene at Hobkirk's Hill.....April 25.
Arnold made an expedition against New London....Sept. 6.
The battle and massacre at Ft. Griswold occurred....Sept. 6.
The battle of Eutaw Springs was fought.....Sept. 8.
Yorktown was besieged by Americans and French..Sept. 30.
Cornwallis surrendered at Yorktown.....Oct. 19.
1782. A preliminary treaty of peace was signed at Paris...Nov. 30.
1783. Savannah was evacuated by the British.....July 11.
A definitive treaty of peace was signed at Paris.....Sept. 3.
The American army was disbanded.....Nov. 3.
New York was evacuated by the British.....Nov. 25.
Charleston was evacuated by the British .....Dec. 14.
Washington resigned his commission to Congress...Dec. 23
1787. Shays's Rebellion occurred in Massachusetts.
Convention at Philadelphia adopted Const. of U. S..Sept. 17.

Digitized by Google

## PRINCIPAL BATTLES OF THE REVOLUTION.

* The asterisk indicates the successful party. † Doubtful.

| DATES. | BATTLES. | COMMANDERS. | | MEN ENGAGED. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | American. | British. | Am'rican | British. |
| 1775. | | | | | |
| April 19, | Lexington | Parker | Smith* | unknwn | 1,700 |
| June 17, | Bunker Hill | Prescott | Gen. Howe* | 1,500 | 3,000 |
| Dec. 31, | Quebec | Montgomery | Carleton* | 900 | 1,200 |
| 1776. | | | | | |
| June 28, | Fort Moultrie | Moultrie* | Parker | 400 | 4,000 |
| Aug. 27, | Long Island | Putnam | Gen. Howe* | 5,000 | 20,000 |
| Oct. 28, | White Plains | McDougall | Leslie* | 1,600 | 2,000 |
| Nov. 16, | Fort Washington | Magaw | Gen. Howe* | 3,000 | 5,000 |
| Dec. 26, | Trenton | Washington* | Rahl | 2,400 | 1,000 |
| 1777. | | | | | |
| Jan. 3, | Princeton | Washington* | Mawhood | 3,000 | 1,800 |
| July 7, | Hubbardton | Warner | Fraser* | 700 | 1,200 |
| Aug. 6, | Oriskany† | Herkimer | St. Leger | 1,000 | 1,500 |
| Aug. 16, | Bennington | Stark* | Baum | 2,000 | 1,200 |
| Sept. 11, | Brandywine | Washington | Gen. Howe* | 11,000 | 18,000 |
| Sept. 19, | Bemis Heights | Gates* | Burgoyne | 2,500 | 3,000 |
| Sept. 20, | Paoli | Wayne | Grey* | 1,500 | 3,000 |
| Oct. 4, | Germantown | Washington | Gen. Howe* | 11,000 | 15,000 |
| Oct. 6, | Fort Clinton / Fort Montgomery | Jas. Clinton / Gov. Clinton | Sir H. Clinton* | 600 | 3,000 |
| Oct. 7, | Saratoga | Gates* | Burgoyne | 8,000 | 4,500 |
| Oct. 22, | Fort Mercer / Fort Mifflin | Col. Greene* / Col. Smith* | Donop / Gen. Howe | 450 / 400 | 2,000 / Mixed. |
| Nov. 16, | Fort Mifflin | Major Thayer | Gen. Howe* | 400 | Mixed. |
| 1778. | | | | | |
| June 28, | Monmouth | Washington* | Clinton | 12,000 | 11,000 |
| July 3, | Wyoming | Col. Z. Butler | John Butler* | 400 | 1,100 |
| Aug. 29, | Rhode Island | Sullivan* | Pigot | 5,000 | 5,000 |
| Dec. 29, | Savannah | Robert Howe | Campbell* | 900 | 2,000 |
| 1779. | | | | | |
| Feb. 14, | Kettle Creek | Pickens* | Boyd | 300 | 700 |
| March 3, | Brier Creek | Ashe | Prevost* | 1,200 | 1,800 |
| June 20, | Stono Ferry | Lincoln | Maitland* | 800 | 1,200 |
| July 15, | Stony Point | Wayne* | Johnson | 1,200 | 600 |
| Aug. 13, | Penobscot | Lovell | McLean* | 900 | 3,000 |
| 19, | Paulus Hook | Major Lee* | Sutherland | 350 | 250 |
| Aug. 29, | Chemung | Sullivan* | Brant | 4,000 | 1,500 |
| Sept. 23, | Flamboro' Head | Paul Jones* | Pearson | squadr'n | 2 vessels |
| Oct. 9, | Savannah | Lincoln | Prevost* | 4,500 | 2,900 |
| 1780. | | | | | |
| April 14, | Monk's Corner | Huger | Tarleton* | 300 | 600 |
| May 12, | Charleston | Lincoln | Clinton* | 3,700 | 9,000 |
| May 29, | Waxhaw | Buford | Tarleton* | 400 | 700 |
| June 23, | Springfield, N. J. | Greene* | Knyphausen | 3,000 | 5,000 |
| July 30, | Rocky Mount | Sumter | Turnbull* | 600 | 500 |
| Aug. 6, | Hanging Rock | Sumter* | Brown | 600 | 500 |
| Aug. 16, | Sanders Creek | Gates | Cornwallis* | 3,000 | 2,200 |
| Aug. 18, | Fishing Creek | Sumter | Tarleton* | 700 | 350 |
| Oct. 7, | King's Mountain | Campbell* | Ferguson | 900 | 1,100 |
| 1781. | | | | | |
| Jan. 17, | Cowpens | Morgan* | Tarleton | 900 | 1,100 |
| March 15, | Guilford C. H. | Greene | Cornwallis* | 4,400 | 2,400 |
| April 25, | Hobkirk's Hill | Greene | Rawdon* | 1,200 | 900 |
| Sept. 6, | Fort Griswold | Ledyard | Eyre* | 150 | 860 |
| Sept. 8, | Eutaw Springs† | Greene | Stuart | 2,000 | 2,000 |
| Oct. 19, | Yorktown | Washington* | Cornwallis | 16,000 | 7,500 |

Digitized by Google

## REVIEW QUESTIONS.


PAGE

1. What principle of taxation did the colonists contend for? ..... 65, 67
2. Of what British legislation did the colonists first complain? ..... 65
3. Give the history of the Stamp Act ..... 66
4. Give the history of the next measure of Parliament ..... 66, 67
5. State all you can of the tea tax, and the "Tea Party" ..... 66, 67
6. State what you can in relation to the Boston Port Bill ..... 67, 68
7. Give an account of the military operations of April, 1775 ..... 68, 69
8. What ten important events occurred from 1765 to 1775? ..... 99, 100
9. Give an account of the taking of Ticonderoga and Crown Point ..... 69
10. What occurred in and near Boston in June, 1775? ..... 69, 70
11. What three Congresses had previously met? ..... 66, 68, 71
12. What did the first congress accomplish? ..... 68
13. What was accomplished by the Congress of 1774? ..... 68
14. What measures did the Congress of 1775 adopt? ..... 71
15. Give an account of the invasion of Canada, in 1775 ..... 71, 72
16. Give an account of two battles before Quebec ..... 62, 72
17. Name, in order, six important events of 1775 ..... 100
18. Write an account of Washington previous to 1776 ..... 50, 55, 56, 57, 60, 71
19. Describe three battles of 1775 ..... 68, 69, 70, 72, 102
20. What were the first important operations of 1776? ..... 72, 73
21. Give an account of Parker's southward movements ..... 73
22. Give an account of the attack upon Fort Moultrie ..... 73, 74
23. How is Fort Moultrie situated? (Map, p. 73.)
24. How many colonies united in the Declaration of Independence? *Ans.* 13.
25. Name them in the order of their colonization. (See table, end of History.)
26. What preparations did Howe make to capture Washington's army? ... 74
27. Give an account of the battle of Long Island ..... 75
28. What movements did Washington make from August 27 to Dec. 8? ... 75, 76
29. How did the Americans lose Forts Washington and Lee? ..... 76
30. Give an account of the events of December, 1776 ..... 76
31. Name, in chronological order, seven events of 1776 ..... 100
32. Name five battles that occurred in 1776 ..... 102
33. Give the dates of their occurrence and other particulars ..... 102
34. Give an account of the events of January, 1777 ..... 77, 78
35. What aid did Lafayette extend to the patriots? ..... 78
36. Give an account of Tryon's three expeditions ..... 78, 89
37. What were the successes of Meigs and Barton? ..... 78, 79
38. What army movements were made in the early part of 1777? ..... 79
39. What movements by land and water did Gen. Howe make? ..... 79
40. What courses and on what waters did Gen. Howe sail? ..... 53
41. What four important events occurred in September, 1777? ..... 100
42. Give a full account of the battle of Brandywine ..... 79, 80, 102
43. What were the consequences of the battle? ..... 80
44. Name five important events that occurred in October, 1777 ..... 102
45. Give a full account of the battle of Germantown ..... 80, 102
46. Describe the two attacks upon Forts Mercer and Mifflin ..... 80, 81
47. What is stated in connection with Valley Forge? ..... 81
48. What invading force did Burgoyne command? ..... 81


Digitized by Google

PAGE

49. What plan of operations did Burgoyne have?..... 81
50. What were his first two successes?..... 81
51. What two disasters next befell the patriots?..... 82
52. What retreating movement did Schuyler make?..... 82
53. Give an account of Burgoyne's march to Fort Edward..... 82
54. Give a full account of St. Leger's operations .....83, 102
55. Give a full account of the battle of Bennington.....83, 102
56. What were the consequences of the British reverses?..... 83, 85
57. Give a full account of the battle of Bemis Heights.....84, 102
58. Give a full account of the battle of Saratoga .....84, 102
59. What did Clinton do up the Hudson river?..... 84, 85
60. Name, in chronological order, twenty events of 1777..... 100
61. On what mission were Deane, Franklin, and Lee sent?..... 78
62. What success did they meet with?..... 78, 85
63. What were the other consequences of Burgoyne's surrender?..... 85
64. Give an account of D'Estaing's operations in America .....85, 86, 87, 90, 91
65. Give a full account of the battle of Monmouth..... .....86, 102
66. Give the history of General Lee .....73, 75, 76, 86
67. Of the attempt to drive the British from Rhode Island ..... 86, 87
68. Of the massacres at Wyoming and Cherry Valley ..... ..... 87
69. How were the massacres subsequently avenged?..... 90
70. Give the history of Savannah.....48, 87, 88, 90, 91, 101
71. Name, in chronological order, seven important events of 1778.....100, 101
72. What were the events preceding the battle of Kettle Creek?..... 88
73. What occurred at the South in January and February, 1779?..... 88
74. Give a full account of the Battle of Brier Creek.....88, 102
75. What disasters befell the Americans in S. Carolina and Connecticut?.. 88, 89
76. Give a full account of the battle of Stony Point.....89, 90, 102
77. Give a full account of Paul Jones's victory ..... .....90, 102
78. Name, in chronological order, nine important events of 1780 ..... 101
79. Give an account of Clinton's siege and capture of Charleston..... 91
80. What events followed the loss of Charleston?..... 91
81. Give a full account of the battle of Sanders Creek.....92, 102
82. Give an account of Ferguson's expedition.....92, 102
83. Give a full history of Arnold's treason.....92, 93, 94
84. Give the history of Arnold.... .....69, 71, 72, 78, 83, 84, 92, 93, 94, 97
85. Give an account of two mutinies that occurred in the army..... 94
86. Of the measures adopted in consequence..... 94, 95
87. Of change in commanders and of the battle of the Cowpens ..... 95
88. Of the retreat conducted by Morgan and Greene..... 95
89. Of Greene's subsequent movements..... 95, 96
90. Of Cornwallis's movements from Hobkirk's Hill to Yorktown..... 96
91. Of the siege of Yorktown and surrender of Cornwallis ..... 96, 97
92. Of the consequences of Cornwallis's surrender..... 97, 98
93. Name, in chronological order, the important events of 1781..... 101
94. Give the history of the Articles of Confederation..... 85, 99
95. What was the origin of the Constitution of the United States?..... 99
96. What battles of the Revolution were fought in Virginia?..... 102
97. Name twelve battles that occurred in the State of New York..... 102
98. Name five battles that were fought in New Jersey..... 102

Digitized by Google

**1. Retreat of the British from Concord and Lexington** (p. 69, ¶ 16).—"An old, gray-headed man of Woburn figures in the stories of the time, who rode a fine white horse after the flying troops, and, dismounting within gunshot, would send his sure bullet to the mark. When he fired, some one fell. They came to cry, at sight of him, 'Look out, there is the man on the white horse.' Even the multitudes of the old and infirm, of women and children, looking down from the hillsides, were transformed, in the frightened imagination of the retreating troops, into hosts of armed men threatening their extinction. Amid the unknown terrors which beset these strangers in a strange land, with lurking foes on every side, with all the country pouring its forces against them, it is hardly strange that they lost hope and daring, and fled in terror. The officers went in front, and threatened with death every man who advanced. But nothing could have averted surrender or utter destruction but the timely arrival of the re-enforcement which had been sent for. These formed a hollow square at Lexington, and received the weary, affrighted men. 'They were so much exhausted with fatigue,' says a British historian, 'that they were obliged to lie down for rest on the ground, their tongues hanging out of their mouths like dogs after a chase.'"—*Rev. Alex. McKenzie.*

**2. Death of Warren** (p. 70, ¶ 21).—"After meeting with the Committee of Safety, he armed himself and went to Charlestown. A short time before the action commenced, he was seen in conversation with General Putnam, at the rail fence (near the foot of Breed's Hill), who offered to receive his orders. General Warren declined to give any, but asked where he could be most useful. Putnam directed him to the redoubt, remarking that 'there he would be covered.' 'Don't think,' said Warren, 'I cameto seek a place of safety; but tell me where the onset will be most furious.' Putnam, still pointing to the redoubt, said, 'That is the enemy's object, and if that can be defended, the day is ours.' General Warren passed to the redoubt, where the men received him with enthusiastic cheers. Here, again, he was tendered the command, by Colonel Prescott; but declined it, saying that he came to encourage a good cause. . . . . He mingled in the fight, behaved with great bravery, and was among the last to leave the redoubt. He was lingering, even to rashness, in his retreat, and had proceeded but a few rods, when a ball struck him in the forehead, and he fell to the ground."—*Frothingham's History of the Siege of Boston.*

**3. Attack on Fort Moultrie, Sullivan's Island** (p. 74, ¶ 30).—"The garrison fought with a coolness which would have done honor to veterans. The day was very warm, and the men partially stripped to it. Moultrie says: 'When the action began, some of the men took off their coats, and threw them upon the top of the merlons. I saw a shot from the fleet take one of them, and throw it into a small tree behind the platform. It was noticed by our men, and they cried out, *Look at the coat!*' A little incident that speaks volumes for their coolness. In the hottest fire of the battle, the flag of the fort was shot away, and fell outside of the fort. Jasper, one of Marion's men, instantly sprang after it upon the beach, between the ramparts and the enemy, and binding it to a sponge-staff (used for cleaning cannon), restored it to its place, and succeeded in getting back to the fort in safety. There is something chivalric in such deportment, which speaks for larger courage than belongs to ordinary valor. Tradition ascribes to the hand and eye of Marion the terrible effect of the last shot fired this bloody day. It was aimed at the commodore's (Parker's) ship, which had already received something more than her share of the attention of the fort. This shot, penetrating the cabin of the vessel, cut down two young officers, then ranged forward, swept three sailors from the main-deck into eternity, and finally buried itself in the bosom of the sea."—*Simms's Life of Marion.*

Digitized by Google

**4. Effect of the Boston Port Bill** (p. 67, ¶ 11).—"As the clocks in the Boston belfries finished striking twelve, the blockade of the harbor began (June 1). . . . . The warehouses of the thrifty merchants were at once made valueless; the costly wharves, which extended far into the channel, and were so lately covered with the produce of the tropics and with English fabrics, were become solitary places; the harbor, which had resounded incessantly with the cheering voices of prosperous commerce, was now disturbed by no sounds but from British vessels of war. At Philadelphia, the bells of the churches were muffled and tolled; the ships in port hoisted their colors at half-mast; and nine-tenths of the houses, except those of the Friends, were shut during the memorable first of June. In Virginia, the population thronged the churches: Washington attended the service and strictly kept the fast. No firmer or more touching words were addressed to the sufferers than from Norfolk, which was the largest place of trade in that 'well-watered and extensive dominion.' Jefferson, from the foot of the Blue Ridge of the Alleghanies, condemned the act which in a moment reduced an ancient and wealthy town from opulence to want. The colonies vied with each other in liberality. The patriotic and generous people of South Carolina were the first to minister to the sufferers, sending, early in June, two hundred barrels of rice, and promising eight hundred more. At Wilmington, North Carolina, the sum of two thousand pounds currency was raised in a few days; the women of the place gave liberally; Parker Quince offered his vessel to carry a load of provisions freight free, and masters and mariners volunteered to navigate her without wages. Hartford was the first place in Connecticut to pledge its assistance; but the earliest donation received, was of two hundred and fifty-eight sheep from Windham. Throughout all New England the towns sent rye, flour, peas, cattle, sheep, oil, fish—whatever the land or the hook could furnish, and sometimes gifts of money. The English inhabitants of Quebec, joining with those of English origin, shipped a thousand and forty bushels of wheat."—*Bancroft's History of the United States.*

**5. Washington, favored by a Fog, retreats from Long Island** (p. 75, ¶ 34).—"A Long Island tradition tells how the British camp became aware of the march which had been stolen upon it. Near the ferry (Brooklyn) resided a Mrs. Rapelyea (*rap-el-yē'*), whose husband, suspected of favoring the British, had been removed to the interior of New Jersey. On seeing the embarkation of the first detachment of the American army, she, out of loyalty or revenge, sent off a black servant to inform the first British officer he could find, of what was going on. The negro succeeded in passing the American sentinels, but arrived at a Hessian (German) outpost, where, not being able to make himself understood, he was put under guard as a suspicious person. There he was kept until about daybreak, when an officer visiting the post examined him, and was astounded by his story. An alarm was at once given, and the troops were called to arms. One of General Howe's aid-de-camps, followed by a handful of men, climbed cautiously over the crest of the works, and found them deserted. Advanced parties were then hurried down to the ferry. The fog had cleared away sufficiently for them to see the rear boats of the retreating army halfway across the river. One boat, still within musket shot, was compelled to return; it was manned by three vagabonds who had lingered behind to plunder."—*Irving's Life of Washington.*

**6. Kosciusko** (App. p. 65, topic 39).—"He was made Colonel of Engineers, and all the important works at the north were entrusted to his care. It was he that planned the strong intrenchments which proved so useful at Bemis Heights. It is to him, also, that we owe the fortifications of West Point, where a romantic

Digitized by Google

spot on a ledge of the precipitous wall that overhangs the Hudson, is still pointed out as the garden of Kosciusko. When General Greene was sent to take command of the Southern army, Kosciusko was placed at the head of his engineers, and, during the whole of that active campaign, no one, in his appropriate sphere, was more useful than the gallant young Pole in his. It was not till the war was over and American independence secured, that he turned his face towards Europe. The long years that remained to him were passed in retirement there. Napoleon sought to lure him from his retreat, but failed. Alexander, of Russia, listened respectfully to his intercessions for his exiled countrymen. And when he died the women of America went into mourning, and his ashes were carried reverently back from the land of exile to sleep on their native soil in the tomb of Poland's kings."—*Greene's American Revolution.*

**7. The News of Burgoyne's Surrender in Europe** (p. 84, ¶ 66).—"No sooner had it become certain that Burgoyne's expedition was frustrated, than the Council of Massachusetts, perceiving the infinite importance of getting the news swiftly to France, completed a fast-sailing vessel, and appointed Mr. Austin special messenger. . . . . Mr. Austin reached Nantes (*nants*) in thirty-one days, and pushed on rapidly for Paris. Swiftly as he traveled, a rumor preceded him of the arrival of a special messenger, and all the circle of official Americans hurried out to Passy (Dr. Franklin's residence) to be present at the opening of the packet. When Mr. Austin's chaise was heard in the court, they went out to meet him, and before he had time to alight, Dr. Franklin cried out, 'Sir, *is* Philadelphia taken?' 'Yes, sir,' replied Austin, 'but I have greater news than that. GENERAL BURGOYNE AND HIS WHOLE ARMY ARE PRISONERS OF WAR!' The effect was thrilling, electric, overwhelming, indescribable. 'The news,' said Mr. Deane afterwards, 'was like a sovereign cordial to the dying.' The king's financial agent, through whom the Americans had been so generously aided, who had been for several days in an agony of despair, feeling himself to be on the brink of ruin, was almost beside himself with joy. He straightway ordered his carriage, and drove towards Paris at such a furious pace, that the vehicle was overturned, and one of his arms dislocated. In a few days all Europe had heard the news; and, except the tory party of Great Britain, and the continental holders of English stock, all Europe rejoiced at it. . . . . Often, in meeting Mr. Austin at breakfast, or when sitting with him in the office, Dr. Franklin would break from one of those musings in which it was his habit to indulge, and, clasping his hands together, exclaim, 'Oh, Mr. Austin, you brought us glorious news.'"—*Parton's Life of Franklin.*

**8. Marion's Dinner of Sweet Potatoes** (p. 91, ¶ 92).—"About this time (1780), we received a flag from the enemy, the object being to effect an exchange of prisoners. The flag, after the usual ceremony of blindfolding, was conducted into Marion's swamp encampment. . . . . The British officer was about to return, after transacting his business, when Marion said, 'I hope you will give us the pleasure of your company to dinner.' At the mention of the word dinner the officer looked around, but could see no sign of a pot, pan, Dutch-oven, or any other cooking utensil that could raise the spirits of a hungry man. 'Well, Tom," said General Marion to one of his men, 'come, give us our dinner.' The dinner to which he alluded was no other than a heap of sweet potatoes that were snugly roasting under the embers, and which Tom, with his pine stick, soon liberated from their ashy confinement, pinching them every now and then, with his fingers, to see whether they were well done or not. Then, having cleaned them of the ashes, partly by blowing them with his breath, and partly by brushing them with the sleeve of his old cotton shirt, he piled some of the

Digitized by Google

best on a large piece of pine bark, and placed them between the British officer and Marion, on the trunk of the fallen pine on which they sat. . . . . The officer took up one of the potatoes, and affected to feel as if he had found a great dainty, but it was very plain that he ate more from good manners than a good appetite." —*Weems's Life of General Marion.*

**9. Capture of André** (p. 93, ¶ 98).—André coming to a place where a small stream crossed the road and ran into a woody dell, a man stepped out from the trees, leveled a musket and brought him to a stand, while two other men similarly armed, showed themselves prepared to second their comrade. The man who first stepped out wore a refugee uniform. At sight of it André's heart leapt, and he felt himself secure. Losing all caution, he exclaimed, eagerly: 'Gentlemen, I hope you belong to our party?' 'What party?' was asked. 'The lower party,' said André. 'We do,' was the reply. All reserve was now at an end. André declared himself to be a British officer; that he had been up the country on particular business, and must not be detained a single moment. He drew out his watch as he spoke. It was a gold one, and served to prove to them that he was what he represented himself, gold watches being seldom worn in those days, excepting by persons of consequence. To his consternation, the supposed refugee now avowed himself and his companions to be Americans, and told André he was their prisoner. Seizing the bridle of his horse, they ordered him to dismount, and proceeded to search him. They obliged him to take off his coat and vest, and found on him eighty dollars in continental money, but nothing to warrant suspicion of anything sinister, and were disposed to let him proceed, when Paulding exclaimed: 'Boys, I am not satisfied—his boots must come off.' At this André changed color. . . . . He was obliged to sit down; his boots were drawn off, and the concealed papers discovered. . . . . While dressing himself, André endeavored to ransom himself from his captors; rising from one offer to another. He would give any sum of money, if they would let him go. He would give his horse, saddle, bridle, and one hundred guineas; but the patriots were not to be bribed, and the unfortunate André submitted to his fate."—*Irving's Life of Washington.*

**10. Washington taking Leave of his Officers** (p. 98, ¶ 119).—"At noon (Dec. 4) the principal officers of the army assembled at Frances's tavern, soon after which their beloved commander entered the room. His emotions were too strong to be concealed. Turning to them he said, 'With a heart full of love and gratitude I now take leave of you. I most devoutly wish that your latter days may be as prosperous and happy as your former ones have been glorious and honorable;' adding, 'I cannot come to each of you to take my leave, but shall be obliged if each of you will come and take me by the hand.' General Knox, being nearest turned to him. Washington, incapable of utterance, grasped his hand and embraced him. In the same affectionate manner he took leave of each succeeding officer. The tear of manly sensibility was in every eye; and not a word was spoken to interrupt the dignified silence and the tenderness of the scene. Leaving the room, he passed through the corps of light infantry, and walked to White Hall ferry, where a barge was in waiting to convey him across the river. The whole company followed in mute and solemn procession, with dejected countenances, testifying feelings of delicious melancholy which no language can describe. Having entered the barge, he turned to the company, and, waving his hat, bid them a silent adieu. They paid him the same affectionate compliment, and, after the barge had left them, returned in the same solemn manner to the place where they had assembled."—*Marshall's Life of Washington.*

Digitized by Google

**11. Primary Causes of the Revolution** (p. 63, ¶ 3).—"Whoever has examined the acts of Parliament that were resisted by the colonists has found that nearly all of them inhibited *labor*. There were no less than twenty-nine laws that restricted and bound down colonial industry. None of these laws touched so much as the 'south-west side of a hair' of an 'abstraction,' and hardly one of them, until the passage of the Stamp Act, imposed a direct tax. They forbade the use of waterfalls, the erecting of machinery, of looms and spindles, and the working of wood and iron; they set the king's arrow upon trees that rotted in the forests; they shut out markets for boards and fish, and seized sugar and molasses, and the vessels in which these were carried; and they defined the limitless ocean as but a narrow pathway to such of the lands it embosoms as wore the British flag. To me, then, the great object of the Revolution was to release *labor* from these restrictions. * * * For a higher or holier purpose than this, men have never expended their money, or poured out their life-blood in battle."—*Sabine's Loyalists of the Revolution.*

**12. Loyalists, or Tories, of the Revolution** (p. 71, ¶ 23, and p. 73, ¶ 28).—These were the people of the colonies "who preferred to live and die in allegiance to the British crown." The patriots called them Tories, the king's adherents, or those in England who favored the war against the colonists, being so called. The most of them were natives of the colonies. "It may not be possible to ascertain the number of the Loyalists who took up arms, but, from the best evidence which I have been able to obtain, I conclude there were twenty thousand, at the lowest computation. * * * The acts of the legislative bodies (of the several States) for the punishment of the adherents of the crown were numerous; but, eventually, popular indignation diminished. The statute-book was divested of its most objectionable enactments, and numbers were permitted to occupy their old homes, and to recover the whole or a part of their property. But by far the greater part of the Loyalists who left the country at the commencement of or during the war, never returned; and of the many thousands who abandoned the United States after the peace, and while these enactments were in force, few, comparatively, had the desire, or even the means, to revisit the lands from which they had been expelled."—*Sabine's American Loyalists.*

**13. Surrender of Cornwallis** (p. 97, ¶ 114).—"The event of an assault could not be doubted, and, to save the useless shedding of blood, Cornwallis proposed to capitulate. * * * Washington would enter into no express agreement for the safety of the refugees in the British camp; but Cornwallis was allowed the use of a ship, to pass without examination, nominally to send dispatches to Clinton. In this ship some of the most obnoxious refugees escaped to New York. Lincoln, who had given up his sword to Cornwallis at Charleston, was appointed to receive the surrender of the British troops. The rigor of the British on that occasion was not forgotten: now, as then, the capitulating force was required to march out with colors cased."—*Hildreth.* "At about twelve o'clock, the combined army was drawn up in two lines, more than a mile in length—the Americans on the right side of the road, the French on the left. Washington, mounted on a noble steed and attended by his staff, was in front of the former; the Count de Rochambeau (*ro-shong-bo'*) and his suite were in front of the latter. The French troops, in complete uniform and well equipped, made a brilliant appearance, and had marched to the ground with a band of music playing, which was a novelty in the American service. The concourse of spectators from the country seemed equal in number to the military, yet silence and order prevailed. * * * In passing through the line

Digitized by Google

formed by the allied troops, the march of the British troops was careless and irregular, and their aspect sullen. The order to 'ground arms' was given by their platoon officers with a tone of deep chagrin, and many of the soldiers threw down their muskets with a violence sufficient to break them."—*Thacher's Military Journal of the Revolution.*

**14. Our Country after the Revolution** (p. 98, ¶ 118.—"Our fathers emerged from their arduous, protracted, desolating Revolutionary struggle, rich indeed in hope, but poor in worldly goods. Their country had for seven years been traversed and wasted by contending armies, almost from end to end. Cities and villages had been laid in ashes. Habitations had been deserted and left to decay. Farms, stripped of their fences, and deserted by their owners, had for years produced only weeds. Camp-fevers, with the hardships and privations of war, had destroyed many more than the sword; and all alike had been subtracted from the most effective and valuable part of a population always, as yet, quite inadequate. Cripples and invalids, melancholy mementos of the yet recent struggle, abounded in every village and township; and habits of industry had been unsettled and destroyed by the anxieties and uncertainties of war."—*Greeley's American Conflict.*

**15. While they were signing the Constitution** (p. 99, ¶ 121).—The convention, in Philadelphia, to frame a Constitution, "occupied from four to seven hours each day, for four months; and every point was the subject of able discussion, by the best talent and noblest spirits of the country. Entire harmony was not to be expected, but the high importance attached to union finally triumphed over local interests," and the Constitution was completed. "While the last members were signing it, Dr. Franklin, looking towards President Washington's chair, at the back of which a rising sun happened to be painted, observed to a few members near him that painters had found it difficult to distinguish, in their art, a rising from a setting sun. 'I have,' said he, 'often and often, in the course of the session, and in the vicissitudes of my hopes and fears as to the issue, looked at that behind the President, without being able to tell whether it was rising or setting. But now, at length, I have the happiness to know that it is a rising, and not a setting sun.'"—*The Madison Papers.*

**16. The Federalist** (p. 99, ¶ 121).—"Neither the intrinsic merits of the Constitution, nor the imposing weight of character by which it was supported, gave assurance to its friends that it would be ultimately adopted" by the States. A great many persons were opposed to it, and exerted their influence to have it rejected. "Under these circumstances, Hamilton and Jay conceived the plan of publishing, through the newspaper press of New York city, a series of essays, for the purpose of explaining and defending the Constitution; and they invited Mr. Madison—whose peculiar qualifications for the task both of them knew—to coöperate with them in the work. In the commencement, these articles were addressed to the people of New York, under the signature of 'A Citizen' of that state; but the general interest and importance of the subject soon induced the writers to address their reflections to the people of the United States; and, after the association of Madison in the work, the signature of 'A Citizen of New York' was exchanged for that of 'Publius' (from the Roman patriot Valerius Publicola). Such was the origin of a series of papers which (collected and published under the title of the FEDERALIST) have come to be recognized as one of the political *classics* of the age and language in which they were written, and will endure, possibly, even longer than the Constitution which they were intended to elucidate and defend."—*Rives's Life and Times of Madison.*

Digitized by Google




Digitized by Google

## SECTION V.

### FROM THE BEGINNING OF WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION TO THE CLOSE OF JEFFERSON'S: 1789 TO 1809.

**1.** WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.—The first election for President of the United States resulted in the choice of George Washington, who received the whole number of electoral votes. At the same time John Adams of Massachusetts, was elected Vice-President. New York was then the capital; and in that city Washington appeared before the first constitutional Congress, and was inaugurated on the 30th of April, 1789. (Ap., note, p. 11.)*

**2.** Congress having created three executive departments,—of state, treasury, and war,—the heads of which were to form the President's cabinet, Washington appointed Thomas Jefferson of Virginia, Secretary of State; Alexander Hamilton of New York, Secretary of the Treasury; and Henry Knox of Massachusetts, Secretary of War. Hamilton, by his judicious management, placed the public finances in a good condition; and, upon his recommendation, the debts of the states, contracted during the war, were assumed by the general government.

**3.** In 1790 a law was passed establishing the seat of government at Philadelphia for ten years, and afterward locating it permanently on the Potomac. In the following year, the Bank of the United States was incorporated;

1. Who was the first president? First vice-president? What was New York City at that time? When and where was Washington inaugurated?
2. What departments did Congress create? What of Hamilton and his plans?
3. What the seat of government? Bank of the United States? Of Vermont?

* "The oath was to be administered by the Chancellor of the State of New York (Robert R. Livingston) in a balcony in front of the Senate Chamber (of Congress), and in full view of an immense multitude occupying the streets (Wall and Broad), the windows, and even the roofs of the adjacent houses. * * * The Chancellor advanced to administer the oath prescribed by the Constitution, and Mr. Otis, the Secretary of the Senate, held up the Bible on its crimson cushion. The oath was read slowly and distinctly, Washington at the same time laying his hand on the open Bible. When it was concluded, he replied solemnly, 'I swear —so help my God.' Mr. Otis would have raised the Bible to his lips, but he bowed down reverently and kissed it. The Chancellor now stepped forward, waived his hand, and exclaimed: 'Long live George Washington, President of the United States!' At this moment a flag was displayed on the cupola of the Hall (the new Federal Hall—old City Hall —where Congress met and the inauguration took place: it stood where the United States Treasury now is), on which signal there was a general discharge of artillery on the battery. All the bells in the city rang out a joyful peal, and the multitude rent the air with acclamation."—*Irving's Life of Washington.*

Digitized by Google

and Vermont was admitted into the Union, making the number of states fourteen. During the Revolution, Vermont applied for admission into the Confederacy; but as New York claimed the territory, the application was not granted.* (See p. 189; also App. p. 75, topic 173.)

4. In the summer of 1790 an Indian war was commenced by the tribes north of the Ohio. Washington at first used pacific means; but, these failing, he sent an expedition, under Gen. Harmar, against the hostile tribes. Harmar destroyed several of their villages, but, in two battles, near the present village of Fort Wayne, Indiana, he was defeated with severe loss.

5. In the following year St. Clair marched against the Indians; but while encamped at a place in the western part of Ohio he was surprised, and defeated with the loss of six hundred men. During the war, Kentucky, which had been previously claimed by Virginia, was admitted into the Union; and, in the same year, 1792, Washington was again elected president. Adams was also rechosen vice-president. (See p. 190; also App. p. 69, topic 90.)

6. Gen. Wayne was finally sent against the Indians. In August, 1794, he met them near the rapids of the Mau-mee', and gained a complete victory. This success, followed up by vigorous measures, compelled the Indians to sue for peace; and, in 1795, a treaty was made at Greenville, by which a large tract of territory was ceded to the United States. Tennessee was admitted into the Union in 1796. (See p. 190; also App. p. 74, topic 160.)

7. When France, during her great revolution, declared war against England, a large part of the people of this

4. What occurred in 1790? Give an account of Harmar's expedition? Where is Fort Wayne? (p. 105.)

5. Give an account of St. Clair's expedition. What is said of Kentucky? Of Washington's re-election?

6. Give an account of Wayne's expedition. What is said of the treaty of Greenville? Where is Greenville? (p. 105.) In what direction from Greenville is the battle-ground of Wayne's victory? What is said of Tennessee?

* For information in relation to the selection of a place for the seat of government, see Note 1, end of section. Read, also, topic 168, App., p. 74.

Digitized by Google

country were in favor of helping their old ally of the Revolution. M. Genet (*zhe-nā'*), the French minister in the United States, presuming upon the feeling in favor of his country, began to fit out privateers in American ports to cruise against British vessels. Washington, deeming it best to preserve a position of strict neutrality between the two countries, demanded his recall, and another minister was sent in his place.

8. The first measure adopted by the United States government for raising a revenue by internal taxation, was the law of 1791, imposing a duty on domestic liquors. It met with considerable opposition, especially in the western part of Pennsylvania, where, in 1794, the resistance grew to an open rebellion, known as the Whisky Insurrection. Upon the approach of a force sent by Washington, the insurgents yielded.

9. It was not long after the making of the treaty of 1783, at the close of the Revolution, before the American and British governments began to accuse each other of violating its stipulations. To avert a war which seemed inevitable, John Jay was sent as a special envoy to England, where, in 1794, a treaty was made. This new treaty met with considerable opposition in the United States, because its provisions were regarded as being too favorable to the English; but it was at length ratified.*

10. JOHN ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION.—Washington, having declined a nomination for a third term, John Adams was elected to succeed him; and the new president was inaugurated at Philadelphia, on the 4th of March, 1797. Washington then retired to the quietude of his home at Mount Vernon. (See App. note, p. 24.)

7. What imprudence was committed by the French minister? What course did Washington adopt?

8. Give an account of the Whisky Insurrection.

9. State the circumstances in relation to Jay's Treaty.

10. Who succeeded Washington as president? When and where was Adams inaugurated? What, then, did Washington do?

* For Jay, see App., p. 69, topic 82. Read, also, Note 2, end of Section.

Digitized by Google

**11.** The neutral position taken by the United States in the war between England and France, gave offence to the latter power; and "Jay's Treaty," ratified in 1795, so aggravated the unfriendly feeling, that a war seemed inevitable. The president, therefore, convened an extra session of Congress, and defensive measures were adopted, Washington being appointed commander-in-chief. Hostilities at sea were commenced; but the decided stand taken by the Americans had its effect, and a treaty of peace was made with Napoleon Bonaparte, who had become First Consul of France. (Note 2, end of Sec.)

**12.** Washington, however, did not live to see the troubles terminated: he died at Mount Vernon, on the 14th of December, 1799. His death was regarded as a national bereavement. Congress paid honors to his memory, and the whole people mourned the loss which each person felt that he had individually sustained. During the following year the "City of Washington" was made the nation's capital. (See App., p. 74, topic 168; also note 3, end of Sec.)

**13.** Toward the close of Adams's administration of four years, a fierce struggle took place between the two great parties of the day—Federal and Republican—in relation to the presidential succession. Upon counting the electoral votes it was found that no candidate had the requisite majority; therefore the election went to the House of Representatives, by whom Jefferson was chosen president, and Aaron Burr of New York, vice-president.*

**14.** JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.—The inauguration of Jefferson took place in the new capitol, at Washington, on the 4th of March, 1801.† At the expiration of his first

**11.** Give an account of the troubles with France.
**12.** What is stated in relation to Washington's death? What occurred in 1800? Where is the city of Washington? (Map, p. 126.)
**13.** What struggle is spoken of? State the particulars in relation to the election.
* Jefferson and Burr were the Republican candidates.
**14.** When and where was Jefferson inaugurated?

NOTE.—For a statement showing the successive capitals of the United States, see topic 220, App. p. 79. For the Alien and Sedition Laws, topic 235, App. p. 84.
† See App., note, p. 24.

Digitized by Google

term of office, he was re-elected for a second; consequently he was president eight years.

**15.** During his first term Ohio was admitted into the Union (in 1803); and an immense tract of land, including the present State of Louisiana and extending from the Mississippi River to the Rocky Mountains, was bought (in 1803) from France, for fifteen millions of dollars. By the purchase thus made the free navigation of the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico was secured.*

**16.** In the same year, 1803, Commodore Preble (*preb'-el*) was sent against the pirates of the Barbary States, who were constantly on the alert to commit depredations upon the commerce of the United States. One of his vessels, the frigate Philadelphia, while reconnoitring in the harbor of Tripoli (*trip'-o-le*), struck on a rock, and was captured, her crew being made slaves.

**17.** The recapture of the frigate being considered impracticable, her destruction was determined upon. Accordingly, on a night in February, 1804, Lieut. Decatur (*dē-kā'-tur*), in a small vessel, with about 80 companions, entered the harbor, boarded the Philadelphia, killed or drove into the sea every one of the Tripolitan crew, and, after setting the frigate on fire, escaped without losing a man.

**18.** About a year later, Mr. Eaton, an agent of the United States, concerted an expedition with Hamet, the exiled though rightful heir to the throne of Tripoli. He marched from Egypt across the desert, and captured Der'-ne; but, in the midst of his successes, a treaty of peace was concluded between the bashaw and Mr. Lear, American Consul-General. (See p. 129, ¶ 57.)

**15.** What is said of Ohio? Of Louisiana? Of the advantage gained by the purchase of Louisiana?

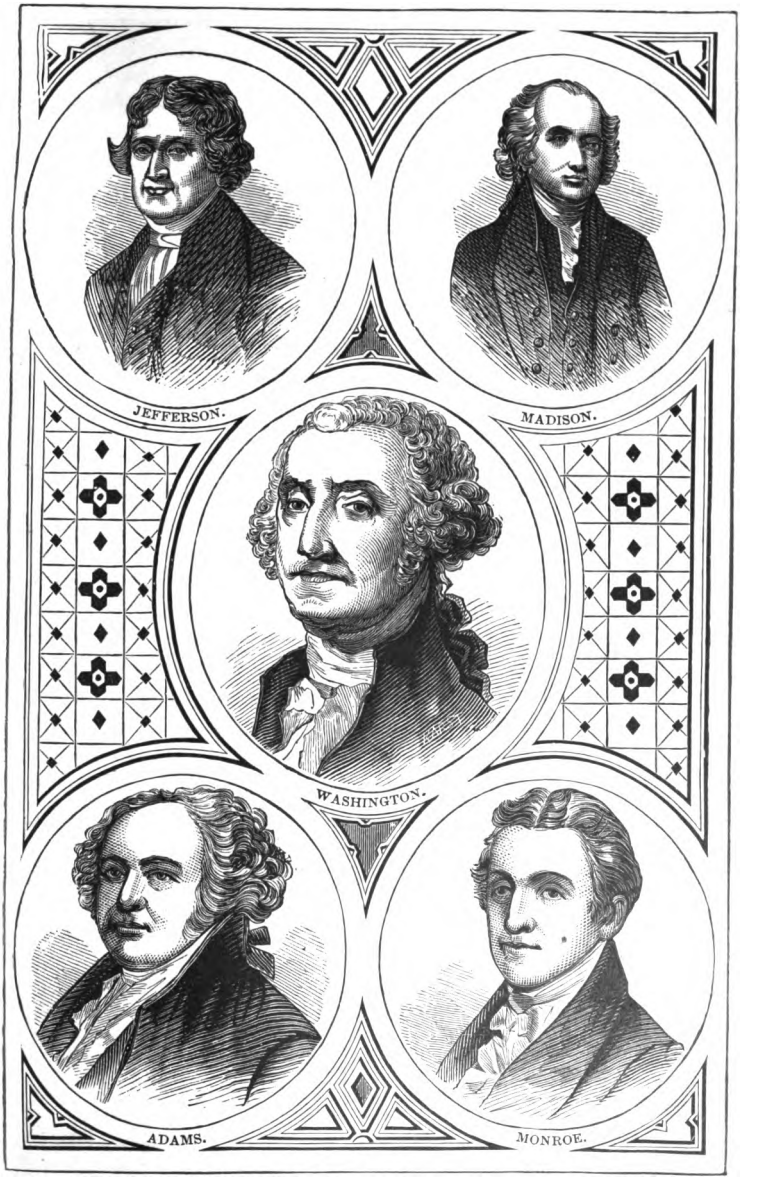
**16.** What were the Barbary States? *Ans.* Morocco, Algiers, Tunis and Tripoli, lying along the north coast of Africa. What expedition was sent in 1803? Why was it sent? What misfortune occurred?

**17.** Give the subsequent history of the frigate Philadelphia?

**18.** Give an account of Eaton's success? What followed?

* For Louisiana, see Notes 4 and 5, end of Section; also the two paragraphs on page 201, giving the history and extent of the Louisiana purchase; the note on page 157, and topic 101, App., p. 70. For Ohio, topic 129, App., p. 72.

Digitized by Google




Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

**19.** In July, 1804, the duel between Alexander Hamilton and Aaron Burr occurred. This sad affair, which resulted in the death of Hamilton, grew out of a political quarrel. Burr, finding that he had lost his political influence, became engaged, two years after, in organizing a secret expedition at the West. He was tried on a charge of treason, and, though acquitted, was generally believed to be guilty of a design to dismember the Union.*

**20.** About that time, France and England being at war, the latter power declared the northern coast of France in a state of blockade. Napoleon retaliated, decreeing the blockade of the British islands. In consequence of these and other "decrees" and "orders," great numbers of American vessels were seized by the cruisers of the belligerent powers, and our commerce with Europe was nearly destroyed.

**21.** But the crowning grievance of the Americans was the so-called "right of search." This was a claim set up by Great Britain, under which American vessels were searched, and all sailors of English birth found on board, were impressed as subjects of the king. (See note, p. 114.)

**22.** An event occurred, in June, 1807, which brought things toward an issue. The frigate Chesapeake, when off the capes of Virginia, was fired into by the British frigate Leopard. The American vessel being unprepared for action, struck her colors, after having twenty-one of her crew killed or wounded. Four alleged deserters were then transferred to the Leopard; but three of them, it was afterward proved, were native Americans.

**23.** This outrage provoked the president to issue a pro-

---

**19.** What is said of a duel? Of Burr, his western expedition and trial? What opinion prevailed? (Read Note 6, end of Section.)
**20.** What declaration and decree are mentioned? The consequence of them?
**21.** What is said of the "right of search" claim?
**22.** In what notable case did the British enforce their claim?
**23.** To what act did the outrage lead the President?

* See for Hamilton, App., p. 67, topic 65; for Burr, App., p. 64, topic 28. Read, also, Note 6, end of Section.

Digitized by Google

clamation forbidding British armed vessels to enter the ports or waters of the United States. Although the act of the Leopard was not approved by the British government, no reparation was made till four years after.

24. In consequence of the policy of the two European nations, so destructive to our commerce, Congress passed the Embargo Act, forbidding American vessels to leave the ports of the United States. As the Act not only failed to produce any change in the policy of the two powers at war, but was ruinous in its effects upon the shipping interests, it became very unpopular, and was repealed—a law, prohibiting all intercourse with those countries being substituted for it.*

## CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

1789. George Washington was inaugurated President.....April 30.
1790. The Indians defeated Harmar near Fort Wayne..Oct. 17, 22.
1791. The United States Bank was established at Philadelphia.
Vermont was admitted into the Union.....March 4.
Indians defeated St. Clair in western part of Ohio....Nov. 4.
1792. Kentucky was admitted into the Union.....June 1.
1794. Wayne defeated the Indians on the Maumee.....Aug. 20.
The Whisky Insurrection in Pennsylvania occurred.
1795. Jay's treaty with Great Britain was ratified.....June 24.
1796. Tennessee was admitted into the Union.....June 1.
1797. John Adams was inaugurated president.....March 4.
1799. Washington died at Mount Vernon, Virginia.....Dec. 14.
1800. The City of Washington became the capital of the U. S.
A treaty of peace was concluded with France.....Sept. 30.
1801. Thomas Jefferson was inaugurated president.....March 4.
Tripoli declared war against the United States.....June 10.
1803. Ohio was admitted into the Union.....Nov. 29.
Louisiana was purchased of France.....April 30.
Commodore Preble was sent against Tripoli.
1804. Decatur destroyed the frigate Philadelphia.....Feb. 15.

24. What was the Embargo Act? Why was the act passed? Why was it repealed? What was substituted?

* "It is true it (the Embargo) helped manufacturers by increasing the demand for domestic goods."—*Headley.*

Digitized by Google

1804. Hamilton and Burr fought a duel.....July 11
1805. Eaton captured Derne, a Tripolitan city.....April 27
A treaty of peace was concluded with Tripoli.....June 3
1807. The Leopard attacked U. S. Frigate Chesapeake....June 22.
British armed vessels ordered to leave the U. S.....July 2
Congress laid an embargo on American ships.....Dec. 22
1809. Congress interdicted commerce with Great Britain and France.....March 1

## REVIEW QUESTIONS.

PAGE
1. When and where was Washington inaugurated president?..... 106
2. How was Washington's first cabinet organized?..... 106
3. State what you can of Vermont.....82, 83, 107
4. Whence did Vermont derive its name? *Ans.* From its principal range of mountains. The word is derived from the French words *vert*, green, and *mont*, mountain.
5. Give an account of the three expeditions against the Indians..... 107
6. Give the history of General Wayne.....80, 89, 90, 107
7. State what you can of General St. Clair.....81, 82, 107
8. Give an account of the difficulties with France.....107, 108, 109
9. What can you state of Kentucky?..... 107
10. How did Kentucky get its name? *Ans.* The Indians called the region Kentucky, because it had been the scene of savage warfare. The word means *the dark and bloody ground.*
11. Give the history of the Whisky Insurrection..... 108
12. Write an account of General Washington....50, 55, 56, 57, 60, 71, 72, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 86, 96, 97, 98, 99, 106–109
13. Give the history of New York City..37, 39, 40, 66, 67, 73, 75, 79, 85, 91, 98, 106
14. What account can you give of John Adams?.....98, 106, 107, 108, 137
15. Give an account of Jefferson.....74, 106, 109, 110, 111, 112, 137
16. When was Ohio admitted into the Union?..... 110
17. Whence did Ohio get its name? *Ans.* From the river forming its southern boundary. The Indians called the river the Ohio, a term meaning *the beautiful river.*
18. Give an account of the troubles with the Barbary States..... 110
19. What account can you give of Alexander Hamilton?.....106, 111
20. What account can you give of Aaron Burr?.....109, 111
21. What foreign war-measures injured United States commerce?..... 111
22. Give an account of the affair between the Chesapeake and Leopard.... 111
23. Give the history of the Embargo Act..... 112
24. During what period was Washington president?..... 112
25. Name, in chronological order, ten important events of that period.... 112
26. What states were admitted during his administration?..... 112
27. During what period was John Adams president?..... 112
28. Name, in chronological order, four important events of that period... 112
29. During what period was Jefferson president?.....112, 114

NOTE.—In 1807, an act was passed to prevent the importation of slaves into the United States after January 1, 1808 (See App. p. 34, Const. U. S., Sec. III., 1st clause); and Fulton, in his first steamboat, sailed up the Hudson River.

Digitized by Google

# NOTES.

**1. Selecting a Place for the Nation's Capital** (p. 106, ¶ 3).—"By this act of Congress, the permanent seat of the federal government was established on the Potomac, the particular spot, within certain limits, being left to the discretion of the president (Washington), who was to appoint commissioners to fix the location, and to erect suitable public buildings. In their eagerness to fix the seat of government in their own neighborhood, Maryland and Virginia, as well as Pennsylvania and New Jersey, had held out very liberal offers; and it was one of the arguments in favor of the present act, that it provided for establishing a capitol and erecting all the necessary public buildings without any cost to the nation, an idea kept up for several years, but which proved in the end to be a very mistaken one. . . . . Shortly after the adjournment of Congress, Washington started on a three months' tour through the Southern states. In the course of his journey he stopped for several days on the Potomac to select the site of the future seat of government. That selection made, the Commissioners entered forthwith upon their duty. The city was laid out on a most magnificent scale, on a plot large enough to accommodate a million of inhabitants. Many persons from different parts of the Union entered with great zeal into the speculation for building it up, to most of whom, however, the enterprise proved sufficiently disastrous. The owners of the land, confident of growing rich by the enhancement of its value, transferred to the United States not only the ground necessary for streets, and the space reserved for public purposes, but one-half of the lots into which the city plot was laid out, the proceeds to be applied toward the completion of the public buildings."—*Hildreth's History of the United States.*

**2. Jay's Treaty** (p. 108, ¶ 9 and ¶ 11).—"While Mr. Jay was in England, he was elected governor of the State of New York. He returned to this country in May, 1795, and entered upon his duties as governor on the 1st of July following. Owing to the hostility towards England prevailing in the United States, great pains were early taken to secure the rejection of the treaty which Mr. Jay had negotiated. On the 4th of July (1795), a great mob paraded the streets of New York, with an effigy of Mr. Jay, which was afterward committed to the flames. No time was lost in getting up meetings throughout the country to denounce the treaty, and in many instances, inflammatory resolutions, previously prepared, were adopted by acclamation, without examination or discussion. It was easy to discover defects in a treaty which had been condemned before it was known. . . . . At a meeting in New York, convened in the open air and numerously attended, Alexander Hamilton attempted to make an address in vindication of the treaty, but the orator was answered with stones. The mob, after adopting the resolutions prepared by the leaders, marched, with the American and French colors flying," to the residence of Mr. Jay, and there burned the treaty. "A similar meeting was held at Philadelphia. . . . . On the 15th of August, the president (Washington), signed the treaty, and by that act of moral courage, rescued his country from the evils impending over her, and secured for her a long course of almost unexampled prosperity."—*William Jay's Life of John Jay.*

**3. The White House** (p. 109, ¶ 12).—The residence of the President of the United States at Washington, is commonly called the White House. It was first occupied by President John Adams, in November, 1800, while the carpenters and masons were yet at work there, as appears by the first letter, probably, ever written in the White House by its mistress. The letter was addressed by Mrs. Adams to her married daughter, on the 21st of the month. It says: "The house is upon a grand and superb scale, requiring about thirty servants to attend and keep the apartments in order. The lighting of the apartments, from the kitchen to parlor

Digitized by Google

and chamber, is a tax indeed (candles being used); and the fires which we are obliged to keep to secure us from daily agues, is another very cheering comfort. To assist us in this great castle, and render less attendance necessary, bells are wholly wanting, not a single one being hung through the whole house, and promises are all you can obtain. If they will put up some bells, and let me have wood enough to keep fires, I design to be pleased. Surrounded with forests, can you believe that wood is not to be had, because people cannot be found to cut and cart it! The house is made habitable, but there is not a single apartment finished. We have not the least fence, yard or other convenience without, and the great unfinished audience-room I make a drying-room of to hang up the clothes in."—*Mrs. John Adams's Correspondence.*

**4. The Acquisition of Louisiana** (p. 110, ¶ 15).—"The mission to France was attended with unlooked for success. The American ministers, instead of merely purchasing New Orleans and the Floridas, as had been the first and main object of Mr. Jefferson, were able to effect a purchase of all Louisiana, equal in extent to the whole previous territory of the United States. They owed their good fortune to the war which was so suddenly renewed between France and England, when the government of France, convinced that the possession of Louisiana would soon be wrested from her by the superior naval power of England, readily consented to make the sale, the rather, as the purchase money was particularly acceptable to France (Bonaparte) at that time."—*Tucker's Life of Jefferson.*

**5. Advantages of the Acquisition.**—"Jefferson had conceived the design, foreseen the occasion, and had even given the signal to strike when the occasion came. . . . . The purchase secured, independently of territory, several prime national objects. It gave us that homogeneousness, unity, and independence which is derived from the absolute control and disposition of our commerce, trade, and industry in every department, without the hindrance or meddling of any intervening nation between us and the sea, or between us and the open market of the world. It gave us ocean boundaries on all explored sides, for it left Canada exposed to us and not us to Canada. It made us indisputably and forever (if our Union is preserved) the controllers of the western hemisphere. It placed our national course, character, civilization, and destiny solely in our own hands. It gave us the certain sources of a not distant numerical strength to which that of the mightiest empires of the past or present is insignificant."—*Randall's Life of Jefferson.*

**6. Effect of Hamilton's Death** (p. 111, ¶ 19).—"On the day of his funeral, the whole city (New York) was in mourning. The procession which followed him to the grave comprised men of every degree, without distinction of parties. The minute-guns from the batteries were answered by the French and British ships-of-war in the harbor. On the steps of Trinity Church, Gouverneur Morris, with the four sons of the deceased by his side, pronounced a solemn oration in memory of his slaughtered friend; and when they had laid him in the earth, and the parting volley had been fired over his remains, the vast crowd dispersed in silence, and each man carried to his home the impression of a profound grief. Nor was this feeling confined to New York. It spread rapidly through the Union, and found utterance in every variety of form. Speeches, sermons, and poems innumerable were composed in honor of Hamilton; towns and villages in all parts of America were called after his name; and never up to that time, since the death of Washington, had any event produced so universal an expression of sympathy on that continent, as the untimely and lamented end of the great Federalist."—*Reithmüller's Alexander Hamilton.*

Digitized by Google

## SECTION VI.

### *Madison's Administration:* 1809 *to* 1817.

**1.** THE SECOND WAR WITH ENGLAND.—The fourth President of the United States, James Madison of Virginia, was inaugurated at Washington, on the 4th of March, 1809, at a crisis in the affairs of the nation which required, on the part of the administration, the utmost caution, prudence, and resolution.

**2.** In May, 1811, an affair occurred which tended to increase the ill feeling which then existed between Great Britain and the United States. The British sloop-of-war Little Belt, while cruising off the coast of Virginia, fired into the American frigate President; but her fire was returned with such heavy broadsides, that, in a few minutes, thirty-two of her crew were killed or wounded.

**3.** Before Madison became President, the Indians on the western frontiers, influenced by the appeals of Tecumseh (*te-kum'-se*), one of their ablest warriors, began to form a hostile confederacy. Their hostility increasing, Gen. Harrison marched against them in 1811.

**4.** Harrison approached the Indian town of Tip-pe-canoe', and encamped for the night. Early on the following morning, November 7th, the Indians made a furious attack upon the camp, but, after a bloody contest, were repulsed. This conflict, known as the Battle of Tippecanoe, ruined the plans which Tecumseh had formed.

---

1. When was Madison inaugurated President?
2. What naval affair inflamed the war spirit of the Americans?
3. Who attempted to unite the Indians in a league against the whites?
3, 4. Give an account of the battle of Tippecanoe. Where was the battle fought? (p. 105) What was the consequence of the battle? Was Tecumseh in the battle? *Ans.* He was not.

---

NOTE.—"Upward of six thousand cases of alleged impressments were recorded (at Washington). * *. * It was admitted (by the British government) that there might have been, at the commencement of the year 1811, sixteen hundred bona fide American citizens serving by compulsion in the British fleet. * * * Upon the breaking out of hostilities, twenty-five hundred impressed sailors, still claiming to be American citizens, and refusing to fight against their country, were committed to Dartmoor and other prisons (in England), where most of them were detained to the end of the war."—*Hildreth's History of the United States.* (See Note 1, end of Section.)

Digitized by Google

5. EVENTS OF 1812.—The government of the United States having in vain endeavored to induce the British to abrogate their restrictions so injurious to American commerce, and also to cease their impressment of our seamen, war was declared against that power on the 19th of June, 1812.

6. The invasion of Canada by Gen. Hull (July 12th) was the first hostile movement on the part of the Americans; and the capture of Fort Mack'-i-naw, five days after, the first on the part of the British. Hull crossed the Detroit River, intending to go against Fort Malden (*mawl'-den*), but, instead of doing so, encamped at Sandwich.

7. A detachment which Hull had sent to convoy a supply train for his army, was met near Brownstown, on the 5th of August, and utterly defeated. Four days after, a second detachment, under Col. Miller, encountered and routed the enemy. In about a month Hull recrossed the river, and took post at Detroit.




MAP QUESTIONS.—What two lakes does the Detroit River connect? Name four places situated on the Detroit River. Name four rivers that flow into Lake Erie. Where was fort Meigs? Fort Malden? Fort Stephenson? Where is Detroit? Sandwich? Brownstown? Frenchtown? Name two rivers that flow into Lake St. Clair. What battle was fought on one of these rivers? Who gained a victory on Lake Erie? Who, in 1794, gained a victory on the Maumee? Where is Fort Mackinaw? (p. 105.)

5. How did the "War of 1812" have its origin?

6. What were the first hostile acts of the war? What movement did Hul make in Canada?

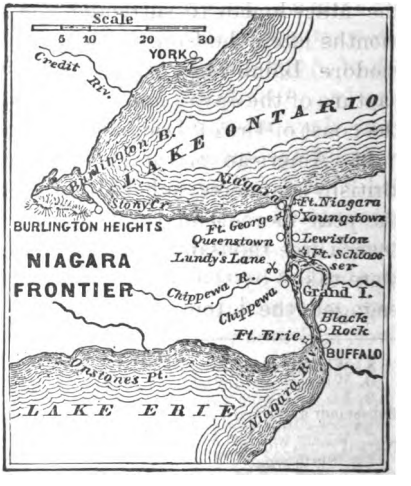
7. Give an account of the two battles near Brownstown.

Digitized by Google

**8.** To this place he was soon after followed by Gen. Brock, commanding thirteen hundred British and Indians. The Americans were confident of victory in the battle which seemed about to take place, yet, to their great indignation, Hull ordered a white flag to be shown, in token of submission. By this act, not only Detroit, but the whole territory of Michigan passed into the hands of the enemy. The surrender took place on the 16th of August. (See App. p. 68, topic 73; also Note 1, end of Sec.)

**9.** A second invasion of Canada was made in October of the same year. Gen. Van Rensselaer (*van ren'-se-ler*), in command of a body of troops, mostly New York militia, was stationed at Lewiston. On the 13th, a detachment of this force crossed the Niagara, and carried a battery on the heights of Queenstown.

**10.** The enemy, re-enforced by Brock, attempted to regain their lost battery, but were repulsed, and Brock was killed. On the afternoon of the same day, the 13th, they made a second attempt with fresh troops, and this time with success. Van Rensselaer, retiring from the service, was succeeded by Gen. Smyth; but the latter accomplished nothing, and also resigned.




MAP QUESTIONS.—What two lakes does the Niagara River connect? Name seven towns situated on the Niagara River. Name four forts that were on that river. Where is Lewiston? Queenstown? Chippewa? Lundy's Lane? York (now Toronto)?

Digitized by Google

**11.** The triumphs of the Americans on the ocean during 1812 were as decided as their reverses on the land. There were five important naval battles, in every one of which the Americans were victorious. The first was the capture, August 13th, of the sloop Alert, by the frigate Essex, Captain Porter. (Page 128, ¶ 53.)

**12.** On the 19th, six days after, the frigate Constitution, Captain Hull, captured the Guerriere (*gāre-e-āre'*), after an action of about forty minutes. In October, the sloop Wasp, Captain Jones, captured the Frolic; but scarcely had the prize been taken possession of, when an English ship of seventy-four guns hove in sight, and captured both vessels. (See App., p. 68, topic 74.)

**13.** Just one week after, October 25th, the frigate United States, Commodore Decatur, after an action of nearly two hours, west of the Canary Islands, compelled the Macedonian to surrender. A little more than two months later, the Constitution, then commanded by Commodore Bainbridge, gained her second victory, in the capture of the Java (*jah'-vah*). The action took place off the coast of Brazil, Dec. 29th, and lasted nearly two hours.

**14.** American privateers, too, scoured the ocean, and British commerce suffered in every direction. During the year more than three hundred vessels, with not less than three thousand prisoners, besides valuable cargoes, were taken by the Americans. The presidential election engaged the attention of the people toward the latter

---

**8.** What next followed, including the surrender of Detroit?
**9.** What second invasion of Canada was made?
**9, 10.** Give an account of the battle of Queenstown. What is said of Van Rensselaer and Smyth?
**11.** Compare the land and naval battles of 1812? What was the first important naval victory gained by the Americans?
**12.** State what you can of the capture of the Guerriere. (See, also, table, p. 132.) State what you can of the Wasp.
**13.** State what you can of the capture of the Macedonian. Of the capture of the Java.
**14.** What is said of the privateers and their successes? What is said of the presidential election of 1812?

Digitized by Google

part of Madison's first term, but, though he was opposed by those who condemned the war, he was chosen for a second term.

**15.** EVENTS OF 1813.—For the campaign of 1813, three armies were raised. That of the *West*, near the head of Lake Erie, was commanded by Gen. Harrison; that of the *Centre*, on the Niagara frontier, by Gen. Dearborn; and that of the *North*, near Lake Champlain, by Gen. Hampton.

**16.** Harrison's first object was the recovery of Michigan. A division of his army, mostly Kentuckians, commanded by Gen. Winchester, reached the Maumee, whence a detachment was sent forward, which drove a body of British and Indians from Frenchtown. Winchester soon after arrived. On the 22d of January, he was attacked by fifteen hundred British and Indians, under Gen. Proctor.

**17.** The Americans made a brave defence; but Winchester, who had been made a prisoner, agreed upon a capitulation, though at the time he was in the hands of the enemy, and his troops surrendered upon condition that they should be protected. But Proctor failed to keep his promise, and many of the wounded Americans were murdered by his savage allies.

**18.** Harrison, who was at the rapids of the Maumee when the news of Winchester's defeat reached him, selected a position for defence, and there built Fort Meigs (*megz*). On the 1st of May a large force of British and Indians appeared before the place, and at once commenced a siege. Four days after, Gen. Clay arrived with twelve hundred Kentuckians, and successfully attacked

---

**15.** What preparations were made for the campaign of 1813?
**16.** What was Harrison's first object? State what occurred previous to the 22d of January.
**16, 17.** Give an account of the battle and massacre at Frenchtown.
**18.** Where was Harrison when the news of Winchester's defeat reached him? What measures of defence did he then adopt? State what followed.

Digitized by Google

the besiegers; but Proctor continued operations until the 9th, when, deserted by his Indian allies, he made a disorderly retreat.

**19.** He again threatened Fort Meigs, but, finding it well defended, terminated a brief siege by suddenly leaving. His next move was against Fort Stephenson, then garrisoned by one hundred and fifty men, under the command of Major Croghan (*krōg'-an*), a young man not twenty-two years old. Croghan had but one cannon, a six-pounder. (See App., p. 65, topic 37.)

**20.** A cannonade was directed against the fort until a breach was made, when the enemy, Aug. 2d, attempted to carry the place by assault; but they were met by a volley of musketry and a discharge from the six-pounder with such terrible effect, that, panic-struck, they fled in confusion, leaving one hundred and fifty of their number killed or wounded.

**21.** During the summer, an American and an English squadron were fitted out on Lake Erie—the former commanded by Commodore Perry, and the latter by Commodore Barclay. They met on the 10th of September, near the western extremity of the lake, when a hard-fought battle of four hours took place, resulting in a brilliant victory to the Americans, every vessel of the enemy having surrendered. In dispatching information of his victory to Harrison, Perry wrote: "We have met the enemy, and they are ours."*

**22.** The consequences of the victory were highly important. The Americans established their naval supremacy on Lake Erie, Detroit was evacuated by the British, and the Indians of Michigan were intimidated. Harrison

**19, 20.** State what afterward occurred at Fort Meigs. Give an account of Crogan's heroic conduct. Where was Fort Stephenson? (Map. p. 115.) What town now occupies the site of Fort Stephenson? *Ans.* Fremont.

**21.** Give an account of Perry's victory on Lake Erie.

**22.** Name three consequences of Perry's victory. What movement did Harrison make? What movement did Proctor make?

* Perry and Barclay at the time held the rank of Captain.

Digitized by Google

seeing his opportunity for success, crossed the lake in Perry's fleet, and landed near Fort Malden. But the fort was deserted, and Proctor and Tecumseh were in full retreat.

**23.** Harrison followed in eager pursuit, and, on the 5th of October, overtook the enemy at a place on the Thames (*temz*). The Americans charged, breaking the lines of the British, and soon compelling them to surrender; but the contest with the Indians was more obstinate. At length Tecumseh fell, and the savage warriors fled. The war on the western frontier was terminated.

**24.** In the spring of 1813, several months before the successes of Perry and Harrison, the Southern Indians were visited by Tecumseh, and induced to take up arms against the whites. On the last day of August, fifteen hundred of their warriors surprised Fort Mims, and massacred nearly three hundred men, women, and children.




**25.** This unprovoked attack aroused the whole South, and volunteers* as-

MAP QUESTIONS.—What state is on the north of Alabama? On the east? On the west? On the south? Name six rivers partly or wholly in Alabama. Where was Fort Mims (also written Mimms)? Tohopeka?

**23.** Give an account of the battle of the Thames.

**24.** How were the Creek Indians induced to make war upon the whites? Give an account of the massacre at Fort Mims.

**25.** Give an account of what followed. Give an account of the battle of Tohopeka. What were the consequences?

* In connection with the account of the battle of Tohopeka, read Note 3, end of Section.

Digitized by Google

sembled to avenge the deed of horror. Several battles were fought in quick succession, in every one of which the Indians were defeated. At length a thousand warriors made a final stand at To-ho-pe'-ka, where they were defeated by Gen. Jackson, on the 27th of March, 1814, with great slaughter. Their subjugation was complete.

**26.** Toward the latter part of April, 1813, Gen. Dearborn, commanding the *Army of the Centre*, left Sackett's Harbor, in Commodore Chauncey's (*chahn'-se's*) fleet, crossed Lake Ontario, and proceeded to attack York, now Toronto. On the 27th, the troops landed, led by Gen. Pike, and were carrying everything before them, when the enemy's magazine exploded, mortally wounding Pike, and making sad havoc among his men. After a moment's panic they moved on, and were soon in possession of the town.*

**27.** Just one month later, May 27th, the fleet with Dearborn and his army, appeared off Fort George. The British made but a brief defence of the place, and then fled. A detachment, under Generals Chandler and Win'-der, sent in pursuit, was unsuccessfully attacked on the night of the 6th of June, though both generals were made prisoners.

**28.** The British in Canada, on being informed that Dearborn with a large body of troops had sailed from Sackett's Harbor, sent a thousand men across the lake to attack the place. Gen. Pre-vost', the commander, effected a landing; but was met, May 29th, by a small body of regulars and some militia, under Gen. Brown, and repulsed.

**29.** Dearborn, having resigned his command, was suc-

**26.** Give an account of the battle of York.
**27.** What fort did the Americans capture? Chandler and Winder?
**28.** What tempted the British to go against Sackett's Harbor? Give an account of the battle fought there. Where is Sackett's Harbor? (Map, p. 38.)

* "Pike was carried on board the commodore's ship, and the last act of his life was to make a sign that the British flag, which had been brought to him, should be placed under his head."—*Headley's Second War with England.*

Digitized by Google

ceeded by Gen. Wilkinson. A plan for the invasion of Canada was devised by the Secretary of War, by which the *Army of the Centre*, under Wilkinson, and the *Army of the North*, under Hampton, were to form a junction on the St. Lawrence, and proceed against Montreal.

**30.** In passing down the St. Lawrence, Wilkinson landed a detachment near Williamsburg, to cover the descent of the fleet. On the 11th of November a severe though indecisive engagement took place, known as the battle of Chrysler's (*kris'-ler's*) Field, in which the Americans were the greater sufferers. Wilkinson proceeded some distance further, but, Hampton failing to co-operate with him, the design against Montreal was abandoned.

**31.** Though the American seamen, during 1813, were not uniformly successful, their gallantry still continued to be the theme of admiration. On the 24th of February, the sloop-of-war Hornet, Captain Lawrence, encountered the British brig Peacock, off the coast of Guiana (*ge-ah'-na*), and in fifteen minutes compelled her to strike her colors. The captured vessel sank in a few minutes after, carrying down with her nine of her own crew and three of the Hornet's.

**32.** On his return to the United States, Lawrence was promoted to the command of the frigate Chesapeake, then lying in Boston harbor. In the forenoon of June 1st the British frigate Shannon, Captain Broke, appeared off the harbor to meet the Chesapeake. Though the American vessel had imperfect equipments, and an ill-assorted crew, while the British ship had a select crew

---

**29.** Who succeeded Dearborn in the command? What plan of action was devised at Washington?

**30.** Give an account of the battle of Chrysler's Field. Where is Williamsburg? (Map, p. 38.) What were the further movements of Wilkinson?

**31.** What is said of the naval operations of 1813? Give an account of the action between the Hornet and the Peacock.

**32.** What took place preliminary to the battle between the Chesapeake and the Shannon?

Digitized by Google




"Don't Give Up the Ship."—*Lawrence.*

Digitized by Google

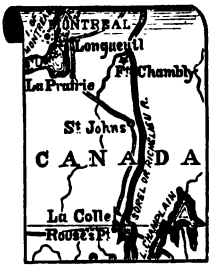
Digitized by Google

and was in the best possible condition, Lawrence still felt impelled to go out and engage her.*

**33.** Toward evening the two vessels met, and a terrific contest of fifteen minutes ensued. Lawrence was mortally wounded in the early part of the action, but his last injunction as he was borne below was, "Don't give up the ship." The Chesapeake, after having all her superior officers either killed or wounded, was boarded by the enemy, and her flag hauled down. (Note 4, end of §)

**34.** The brig Argus, Captain Allen, made a daring cruise in the waters about England, capturing a large number of vessels. While in the English Channel, Allen fell in with the brig Pelican; and, in the action which ensued, and which resulted in the capture of the Argus, was mortally wounded.

**35.** Fortune next favored the Americans. Off the coast of Maine, Sept. 5th, the brig Enterprise, Lieut. Burrows, met the British brig Boxer, Capt. Blythe, and, after an action of forty minutes, captured her. Both commanders fell in the engagement, and their bodies were buried side by side, at Portland, with the honors of war.



PART OF SOREL RIVER.

**36.** EVENTS OF 1814, AND CLOSE OF THE WAR.—During the winter of 1813–14, the army of Gen. Wilkinson was quartered at French Mills. Early in 1814 a detachment, under Gen. Brown, was sent to Sackett's Harbor; and, toward March, the main body removed to Plattsburg. In the

**33.** Give an account of the action between the Chesapeake and Shannon. In what affair did we hear of the Chesapeake before? (p. 111.) Did Perry's victory occur before or after the loss of the Chesapeake?

**34.** Give an account of the cruise and loss of the Argus.

**35.** Give an account of the capture of the Boxer, and subsequent events.

**36.** Where did Wilkinson's army quarter during the winter of 1813-14? Where is French Mills? (p. 53.) What army movements are mentioned? What events closed Wilkinson's military career? Where is La Colle? (Map, p. 123.)

* A *written* challenge, which had been sent to Lawrence, had not been received when the Chesapeake sailed from Boston.

Digitized by Google

same month, March, Wilkinson marched into Canada, but being repulsed at La Colle (*kŏl'*), he returned to Plattsburg. He was soon after superseded in the command by Gen. Iz'-ard.

**37.** Brown did not remain long at Sackett's Harbor, but, having been appointed to the command of an army on the Niagara frontier, he hastened to carry out the views of the Secretary of War for another invasion of Canada. On the 3d of July his advance, consisting of two brigades under Generals Scott and Ripley, crossed the Niagara, and captured Fort Erie without a struggle.

**38.** The Americans, with Brown in command, pushed forward along the western bank of the river, and, at Chippewa (*chip'-pē-waw*), on the 5th, gained a brilliant victory over the enemy, under Gen. Ri'-all. The British retired to the shores of Lake Ontario, and there were reenforced by Gen. Drummond, who took the command.

**39.** Drummond marched against the Americans, and, on the 25th, the battle of Lundy's Lane, the most obstinate of the war, occurred. Scott, who led the advance, bravely contended against superior numbers, until the arrival of Brown; but, it soon becoming evident that a battery which the enemy held on a height, and which swept all parts of the field, must be captured or the Americans be defeated, Col. Miller was asked if he could take it. He promptly answered, "I'll try, sir."

**40.** He did try, and was successful. Three times the British attempted to regain their lost battery, but were repulsed at every assault. Finally, at midnight, after a contest of six hours, they withdrew, each party losing about eight hundred men. Brown and Scott being se-

**37.** Who, in 1814, commanded an expedition for the invasion of Canada? What were the first movements?

**38.** Give an account of the battle of Chippewa? What did the British do after the battle?

**39, 40.** Give an account of the battle of Lundy's Lane. What is said of Brown, Scott, Ripley, and Gaines?

Digitized by Google

verely wounded, Gen. Ripley conducted the army to Fort Erie, where Gen. Gaines soon after took command.*

**41.** On the 4th of August, Drummond laid siege to Fort Erie, and, on the 15th, in attempting to carry the place by assault, was repulsed with the loss of about a thousand men. On the 17th of September, Brown being then in command, the Americans made a sortie from the fort, and destroyed the advanced works of the besiegers. Drummond, on being informed that Izard was approaching, retired northward; and, in November, the Americans destroyed the fort and crossed over to New York.

**42.** Izard, when he started from Plattsburg, left Gen. Macomb (*mā-komb'*) in command there, with only a few hundred men. In September, Sir George Prevost, at the head of fourteen thousand men, marched against Macomb, and, at the same time, the British fleet on Lake Champlain, commanded by Commodore Downie (*down'-e*), sailed to attack the American fleet under Commodore MacDonough (*mak-don'-o*).

**43.** The battle of Plattsburg and of Lake Champlain took place on the 11th. While the British, from their batteries, commenced the one on the land, their fleet engaged MacDonough's vessels which were at anchor in the bay of Plattsburg. In a little more than two hours MacDonough gained a complete victory. The fire from the land batteries then slackened, and, at nightfall, Prevost made a hasty retreat, having lost in killed, wounded, and desertions, about twenty-five hundred men.

**44.** During the greater part of 1814, the whole Atlantic seaboard was locked up by British cruisers, from which

**41.** What was the next movement of the British? What occurred more than a month later? How was the siege brought to a close?

**42.** Who, after Izard, had the command at Lake Champlain? What forces threatened the army and fleet there?

**42, 43.** Give an account of the two battles that occurred Sept. 11th. Where is Lake Champlain? (Map, p. 53.) Plattsburg? (Map, p. 82.)

* "The battle of Lundy's Lane had never been appreciated as it ought to be. The victory was the resurrection or birth of American arms. The charm of British military invincibility was as effectually broken by a single brigade as that of naval supremacy by a single frigate, as much as if a large army or fleet had been the agent."—*Charles J. Ingersoll's Historical Sketches.*

Digitized by Google




descents were made upon small towns. In August, Stonington was bombarded, but without success. A little later in the month, a squadron entered the Patux'-ent, and, at Benedict, landed five thousand men, commanded by Gen. Ross.

**45.** An American flotilla was then lying in the Patuxent, but, rather than have his boats fall into the hands of the invaders, Commodore Barney burnt them. Ross's object was the capture of Washington. Instead, however, of making a direct march, he proceeded by the way of Bla'-densburg, where he met, Aug. 24th, with some opposition from the militia, under Gen. Win'-der, and a body of seamen and marines, under Barney.

**46.** On the same day, Aug. 24th, he reached Washington, and destroyed a large amount of property.* The capitol, with its library, the president's house, and other buildings were burned, and, next day, the British made a hasty retreat. In the mean time a division of the ene-

---

MAP QUESTIONS.—Name six rivers that flow into Chesapeake Bay. Describe the Patuxent. Where is Benedict? Bladensburg? Washington? Alexandria? Baltimore? Fort McHenry? North Point?

**44.** What did British cruisers accomplish? What is said of Stonington? Where is Stonington? (Map, p. 94.) What took place at Benedict?

**45.** What action did Barney take? What was Ross's object? State what happened at Bladensburg.

**46.** What destruction was effected at Washington? What did the British effect at Alexandria?

* Read Notes 5 and 6, end of Section.

Digitized by Google

my's fleet ascended the Potomac to Alexandria, and compelled the inhabitants of the town, on threat of bombardment, to surrender their merchandise and shipping.

**47.** Ross next proceeded against Baltimore. On the 12th of September he landed his troops at North Point, several miles from the city, while sixteen of the enemy's ships sailed up the Patapsco to bombard Fort McHenry. On his march, Ross was killed in a skirmish, and the progress of the troops was then disputed, for more than an hour, by a body of militia under Gen. Strick'-er. Next day the enemy encamped near the defences of the city, to await the movements of the fleet.

**48.** The bombardment of Fort McHenry commenced on the morning of the 13th, and continued till near the following morning, but without making any serious impression.* Gen. Brooke, Ross's successor, seeing no prospect of success against the city, embarked his troops, and the whole force of the enemy withdrew.

**49.** During the summer, the authorities of Pensacola, then a Spanish port, allowed the British to take possession of their forts and fit out expeditions against the United States. On the 15th of September, Fort Bowyer (bō'-yer), now Fort Morgan, was attacked by a British fleet, aided by a force of Indians and marines, but the assailants were repulsed, losing one of their ships and many men. The other ships effected their escape to Pensacola.




MOBILE AND VICINITY.

**47.** Against what place did Ross next proceed? What further can you state of Ross? What took place on the 12th, after Ross's death?

**48.** The attack upon Fort McHenry. Brooke's subsequent movements.

**49.** What wrong did the authorities of Pensacola permit? The attack upon Fort Bowyer. Where is Fort Morgan? (Map, p. 120.) Mobile? Pensacola?

* During the bombardment, Francis S. Key, an American detained on board one of the enemy's vessels, during the bombardment, wrote the national ode, *The Star-Spangled Banner*. (Read Note 7, end of Section.)

Digitized by Google

**50.** Jackson being in command at Mobile, marched to Pensacola at the head of three thousand men; and, negotiations failing, seized the town and compelled the British to leave. He then returned to Mobile, whence, learning that the British were preparing to invade Louisiana, he hastened to put New Orleans in a condition of defence.

**51.** Toward the middle of December, a British squadron entered Lake Borgne (*born*), carrying twelve thousand troops, commanded by Sir Edward Pakenham (*pak'n-am*), the first object of the expedition being to capture New Orleans. On the 14th, a flotilla of American gunboats was compelled to surrender, and, on the 23d, Jackson made a spirited though ineffectual attack upon an encampment of the enemy's vanguard. On the 28th, and again on the first day of the new year, the British were unsuccessful in cannonading the intrenchments which Jackson had thrown up four miles from the city.

**52.** On the 8th of January, 1815, the British made a general advance against the American intrenchments; but volley after volley was poured upon them with such terrible effect, that they were compelled to flee. Pakenham was slain, and two thousand of his men were killed, wounded, or taken prisoners. The Americans lost only seven killed and six wounded.* (Note 8, end of Sec.)

**53.** Although, during 1814, the Americans were generally victorious on the ocean, yet the frigate Essex, Capt. Porter, after a successful cruise of more than a year, was attacked in the harbor of Valparaiso (*vahl-pah-rī'-so*), March 28th, by two British vessels, and forced to surrender. The conflict was one of the most desperate of the war.

**50.** Jackson's procedure against Pensacola? Jackson's next movement?
**51.** What invasion in Dec.? Where is L. Borgne? (p. 120.) New Orleans? Misfortune on Lake Borgne? Attack by Jackson? Two attacks by Pakenham?
**52.** Give an account of the battle of New Orleans?
**53.** Give an account of the cruise and loss of the Essex. (Note 9, end of Sec.)

* "O Morse, O Cyrus Field, why were you not ready with your Oceanic Telegraph then, to tell those men of both armies, * * * * * that they were not enemies, but friends and brothers, and send them joyful into each other's arms, not in madness against each other's arms."—*Parton's Life of Jackson.*

Digitized by Google

**54.** A large number of citizens of the United States, mostly residents of New England, had been opposed to the war from its very commencement. They regarded it as entirely unnecessary; besides, the losses which they were sustaining in their commerce and fisheries, were not without influence upon them. (Read Note 10, end of Sec.)

**55.** For the purpose of considering their grievances and devising means of redress, delegates met at Hartford, in December, 1814. The friends of President Madison and of the war looked upon this assemblage, commonly known as the "Hartford Convention," as a treasonable body; but the doings of the members were, to say the least, harmless, their principal act being the recommendation of several amendments to the Constitution. After three weeks of secret session, the convention adjourned.

**56.** In February, 1815, the joyful tidings reached the United States that a treaty of peace had been signed at Ghent (*gent*, not *jent*) on the 24th of December, 1814. The two great points of dispute—the encroachments upon American commerce, and the impressment of American seamen—were left untouched by the treaty. The omission, however, was not important, inasmuch as, by the termination of the European war, all encroachments upon American commerce ceased; and, by the great success of the American navy, the impressment question was effectually disposed of. (Read Note 11, end of Section.)

**57.** WAR WITH ALGIERS.—In 1795 a treaty was made with Algiers, in which it was stipulated that an annual tribute should be paid to that power, to secure American vessels from seizure by the Algerines. The tribute was

**54.** By whom, and why were persons opposed to the war?
**55.** Give what account you can of the Hartford Convention.
**56.** When did hostilities between Great Britain and the United States cease? In what respect was the treaty incomplete? What rendered the omission of no consequence?

**57.** What treaty was made in 1795? How long did the United States pay the tribute? What practice did the Algerines resume?

NOTE.—For an account of the loss of the Essex, see Note 9, end of Section.

Digitized by Google

accordingly paid until 1812, when the Algerines, believing that the Americans, because of their war with the English, would not be able to protect their commerce, resumed their old practice of piracy against United States vessels. (See page 110.)

**58.** After peace with England was established, a naval force, commanded by Decatur, was sent to the Mediterranean. Decatur captured the largest frigate in the Algerine navy, and another vessel with more than five hundred prisoners, and then appeared before Algiers. The terrified Dey was compelled to liberate the American prisoners in his hands, and relinquish all claim to tribute from the United States for the future. Decatur also made satisfactory treaties with Tunis and Tripoli. (Ap. p. 66, top. 45.)

**59.** The charter of the first Bank of the United States having expired in 1811, a second bank of the same name was incorporated in 1816. During Madison's administration two states were added to the Union:—Louisiana, previously the Territory of Orleans, in 1812;* and Indiana, formerly a part of the Northwest Territory, in 1816.

## CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

1809. James Madison was inaugurated President.....March 4.
1811. The U. S. frigate President defeated the Little Belt..May 16.
Harrison gained a victory at Tippecanoe.....Nov. 7.
1812. Louisiana was admitted into the Union.....April 8.
United States proclaimed war against Great Britain..June 19.
General Hull made an invasion of Canada. .....July 12.
Fort Mackinaw was surrendered to the British.....July 17.
The British defeated the Americans near Brownstown. Aug. 5.
The Americans defeated the British near Brownstown. Aug. 9.
The American frigate Essex captured the Alert.....Aug. 13.

**58.** Upon what expedition was Decatur sent? Give an account of Decatur's successes.

**59.** What is said of the Bank of the United States? What is said of Louisiana? Of Indiana?

* In 1804, the southern part of the "Louisiana Purchase," being the territory of the present State of Louisiana, except the portion north of the Iberville River, was constituted the *Territory of Orleans*. In 1812, the same was admitted as a state, the portion north of the Iberville being added a few days after by Act of Congress. (Read topic 209, App., p. 77.)

Digitized by Google

1812. Hull surrendered Detroit to Brock.....Aug. 16.
American frigate Constitution took the Guerriere...Aug. 19.
The Americans were defeated at Queenstown.....Oct. 13.
The American sloop Wasp captured the Frolic.....Oct. 18.
American frigate United States took the Macedonian. Oct. 25.
The American frigate Constitution took the Java...Dec. 29.
1813. Winchester was defeated at Frenchtown.....Jan. 22
The American sloop Hornet captured the Peacock..Feb. 24.
The Americans captured York (now Toronto).....April 27.
Proctor laid siege to Fort Meigs.....May 1.
Harrison and Clay defeated Proctor at Fort Meigs....May 5.
The Americans, under Dearborn, took Fort George. May 27.
Brown repulsed the British at Sackett's Harbor.....May 29.
The British frigate Shannon took the Chesapeake....June 1.
Croghan repulsed the British at Fort Stephenson....Aug. 2.
The British sloop Pelican captured the Argus.....Aug. 14.
Creek War began by the massacre at Fort Mims...Aug. 30.
The American brig Enterprise captured the Boxer..Sept. 5.
Perry gained his victory over Barclay on Lake Erie..Sept. 10.
Harrison defeated Proctor at the battle of the Thames..Oct. 5.
Battle of Williamsburg or Chrysler's Field was fought. Nov. 11.
1814. The battle of Tohopeka ended the Creek War....March 27.
Two British vessels captured the Essex.....March 28.
The British defeated Wilkinson at La Colle.....March 30.
Scott and Ripley captured Fort Erie.....July 3.
Brown defeated the British at Chippewa.....July 5.
Battle of Lundy's Lane or Bridgewater was fought..July 25.
The Americans repulsed the British at Fort Erie...Aug. 15.
Ross defeated the Americans at Bladensburg... ...Aug. 24.
Ross entered Washington and fired public buildings. Aug. 24.
MacDonough defeated the British on L. Champlain..Sept. 11.
Macomb defeated the British at Plattsburg.....Sept. 11
Battle of North Point, near Baltimore, was fought..Sept. 12
The Americans repulsed British fleet at Ft. McHenry. Sept. 13.
The Americans repulsed the British at Fort Bowyer. Sept. 15.
Brown made a sortie upon British works at Ft. Erie..Sept. 17.
Jackson compelled the British to leave Pensacola...Nov. 7.
British squadron on Lake Borgne capt'd U. S. flotilla. Dec. 14.
The delegates to the Hartford Convention met.....Dec. 15.
The treaty of peace was signed at Ghent.....Dec. 24.
1815. Jackson defeated the British at New Orleans.....Jan. 8.

Digitized by Google

1815. Congress declared war against Algiers.....March 2.
Decatur was sent against the Algerines.....May 21.
1816. The Bank of U. S. was rechartered for twenty years. April 10.
Indiana was admitted into the Union.....Dec. 11.

## PRINCIPAL NAVAL BATTLES OF THE SECOND WAR WITH ENGLAND.

* The asterisk indicates the successful party.

| DATES. | WHERE FOUGHT. | VESSELS. | COMMANDERS. |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1812. | | | |
| Aug. 13, | Off Newfoundland .. | Am. Frig. Essex ..... | Porter.* |
| | | Br. Sloop Alert..... | Laugharne. |
| Aug. 19, | Off Massachusetts ... | Am. Frig. Constitution.... | Hull.* |
| | | Br. Frig. Guerriere..... | Dacres. |
| Oct. 18, | Off North Carolina .. | Am. Sloop Wasp... ..... | Jones.* |
| | | Br. Brig Frolic ..... | Whinyates. |
| Oct. 25, | Near Canary Islands. | Am. Frig United States... | Decatur.* |
| | | Br. Frig. Macedonian..... | Carden. |
| Dec. 29, | Off San Salvador .... | Am. Frig. Constitution. .. | Bainbridge.* |
| | | Br. Frig. Java..... | Lambert. |
| 1813. | | | |
| Feb. 24, | Off Demarara..... | Am. Sloop Hornet..... ... | Lawrence.* |
| | | Br. Brig Peacock.... ..... | Peake. |
| June 1, | Massachusetts Bay.. | Am. Frig. Chesapeake..... | Lawrence. |
| | | Br. Frig. Shannon..... | Broke.* |
| Aug. 14, | British Channel . ... | Am. Brig Argus ..... | Allen. |
| | | Br. Sloop Pelican..... .. | Maples.* |
| Sept. 5, | Off coast of Maine... | Am. Brig Enterprise ..... | Burrows.* |
| | | Br. Brig Boxer . ..... .... | Blythe. |
| Sept. 10, | Lake Erie . ..... | Am. 9 vessels, 54 guns .... | Perry.* |
| | | Br. 6 vessels, 63 guns..... | Barclay. |
| 1814. | | | |
| Mar. 28, | Harbor of Valparaiso | Am. Frig. Essex ..... | Porter. |
| | | Br. Brig Phœbe..... | Hillyar.* |
| | | Br. Sloop Cherub..... | Tucker. |
| Apr. 29, | Off coast of Florida.. | Am. Sloop Peacock..... | Warrington.* |
| | | Br. Brig Epervier ..... | Wales. |
| June 28, | Near British Channel | Am. Sloop Wasp ..... | Blakely.* |
| | | Br. Sloop Reindeer..... | Manners. |
| Sept. 1, | Near Africa ..... | Am. Sloop Wasp..... | Blakely.* |
| | | Br. Sloop Avon..... | Arbuthnot. |
| Sept. 11, | Lake Champlain..... | Am. 14 vessels, 86 guns.... | McDonough.* |
| | | Br. 17 vessels, 95 guns.. .. | Downie. |
| Dec. 14, | Lake Borgne ..... | Am. 5 gunboats..... | Jones. |
| | | Br. 40 barges ..... | Lockyer.* |
| 1815. | | | |
| Jan. 15, | Off New Jersey..... | Am. Frig. President ..... | Decatur. |
| | | Br. (Squadron) ..... | Hayes.* |
| Feb. 20, | Off Island of Madeira | Am. Frig. Constitution.... | Stewart.* |
| | | Br. Ship Cyane ..... | Falcon. |
| | | Br. Ship Levant..... ..... | Douglass. |
| Mar. 23, | Off Brazil ..... | Am. Sloop Hornet ..... | Biddle.* |
| | | Br. Brig Penguin..... | Dickenson. |

NOTE.—During the battle on Lake Erie, "Captain Perry, finding himself in a

Digitized by Google

## PRINCIPAL LAND BATTLES OF THE SECOND WAR WITH ENGLAND.

* The asterisk indicates the successful party.

| DATES. | BATTLES. | COMMANDERS. | | MEN ENGAGED. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | American. | British. | Amer'n | British. |
| 1812. | | | | | |
| Aug. 5, | Brownstown | Van Horn | Tecumseh* | 200 | 600 |
| Aug. 9, | Maguaga, or 2d of Brownstown | Miller* | Tecumseh | 600 | 900 |
| Oct. 13, | Queenstown | Van Rensselaer | Brock* | 1,200 | 2,500 |
| 1813. | | | | | |
| Jan. 22, | Frenchtown | Winchester | Proctor* | 800 | 1,500 |
| April 27, | York | Pike* | Sheaffe | 1,700 | 1,500 |
| May 5, | Fort Meigs | Clay* | Proctor | 1,200 | 2,000 |
| May 29, | Sackett's Harbor | Brown* | Prevost | 1,000 | 1,000 |
| Aug. 2, | Fort Stephenson | Croghan* | Proctor | 150 | 1,300 |
| Oct. 5, | Thames | Harrison* | Proctor | 2,500 | 2,000 |
| Nov. 11, | Chrysler's Field | Boyd | Morrison | 1,200 | 2,000 |
| 1814. | | | | | |
| Mar. 30, | La Colle | Wilkinson | Lancock* | 4,000 | 2.000 |
| July 5, | Chippewa | Brown* | Riall | 1,300 | 2,100 |
| July 25, | Lundy's Lane | Brown* | Drummond | 3,500 | 5,000 |
| Aug. 15, | Fort Erie (assault) | Gaines* | Drummond | 2,500 | 5,000 |
| Aug. 24, | Bladensburg | Winder | Ross* | 3,500 | 5,000 |
| Sept. 11, | Plattsburg | Macomb* | Prevost | 3,000 | 14,000 |
| Sept. 12, | North Point | Stricker | Brooke* | 2,000 | 5,000 |
| Sept. 13, | Fort McHenry | Armistead* | Cochrane | 1,000 | 16 ships |
| Sept. 15, | Fort Bowyer | Lawrence* | Nicholls | 120 | — |
| Sept. 17, | Fort Erie (sortie) | Brown* | Drummond | 2,500 | 3,500 |
| Dec. 23, | 9 miles from N. O. | Jackson | Keane | 2,000 | 2,500 |
| 1815. | | | | | |
| Jan. 8, | New Orleans | Jackson* | Pakenham | 6,000 | 12,000 |

## REVIEW QUESTIONS.


PAGE

1. Name the first ten important events of Madison's administration ..... 130
2. Give an account of the events of 1811 ..... 114
3. What were the causes of the second war with England? ..... 111, 115
4. Give an account of the expedition under General Hull ..... 115, 116
5. Give an account of General Van Rensselaer's campaign ..... 116
6. What account can you give of General Brock? ..... 116
7. Give an account of the action between the Alert and Essex ..... 117, 132
8. Of the action between the Constitution and Guerriere ..... 117, 132
9. Of the action between the United States and Macedonian ..... 117, 132
10. Of the action between the Constitution and Java ..... 117
11. Now state, in chronological order, the naval events of 1812 ..... 117, 132
12. Name, in chronological order, thirteen important events of 1812 ..... 130, 131


vessel (his flag-ship, the Lawrence), that had been rendered nearly useless by the injuries she had received, and which was dropping out of the combat, got into his boat, and pulled after the Niagara (of his fleet), on board of which vessel he arrived at about half-past two."—*Cooper's Hist. of the Navy of the U. S.*

Digitized by Google

PAGE
13. State what you can of General Winchester ..... 118
14. When, where, and why, was Fort Meigs built?..... ..... 118
15. Give the further history of Fort Meigs ..... 118, 119
16. State what you can in relation to Major Croghan..... 119
17. State what you can in relation to Commodore Perry..... 119
18. Give an account of Tecumseh..... .....114, 120
19. Give an account of General Harrison.....114, 118, 119, 120
20. Give a full account of the Creek War .....120, 121
21. What movement did Dearborn make in April, 1813?..... 121
22. State what you can in relation to General Pike..... 121
23. What success did Dearborn afterward have?..... ..... . 121
24. Now, give a full account of Dearborn's part in the war . .....118–121
25. Give a full account of Wilkinson's part in the war.....122–124
26. Of the action between the Chesapeake and the Shannon .....122, 123, 132
27. Give an account of the career of the Argus.....123, 132
28. Of the action between the Enterprise and the Boxer.....123, 132
29. Name, in order, five naval events of 1813..... 132
30. Name, in order, fifteen important events of 1813..... 131
31. State how the Americans captured Fort Erie ..... 124
32. Give a full account of the battle of Chippewa..... .....124, 133
33. Give a full account of the battle of Lundy's Lane.....124, 133
34. Give, as far as you can, the history of Fort Erie .....124, 125
35. State all you can in relation to General Brown..... .. 121, 123–125
36. Give an account of the Battle of Lake Champlain.....125, 132
37. Give an account of the battle of Plattsburg.....125, 133
38. State what you can in relation to Sir George Prevost ..... 121, 125
39. Give an account of naval affairs during 1814..... .....125, 126, 128
40. How and when did General Ross commence operations?..... 126
41. Give an account of his march from Benedict to Washington ..... 126
42. Of his acts at Washington, and death near Baltimore .....126, 127
43. Now give the whole account in relation to Ross .....126, 127
44. State what is said in connection with Pensacola .....127, 128
45. Give an account of the expedition against Fort Bowyer ..... 127
46. Of Pakenham's movements in December, 1814..... 128
47. Of the disaster to the Americans on Lake Borgne ..... 128
48. Of the defeat and death of Pakenham..... 128
49. Now give the full account of Pakenham's expedition..... 128
50. Give the history and doings of the Hartford Convention..... 129
51. Give the particulars in relation to the treaty of peace..... 129
52. Name six naval events of 1814 ..... 132
53. Name, in order, nineteen important events of that year ..... 131
54. Name three important events of 1815 .....131, 132
55. Give an account of the troubles with Algiers .....129, 130
56. Give a full account of the troubles with the Barbary powers .....110, 129, 130
57. Give the history of Louisiana..... .....110, 128, 136
58. How did Louisiana get its name? *Ans.* The whole country watered by the Mississippi was taken possession of by the French, in 1682, and named Louisiana, in honor of the French king, Louis XIV.
59. Whence did Indiana get its name? From the word *Indian*. It was first applied, in 1768, to a grant of land near the Ohio, which a company of traders that year obtained from the Indians.

Digitized by Google

**1. Sufferings of American Prisoners in Dartmoor Prison** (Note p. 114).—"The winter (of 1813-14) set in with a severity not felt before for half a century. The mountain on which the prison stood was covered with snow to the depth of from two to four feet. The stream running through the prison yard, and the buckets of water in the rooms, were frozen solid. Most of the prisoners being protected only by rags, and destitute of shoes, could not go out into the yard at all, for it was covered with snow, but they lay crouched in their hammocks all day and all night. The strong were bowed in gloom and despair, and the weak perished in protracted agonies. To fill up the measure of their sufferings, the commanding officer issued an order compelling them to turn out at nine o'clock in the morning, and stand up in the yard till the guard counted them. This took nearly an hour, during which time the poor fellows stood barefoot in the snow, benumbed by the cold, and pierced by the bleak wind. Unable to bear this dreadful exposure, the prisoners cut up their bedding, and made garments and socks for their feet, and slept on the cold floor. Morning after morning, hardy men, overcome by the cold, fell lifeless in the presence of their keepers."—*Headley's Second War with England.*

**2. Hull's Surrender of Detroit** (p. 116, ¶ 8).—"General Hull had been in many battles of the revolution. He had led a column of Wayne's troops at the taking of Stony Point, and for his conduct in that action received the thanks of Washington, and promotion in the service. He was in the midst of the battle of White Plains, and was there wounded. He was in the battles of Trenton and Princeton. He fought at Ticonderoga, Bemis Heights, Saratoga, Monmouth and other places, and led regiments and battalions in most of these battles. . . . . Is it likely, therefore, that he should have been the only man in his army disabled by fear from fighting General Brock? What, then, were his reasons as given by himself? General Hull was now in the position in which, as he had stated to the administration before the war, Detroit must fall. His communications to Ohio were cut off by the Indians in the woods; his communications by the lakes were cut off by the British vessels; and he had no co-operation at Niagara. If he should fight a battle, and defeat the British army, his fate would not be less inevitable, for a victory would not re-open his communications. Besides this, his forces were vastly inferior to those of the enemy, his provisions were nearly exhausted, and there was no possibility of obtaining a supply from any quarter. If he were to fight, he would save his own reputation, but could not save the army or territory, and he would be exposing the defenseless inhabitants of Michigan to all the horrors of Indian warfare, without a reason or an object. Under these circumstances, it would be the part of a selfish man to fight. It was the part of a brave and generous man to hazard the sacrifice of his own reputation as a soldier, and his own selfish feelings, to his duty as a governor and a man. General Hull did the last, and never regretted it for a moment. He was asked, on his death-bed, whether he still believed he had done right in the surrender of Detroit, and he replied that he did, and was thankful that he had been enabled to do so."—*James Freeman Clarke's Campaign of* 1812.

**3. After the Battle of Tohopeka** (p. 121, ¶ 25).—"The grim general (Jackson) who presided over this bloody scene, had still a tender spot in his heart. Moved by the wail of an Indian infant, picked up from the field, whose mother had perished during the battle, Jackson strove to induce some nursing woman among the prisoners to take care of it. 'Its mother is dead,' was the cold answer, 'let the child die too.' The general, himself a childless man, then turned nurse himself. Some brown sugar formed a part of his private stores, and with this he caused the child to be fed. He even took it home with him, and reared it up in his own family. The Indian boy, thus cared for, grew a

Digitized by Google

bright and thriving boy, and, when he came of age, having meanwhile chosen and learned a trade, he was comfortably established as a saddler at Nashville." The defeat of the Indians entirely broke their spirits, and they began to come into Fort Jackson. "Among these suppliants was Wetherford, the chief who had been so active in commencing the war. 'I fought at Fort Mims,' such was his address to Jackson; 'I fought the army of Georgia. I did you all the injury I could. Had I been supported as I was promised, I would have done more. But my warriors are killed, and I can fight no longer. I look back with sorrow that I have brought destruction on my nation. I am now in your power, do with me as you please. I, too, am a warrior.' In spite of the murmurs of the volunteers, Wetherford's life was spared, and the same lenient policy was adopted by Jackson with all who came in."—*Hildreth's History of the U. S.*

**4. Don't Give up the Ship** (p. 123, ¶ 33).—"At half-past five the action commenced with great spirit on both sides. The first broadsides were, however, remarkably fatal to the officers of the Chesapeake. In a few minutes the master was killed, and four lieutenants were severely wounded. Shortly afterward Captain Lawrence received a dangerous wound, but remained on the deck, issuing his orders with perfect composure. The fire of the Chesapeake was directed with evident effect against the hull of the Shannon; that of the latter was aimed at the rigging of the Chesapeake, with such success, that in twelve minutes from the commencement of the action, she fell foul of her antagonist. A raking fire was now poured into her from the Shannon; and Captain Broke, seeing that her decks were nearly swept of the crew, took the opportunity of boarding at the head of his marines. At this moment Captain Lawrence, who had persisted in remaining on deck, received a mortal wound, and was carried below. It was at this period that he uttered those emphatic words, since so justly celebrated, '*Don't give up the ship.*' In a few minutes the enemy obtained possession of the vessel, and for the first time since the declaration of war the British flag was hoisted on an American vessel."—*Ramsay's History of the United States.*

**5. Burning of the City of Washington** (p. 126, ¶ 46).—"'This,' says an officer in Ross's army, 'was a night of dismay to the inhabitants of Washington. The streets were crowded with men, women, and children, horses, carriages, and carts loaded with household furniture, all hastening towards a wooden bridge which crosses the Potomac.'" . . . . . "At a small beer house opposite to the Treasury, fire was procured with which the Treasury and then the President's house, were set fire to. Before setting fire to the latter building, it was ransacked for booty, especially for objects of curiosity, to be carried off as spoils; but few were found. Some pictures and books, chosen from Mr. Madison's library, were all that were deemed worth preserving, except a small parcel of pencil notes, which, during the last few days, had been received by Mrs. Madison from her husband, while he was with the troops, and which she had rolled up together and put into a table drawer. To all the rest of the contents of the building—furniture, wines, provisions, groceries, and family stores, together with an excellent library—the torch was applied. After incendiarism had done its worst, both at the President's house and the Navy Yard, indiscriminate pillage closed the scene. . . . . But the day's victory and night's devastation brought the conquerors to a pause and retirement."—*Ingersoll's Second War with Great Britain.*

**6. What was thought in England of the Injury done to Washington** (p. 126).—"In England there was a general feeling that, however brilliant had been the attack upon Washington, the destruction of non-warlike buildings was something more than a mistake. It was an outrage inconsistent

Digitized by Google

with civilized warfare. Lord Grenville, with dignified earnestness, lamented a departure from a system of forbearance which had been pursued even by Napoleon during a conflict of twenty years, in whose hands nearly all the capitals of Europe had been, and in no instance, except in that of the Kremlin of Moscow, were any unmilitary buildings destroyed. We had done, said Mr. Whitbread, what the Goths had refused to do at Rome, when Belisarius represented to them that to destroy works of art was to erect a monument to the folly of the destroyers. He maintained that the outrage at Washington had conciliated to the American government those parts of the United States which were before hostile to it; had put in motion battalions of militia which before were not allowed to march. It had united all. It had made determined opposition to England a common interest. Whether to the destruction of the public buildings in Washington may be attributed the extraordinary vigor which seemed now to be infused into the military character of the American democracy, it is certain that, after that event, the course of the war was one of almost unvarying success to their arms."—*Knight's History of England.*

**7. The Star-spangled Banner** (p. 127).—"During the tremendous bombardment of Fort McHenry, Francis S. Key lay in a little vessel under the British admiral's frigate. He had visited the fleet for the purpose of obtaining an exchange of some prisoners of war, especially of one who was a personal friend, and was directed to remain till after the action. During the day his eye had rested eagerly on that low fortification over which the flag of his country was flying; and he watched with the intensest anxiety the progress of each shell in its flight, rejoicing when it fell short of its aim, and filled with fear as he saw it descend without exploding within those silent enclosures. At night, when darkness shut out that object of so much and intense interest, around which every hope and desire of his life seemed to cling, he still stood straining his eyes through the gloom, to catch, if he could, by the light of the blazing shells, a glimpse of his country's flag, waving proudly in the storm. The early dawn found him still a watcher; and there, to the music of bursting shells and the roar of cannon, he composed 'The Star-spangled Banner.'"—*Headley's Second War with England.*

**8. Jackson's Cotton-bale Defenses of New Orleans** (p. 128, ¶ 52).—"Each company had its own line of embankment to throw up, which it called its castle, and strained every muscle in fierce but friendly rivalry to make it overtop the castles of the rest. The nature of the soil rendered the task one of peculiar difficulty. Dig down three feet anywhere in that singular plain, and you come to water. Earth soon becomes the scarcest of commodities near the lines, and had to be brought from far after the first hours. An idea occurs to an ingenious French intellect. *Cotton bales!* The town is full of cotton. And, lo, here, close to the lines, is a vessel laden with cotton, waiting for a chance to get to sea. The idea, however, plausible as it was, did not stand the test of service. The first cannonade knocked the cotton bales about in a manner that made General Jackson more eager to get rid of them than he had been to use them. Some of the bales, too, caught fire, and made a most intolerable and persistent smoke, so that, before the final conflict, every pound of cotton was removed from the lines. A similar error was made by the enemy, who, supposing that sugar would offer resistance to cannon-balls equal to sand, employed hogsheads of sugar in the formation of their batteries. The first ball that knocked a hogshead to pieces, and kept on its destructive way unchecked, convinced them that sugar and sand, though often found together, have little in common."—*Parton's Life of Jackson.*

Digitized by Google

**9. The Loss of the Essex** (p. 128, ¶ 53).—"There was no longer any chance of saving the ship. To add to her distress, she was on fire, the flames coming up both the main and forward hatchways, and for a few minutes it was thought she must consume. To add to the horrors of the scene, an explosion of powder also occurred below; and Captain Porter told his people, that in preference to being blown up, all who chose to incur the risk might make the attempt to reach the shore by swimming. Many availed themselves of the permission, and some succeeded in effecting their escape. Others perished; while a few, after drifting about on bits of spars, were picked up by the boats of the enemy. Much the greater part of the crew, however, remained in the ship, and they set about to extinguish the flames, the shot of the enemy committing its havoc the whole time. Fortunately, the fire was got under, when the few brave men who were left went again to the guns; but the enemy, in perfectly smooth water, was firing his long eighteens at a nearly unresisting ship, with as much precision as he could have discharged them at a target. It had become an imperative duty, therefore, to strike, and the colors were accordingly hauled down—thousands of persons on shore being witnesses—after one of the most remarkable combats that is to be found in the history of naval warfare."—*Cooper's Naval History of the United States.*

**10. The Hartford Convention** (p. 129, ¶ 55).—"The troops of the United States, intended for defending the sea-coast, had been withdrawn to carry on the war in Canada. A British squadron was stationed in Long Island Sound to prevent the escape of a frigate from New London, and to intercept our coasting trade; one town in Maine was in possession of the British forces; the banks south of New England had all suspended the payment of specie; our shipping lay in our harbor, embargoed, dismantled, and perishing; the treasury of the United States was exhausted to the last cent, and a general gloom was spread over the country. In this condition of affairs, a number of gentlemen in Northampton, Mass., determined to invite some of the principal inhabitants of the three counties on the Connecticut formerly comprising the old county of Hampshire, to meet and consider whether any measures could not be taken to arrest the continuance of the war." Out of this grew the Hartford Convention. "The citizens had the same right then to meet in convention as they have now. The distresses of the country demanded extraordinary measures for redress. The thought of dissolving the Union never entered into the head of any member of the Convention. The gentlemen who composed it, for talents and patriotism, have never been surpassed by any assembly in the United States; and, beyond a question, the appointment of the Hartford Convention had a very favorable effect in hastening the conclusion of a treaty of peace. All the reports which have been circulated respecting the evil designs of that Convention I know to be the foulest misrepresentations."—*Noah Webster's Sketches of American Policy.*

**11. Peace! Peace!** (p. 129, ¶ 56).—"No victory ever so electrified the nation as the news of this peace. The ship that bore the glad intelligence reached New York on Saturday evening, February 11th, an hour after dark." . . "In half an hour after, Broadway was one living sea of shouting, rejoicing people. 'Peace! peace! peace!' was the deep, harmonious, universal anthem. The whole spectacle was enlivened by a sudden inspiration. Somebody came with a torch; the bright idea passed into a thousand brains. In a few minutes thousands and tens of thousands of people were marching about with candles, lamps, torches—making the jubilant street appear like a gay and gorgeous procession. The whole night Broadway sang its song of peace; and the next day, Sunday, all the churches sent up hymns of thanksgiving for the joyous tidings."—*S. G. Goodrich.*

Digitized by Google

## SECTION VII.

*From the beginning of Monroe's Administration to the close of Pierce's:* 1817 *to* 1857.

1. MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION.—James Monroe, of Virginia, Madison's successor in the presidency, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1817; and his administration commenced under very favorable circumstances. We were at peace with all foreign powers; our commerce rode every sea; and the strife at home between the two great political parties, Democrats and Federalists, had entirely ceased. (Read topic 224, Appendix, p. 81.)

2. Toward the close of 1817, the Seminoles (*sem'-i-nōlz*) of Florida, joined by other Indians, commenced depredations on the frontier settlements of Georgia. At first Gen. Gaines, and, afterward, Gen. Jackson, was sent against them. Being convinced that the Indians had been instigated to hostilities by persons in Florida, Jackson marched into that province, though, at the time, it belonged to Spain; seized the fort at St. Mark's; executed two instigators of the war, both British subjects; and sent the authorities of Pensacola to Havana. (Note 1.)

3. This having led to difficulties between the governments of Spain and the United States, a treaty was finally made in 1819, by which Florida was ceded to the United States, but Spain did not surrender possession of the territory before 1821. The Mississippi Territory, embracing

1. When was Monroe inaugurated? Condition of the country at that time?
2. Give an account of the troubles in Florida.
3. State how Florida came into the possession of the United States. Where is St. Marks? (p. 174.) What is said of the State of Mississippi?

NOTE.—"Shortly after his inauguration, Monroe, imitating the example of Washington, set out on a tour through the Eastern States. His declaration of principles in his inaugural address had been highly satisfactory to the Federalists, and at Boston he was received with most elaborate pomp. Embittered and hot-tempered leaders of parties, who for the last seven years had hardly deigned to speak to each other, or even to walk on the same side of the street, met now with smiling faces, vying in extravagance of republican loyalty. The 'era of good feeling' having thus begun, the way was rapidly paved for that complete amalgamation of parties which took place a few years after."—*Hildreth's Hist. U. S.*

Digitized by Google

the present states of Alabama and Mississippi, was divided in 1817, and the western portion admitted into the Union as the State of Mississippi. (App., p. 71, topic 109.)

4. Illinois, which, up to 1800, was a part of the Northwest Territory; and then, till 1809, formed with Indiana the Indiana Territory; and subsequently, by itself, was the Illinois Territory; became a state in 1818. Alabama was admitted in 1819. In 1820, Maine, which had up to that time been a district of Massachusetts, was organized as a state, and admitted into the Union. (P. 190, ¶ 6.)

5. The most important event during Monroe's administration was the controversy preceding the admission of Missouri into the Union. The states of the North opposed its admission as a slave-state, while those of the South favored such admission. (App., p. 71, topic 116.)

6. In Congress the debate was long and violent; but at length, in 1820, a bill, known as the "Missouri Compromise," was passed, by which it was declared that, with the exception of Missouri, slavery should be prohibited in the territory of the United States north of the parallel 36° 30′, and west of the Mississippi. Under this compromise, Missouri, with a constitution permitting slavery, was admitted into the Union in 1821.* (Page 151, ¶ 57.)

7. An important event of Monroe's administration was the recognition of the independence of the South American republics. In his annual message of 1823, Monroe declared that the American continents "are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power." This is known as the "Monroe Doctrine."

---

4. What is said of Illinois? Of Alabama? Of Maine?
5. What was the most important event during Monroe's administration? How were the states divided?
6. When was the Missouri Compromise Act passed? What declaration was made in the act? When was Missouri admitted into the Union?
7. What other important event of Monroe's administration is mentioned? What is the Monroe Doctrine?

* Read topic 213, Appendix, p. 77.

Digitized by Google

**8.** In the summer of 1824, Lafayette arrived on a visit to this country, as a guest of the nation. His tour through the states was everywhere signalized by tokens of respect from a grateful people.* In the fall of the same year, the election for president took place; but, in consequence of there being four candidates, and no one receiving a majority of the electoral votes, the election went to the House of Representatives, by whom (in 1825) John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts, was chosen.

**9.** JOHN QUINCY ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION.—The inauguration of Adams took place on the 4th of March, 1825. His administration of four years was one of peace, and under it the nation made rapid increase in population and wealth. (Read Note 2, end of Section.)

**10.** On the fiftieth anniversary of American Independence, July the 4th, 1826, occurred the deaths of the two venerable ex-presidents, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson. When it is recollected that Adams and Jefferson were members of the committee to prepare the Declaration of Independence, that both had been foreign ministers, vice-presidents, and presidents, the coincidence in their deaths is indeed remarkable.

**11.** The subject of domestic manufactures engaged a large share of the president's attention. In 1828 a tariff law was passed, based upon the principle of protecting home manufactures by imposing heavy duties upon imported articles of the same kind. This policy, known as the *American System*, had its friends and opponents then as it has now.

**12.** Toward the close of the presidential term, the con-

---

**8.** What is said of Lafayette? State how John Quincy Adams was elected president.

**9.** When was Adams inaugurated? What is said of his administration?

**10.** When did Jefferson and John Adams die? What coincidence in their lives and deaths occurred? What took place on the 4th of July, just five years after? *Ans.* The death of James Monroe.

**11.** What can you state of the tariff policy known as the American system?

* Read Note 3—Lafayette, the Guest of the Nation—end of Section.

Digitized by Google

test for the succession was carried on with great bitterness of party feeling. Adams was a candidate for a second term, but was defeated by Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, then Vice-President, having been elected four years before, was again chosen to that office. (Read topic 221, Ap., p. 80.)

**13.** JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.—Jackson's inauguration took place on the 4th of March, 1829, and he at once commenced a series of vigorous measures, which he carried out for eight years. The practice of removing office-holders and appointing political friends of the president, was begun by Jackson. (Read topic 236, App. p. 85.)

**14.** In his first annual message to Congress, the new president took ground against the renewal of the charter of the United States Bank. Notwithstanding the objection, Congress, in 1832, passed a bill to re-charter it, but Jackson vetoed the bill, and the bank consequently ceased to be a national institution when the charter expired.

**15.** In 1832 the northwest frontier suffered from Indian hostilities. Black Hawk, the most noted of the savages, and from whom the contest that followed took its name, was taken prisoner. The Indians finally gave up a large tract of territory and removed further west.

**16.** The tariff law of 1828 caused dissatisfaction among the people of the cotton-growing states; and though, in 1832, an act was passed removing some of the duties on foreign goods, the feeling was greatly increased. A convention in South Carolina declared the tariff acts unconstitutional, and therefore null; and proclaimed that if any

**12.** What is stated of the presidential canvass of 1828? Give the result.
**13.** When was Jackson inaugurated? What is said of his measures? What is said of the practice he began?
**14.** What is stated in relation to the United States Bank?
**15.** Give an account of the Black Hawk War.
**16.** What is said of the tariff act of 1828? Of the act of 1832? What was done, in consequence, in South Carolina?

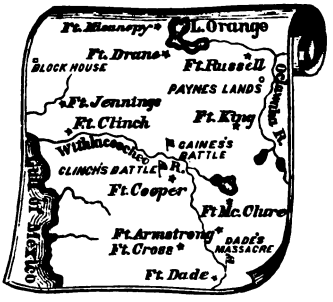
NOTE.—During Jackson's term, France, after a long and troublesome delay, paid to the United States five millions of dollars for injury done to American commerce by the French.

Digitized by Google

attempts were made to collect the duties, the state would secede from the Union. (See ¶ 5, p. 158.)

**17.** Jackson acted with promptness and firmness. He sent Gen. Scott to Charleston, and issued a proclamation against the "nullifiers." A "compromise bill," providing for the gradual reduction of the duties, was offered by Henry Clay, and passed by Congress. It was accepted by Calhoun, Hayne, and the other South Carolina leaders, and thus quiet was restored.*

**18.** Toward the close of 1835, the Seminoles became hostile, in consequence of an attempt to remove them to lands west of the Mississippi, in accordance with a treaty which had been made with some of the chiefs, but which others did not consider binding. Osceola (*os-e-o'-lah*), their most noted chief, having, in his opposition, used threatening language, Gen. Thompson, the government agent, put him in irons; but by feigning penitence and making promises, he soon obtained his liberty.




**19.** On the 28th of December, Osceola, resolved upon vengeance, approached a house in which Thompson and others were dining, and, making a sudden attack, killed five of the party, including Thompson. On the same day, Major Dade, while marching with more than a hundred men to join Gen. Clinch, at Fort Drane, was at-

**17.** Give the subsequent history of the attempt at "Nullification."
**18.** What troubles commenced in 1835? How was Osceola treated? How did he regain his liberty?
**19.** How was Osceola revenged? How was he revenged at Fort Drane?

* "Henry Clay proposed that the duties upon articles imported from foreign countries, and not coming into competition with similar articles made or produced within the United States, be abolished, except the duties upon wines and silks, and that those be reduced. A bill in accordance with this proposition passed both Houses, and was signed by the President (1833)."—*Parton's Life of Jackson.*

Digitized by Google

tacked, and, with his whole force except four men, was massacred.

**20.** A number of battles were fought during the following year; but in none could the Americans claim a decided victory. In October, 1837, Osceola appeared in the American camp with a flag of truce, when Gen. Jessup seized the chief, and sent him to Fort Moultrie. Two months later, Col. Taylor, afterward president of the United States, defeated the Indians near Lake O-kee-cho'-bee, in the most desperate battle of the war; and though they continued hostile till 1842, they never again rallied in large force. (Read topic 222, Appendix, p. 80.)

**21.** VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION.—Jackson was succeeded in the presidency by Martin Van Buren, of New York. Van Buren served only one term, or four years, extending from the 4th of March, 1837, to the 4th of March, 1841. (See App., p. 75, topic 172.)

**22.** Soon after his inauguration, a revolution in monetary affairs took place, producing great distress in all branches of business throughout the country. Merchants failed, commerce and manufactures were prostrated, and the crash was finally consummated by the suspension of specie payments on the part of the banks.

**23.** In the latter part of 1837 a rebellion broke out in Canada, which enlisted the sympathies and engaged the active co-operation of many citizens of the United States. A proclamation, issued by the president, forbidding interference in the affairs of Canada, together with the decided measures of the British authorities, had the effect intended, and the attempt at insurrection was suppressed.

**20.** What is said in relation to the battles fought in 1836? What took place in October, 1837? What further can you say of Osceola? *Ans.* He died about three months after, while at Fort Moultrie. Give an account of the battle of Okeechobee. What were the consequences?

**21.** Who succeeded Jackson as president? When was he inaugurated?

**22.** Give an account of the revolution in monetary affairs.

**23.** Give an account of the insurrection in Canada.

NOTE.—For an account of the Mormons, read topic 223, Appendix, p. 80.)

Digitized by Google

**24.** HARRISON'S AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATIONS.—Van Buren's successor in office was William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, the "hero of Tippecanoe and the Thames." The cabinet of the new president was judiciously chosen, and the people anticipated for him a successful administration; but, on the 4th of April, 1841, just one month after his inauguration, he died; and the vice-president, John Tyler, on taking the oath of office two days after, became president. (See App., p. 68, topic 69.)

**25.** In 1842 serious difficulties occurred in Rhode Island, growing out of a movement to substitute a constitution extending the right of suffrage, in place of the charter granted by Charles II., in 1663, and which had been the "fundamental law of the land" the greater part of two centuries. The "suffrage party" attempted to effect the change without regard to existing laws, even resorting to force; but the legitimate power prevailed. A constitution, the one under which the state is now governed, was soon after adopted. (See p. 31, ¶ 44.)

**26.** A proposition for the admission of Texas into the Union caused an excited discussion throughout the country during the closing months of Tyler's administration. Those who objected to an increase of the slave-power in the government, opposed the proposition; while those who favored such increase, advocated it. Three days before the expiration of his term of office, the president signed a bill for the annexation of Texas to the United States. (Florida was admitted in 1845: Iowa in 1846.)*

**24.** Who succeeded Van Buren in the presidency? When was Harrison inaugurated? What further can you state in relation to Harrison? When was Tyler inaugurated?

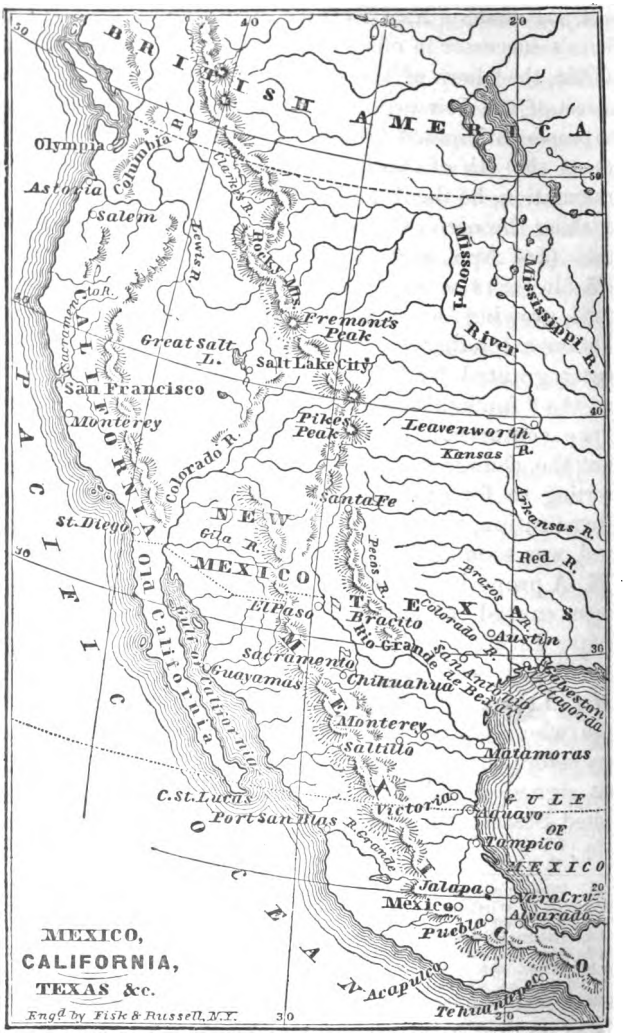
**25.** Give an account of the "Dorr Rebellion" in Rhode Island.

**26.** What proposition caused excited discussion? How were the people divided? What did Tyler do on the 1st of March?

**26, 27.** Who succeeded Tyler in the presidency? When was Polk inaugurated? State how Texas was made a member of the Union.

* See App., p. 74, topic 161, for Texas; App., p. 66, topic 54, for Florida; and p. 191, ¶ 8, as well as App., p. 68, topic 78, for Iowa.

Digitized by Google




Digitized by Google




Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

**27.** WAR WITH MEXICO.—POLK'S ADMINISTRATION.—Tyler's successor in office was James K. Polk, who was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1845. His administration continued during only one term, but it was an eventful one. On the 4th of July, 1845, the Legislature of Texas approved the "annexation bill" passed by the United States Congress, and, by this act of approval, Texas became one of the United States.

**28.** Texas had been a province of Mexico, but, in consequence of the arbitrary policy of the Mexican rulers, the Texans revolted, and, in 1836, set up a government of their own. The annexation of Texas to the United States led to a war with Mexico; for Mexico still claimed Texas as a part of her own territory, and considered the act of annexation a sufficient cause of war. (See Note, next page.)




**29.** EVENTS OF 1846.—For the protection of the new state, Gen. Taylor proceeded, by order of President Polk,

---

**28.** What can you state of the previous history of Texas? To what did the annexation of Texas lead? Why did Mexico feel injured?

MAP QUESTIONS.—(Maps, pp. 142, 143.) Into what waters does the Rio Grande flow? The Nueces (*nwā'-sēs*)? What conflicting claims to territory were made? *Ans.* The United States claimed the Rio Grande as their boundary, while the Mexicans asserted that the western limits of Texas never extended beyond the Nueces. Where is Corpus Christi? Point Isabel? Matamoras? Saltillo? Monterey (Mexico)? Monterey (California)? Buena Vista? Fort Brown? Where was the battle of Palo Alto fought? Of Resaca de la Palma? Of Bracito? Of Sacramento? Where is Tampico? Leavenworth? Santa Fe? New Mexico? California? Vera Cruz? Jalapa? Puebla? City of Mexico?

Digitized by Google

to the Rio Grande (*rē'-o grahn'-dā*), opposite Mat-a-mo'-ras, where he erected a fort, which was afterward named Fort Brown. Learning that the Mexicans were assembling troops at a point higher up the river, Taylor sent Capt. Thornton, with sixty-three dragoons, to reconnoitre. This little force was attacked on the 26th of April, 1846, and, after a loss of sixteen men, was compelled to surrender.

**30.** The Mexicans, in large force, having crossed the Rio Grande, for the purpose, as was supposed, of moving against Point Isabel, where the Americans had established a depot of supplies, Taylor marched to the relief of that place. After putting the Point in a good state of defence, he set out on his return to the river.

**31.** His progress was disputed at Palo Alto (*pah'-lō ahl'-tō*) and Resaca de la Palma (*rā-sah'-kah dā lah pahl'-mah*) by Gen. Arista (*ah-rees'-tah*); but, in both battles, the Mexicans were defeated with severe loss. In the first, fought on the 8th of May, the Mexicans numbered six thousand men, while the Americans consisted of but twenty-three hundred. The loss of the former exceeded five hundred. That of the latter was scarcely fifty, but among their mortally wounded was the brave Major Ring'-gold.

**32.** The battle of Resaca de la Palma took place on the following day, May 9th. The action was commenced on both sides by the artillery, but the Mexican guns, well aimed and rapidly discharged, were holding the Americans in check, when Capt. May was ordered to silence them. At the head of his dragoons he charged with great fury,

**29.** What order did Polk send to Taylor? Why was the order given? Give an account of the misfortune to Thornton.
**30.** Why did the Mexicans cross the Rio Grande? Taylor's movements.
**31, 32.** Battle of Palo Alto. Battle of Resaca de la Palma.

NOTE.—The United States, by the annexation of Texas, claimed the Rio Grande as their boundary, while the Mexicans maintained that the western limits of Texas never extended beyond the Nueces (*noo-ā'-cess*); consequently, when Taylor crossed the latter river into the disputed territory, the advance was treated by the Mexicans as the actual commencement of hostilities.

Digitized by Google




**Captain May taking the Mexican Battery.**

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

killed or dispersed the gunners, and captured Gen. La Vega (*lah vā'-gah*). (Read Note 4, end of Section.)

**33.** During the most of Taylor's absence from the fort on the Rio Grande, a period of nearly eight days, it had been subjected to a bombardment from the enemy's batteries at Matamoras. The garrison made a successful defence, though their heroic commander, Major Brown, was mortally wounded by the bursting of a shell.

**34.** On the 18th of May, Taylor took possession of Matamoras, and in August he marched to attack Monterey (*mon-tā-rā'*), a city strong in its natural defences, and then garrisoned by ten thousand troops under Gen. Ampudia (*am-poo'-dē-ah*). After a series of assaults, in which Generals Worth and Quitman rendered brilliant service, Monterey capitulated on the 24th of September, and Taylor agreed to an armistice. (Topic 216, Ap., p. 78.)

**35.** Having received orders from Washington directing him to renew offensive operations, Taylor sent a division of his army, under Gen. Worth, to Saltillo (*sahl-teel'-yō*). Here Worth was joined by Gen. Wool, who, with an army of three thousand men, had marched from San An-to'-ni-o, designing to penetrate Chihuahua (*che-wah'-wah*), but, after crossing the Rio Grande, had been ordered to abandon the design. In November, Commodore Conner, commanding the American fleet in the Gulf of Mexico, captured Tampico (*tam-pe'-ko*).

**36.** In an expedition which set out from Leavenworth, Gen. Kearny (*kar'-ne*)* entered Santa Fe and gained possession of the whole of New Mexico without opposition. After organizing a government, he left the main body of

---

**33.** What, meanwhile, took place at Fort Brown?

**34.** What city did Taylor then take possession of? Against what city did he afterward march? Give an account of his success at Monterey.

**35.** By whom was Saltillo occupied? What march had Wool performed? What did Wool do after his march? What can you say of the capture of Tampico?

**36.** Give an account of Kearny's successes. * Stephen W. Kearny.



Digitized by Google

his army under Col. Don'-i-phan, and crossed the continent to California.

**37.** With less than a thousand men, Doniphan starting from Santa Fe, marched more than a thousand miles, and arrived at Saltillo. During the march he fought two battles, and was victorious in both. The first was at Bracito (*brah-sē'-tō*), December 25th; and the second was at the Sacramento (*sak-rah-men'-to*), February 28th, 1847.

**38.** Before the breaking out of the war, Captain Fremont' was sent to make western explorations. After suffering great hardships, he made his way into California, then a department of Mexico. Learning that Gen. Cas'-tro, the governor of the province, was mustering a force to come against him, he took a position on a mountain peak, thirty miles east of Monterey, where, in March, 1846, he built a fort and hoisted the American flag. But the governor made threats instead of attacks.

**39.** Taking a northern route, Fremont passed through the valley of the Sacramento, but was overtaken by an order from Washington, directing him to protect the interests of the United States in California. Retracing his steps, he found Castro already marching against the American settlements on the Sacramento. The settlers flocked to his standard with such alacrity, that he soon found himself able to confront the Mexicans, whom he defeated in several skirmishes, and finally compelled to retreat toward the southern part of the province.

**40.** On the 5th of July, 1846, California was declared to be independent. A few days later, Commodore Slote,

**37.** Give an account of Doniphan's successes.
**38.** On what expedition had Fremont been sent? Give an account of his first troubles in California.
**39.** Give an account of Fremont's successes in California.
**40.** What declaration was made by the American settlers in California? What did Commodore Slote do? What further is said in relation to Slote, Stockton, Fremont, and Kearny?

Digitized by Google

commanding the Pacific fleet, having received information that hostilities had commenced on the Rio Grande, took possession of Monterey. Toward the latter part of the month, Commodore Stockton superseded Slote in command; and, with Fremont's co-operation, in a few months gained possession of the whole of California. Kearny arrived and took part in the final battle, January 8th, 1847. (See App., p. 66, topic 55.)

**41.** EVENTS OF 1847.—It having been decided by the authorities in Washington, that, in order to "conquer a peace," the Mexican capital would have to be menaced, Gen. Scott was sent to march through Mexico against the capital. This plan not only deprived Taylor of a large portion of his best troops, but it gave to Scott the chief command of the American forces, he being the senior officer.

**42.** Taylor's last engagement in Mexico was the battle of Buena Vista (*bwā'-nah vees'-tah*), fought on the 23d of Feb., 1847. His force of less than five thousand men was attacked by one nearly four times as large, under Gen. Santa Anna; but, after a contest which lasted from morning till night, the Mexicans were driven in disorder from the field.

**43.** On the 9th of March, Scott landed his army of twelve thousand men near Vera Cruz, and, on the 22d, aided by the fleet, he opened so destructive a fire upon the city and the fortress of San Juan de Ulloa (*san whahn dā ool-yo'-ah*), that, on the 27th, both places were compelled to surrender.

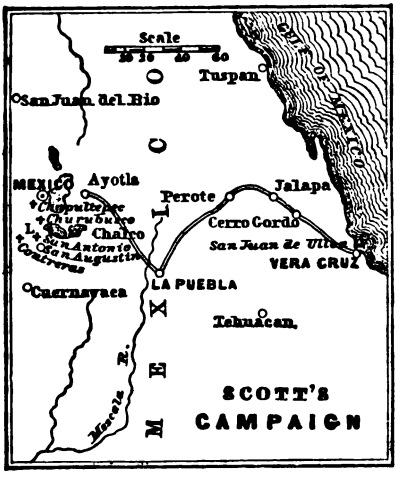
**44.** The march toward the interior was commenced on the 8th of April, but, at the mountain pass of Cerro Gordo (*sār'-rō gor'-dō*), Scott found Santa Anna prepared to resist

---

41. What plan of action was decided upon in Washington? How did this affect Taylor?
42. Give an account of the battle of Buena Vista.
43. Give an account of Scott's success at Vera Cruz.

Digitized by Google

his advance. On the morning of the 18th, a daring assault was made upon the works of the enemy, and, before noon, the whole were in possession of the Americans. Besides losing their artillery, the Mexicans had one thousand of their number killed or wounded.




**45.** On the next day the Americans entered Jalapa (*hah-lah'-pah*); further on they took, without opposition, the strong castle of Perote (*pā-rō'-tā*); and, on the 15th of May, they occupied the ancient and populous city of Puebla (*poo-ā'-blah*). Here they halted nearly three months for re-enforcements, and then resumed their march, reaching Ayotla (*ah-yot'-lah*), a town fifteen miles from the city of Mexico.

**46.** Finding that the direct route thence was strongly fortified, and anxious to spare the lives of his men, Scott turned southward, and encamped at San Augustin (*san aw-gus-teen'*), about ten miles from the capital. The approaches to the city of Mexico thence were guarded by

---

MAP QUESTIONS.—How is Vera Cruz situated? What fort protects the city? On the national road from Vera Cruz to Mexico, what towns do you pass through? In what direction is the city of Mexico from San Augustin? From San Antonio? From Contreras? From Churubusco? From Chapultepec?

44. Give an account of Scott's march to and success at Cerro Gordo.

45. Give an account of Scott's success from Cerro Gordo to Ayotla.

46. What route did Scott take from Ayotla? Why did he change his route? Where did he encamp? How, thence, were the approaches to the city of Mexico guarded?

Digitized by Google

batteries at Contreras (*con-trā'-ras*) and San Antonio, and by the strong forts of Churubusco (*choo-roo-boos'-ko*) and Chapultepec (*chah-pool-tā-pek'*).

**47.** At sunrise, on the 20th of August, the Americans attacked Contreras, and, in less than twenty minutes, carried the batteries. They were also successful at San Antonio. On the same day Churubusco was attacked: the defence was obstinate, and the conflict bloody, but, at length, the Mexicans were driven from the fort and compelled to flee.

**48.** At the request of Santa Anna, an armistice was granted, during which Scott endeavored to bring about a peace; but finding that the Mexican commander was violating the truce by strengthening his defences, he ordered Gen. Worth to storm the Molino del Rey (*mō-lē'-nō del rā*), an outer defence of Chapultepec. The attack was made on the 8th of September, and, although the Mexicans defended themselves desperately, inflicting a loss of six hundred upon their assailants, they were driven from their position.

**49.** Chapultepec itself, a strongly fortified castle, situated on a lofty hill, was yet to be taken before the capital could be reached. Batteries were erected to bear upon it: from these a fire was opened which made breaches through the stone wall defences, and, on the 13th of September, the place was carried by assault. During the night Santa Anna and his army fled from the capital, and, on the following morning, September 14th, Scott made a triumphant entry into it. (Read Note 5, end of Section.)

**50.** The Mexicans, taking advantage of the weakness of the garrison which Scott had left at Puebla, laid siege

47. What three successes did the Americans have in one day?
48. What request did Santa Anna make? How did Scott endeavor to improve the armistice? Why did he order Worth to make an attack? Give an account of Worth's success.
49. Give an account of the success against Chapultepec. What were the immediate consequences of the victory?

Digitized by Google

to the place; and Santa Anna, after his flight from the capital, joined the besiegers. Learning, however, that recruits were on their march to re-enforce Scott, he attacked them, but, as usual, met with defeat, and the siege of Puebla was raised. (App., p. 73, topic 156.)

**51.** On the 2d of February, 1848, a treaty of peace was signed, by which all the territory north of the Rio Grande, together with the whole of New Mexico and California, was relinquished to the United States. On the part of the United States, it was agreed that $15,000,000 should be paid for the territory acquired, and that debts due from Mexico to American citizens, amounting to $3,000,000, should be assumed. Peace was proclaimed by President Polk, on the 4th of July, 1848.*

**52.** TAYLOR'S AND FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATIONS.—Polk's successor in the presidency was Gen. Zachary Taylor, the hero who had achieved such brilliant victories in the war with Mexico. His inauguration took place on the 5th of March, 1849, the 4th being Sunday.

**53.** During the early part of 1848, gold began to be found in California in large quantities. The news at once spread with wonderful rapidity, and thousands of emigrants from all parts of the world rushed thither. So rapidly did the territory become populated, that in the fall of 1849, there was a sufficient number of settlers there to constitute a state; and an application for admission into the Union was consequently made. (P. 193, ¶ 13.)

**54.** As the constitution which California had adopted

**50.** What took place at Puebla? Of Santa Anna's last defeat.

**51.** How was the war brought to a close? What territory did the United States acquire? What did the United States agree to do in return? What States were added to the Union during Polk's administration? *Ans.* Texas, Iowa, and Wisconsin.

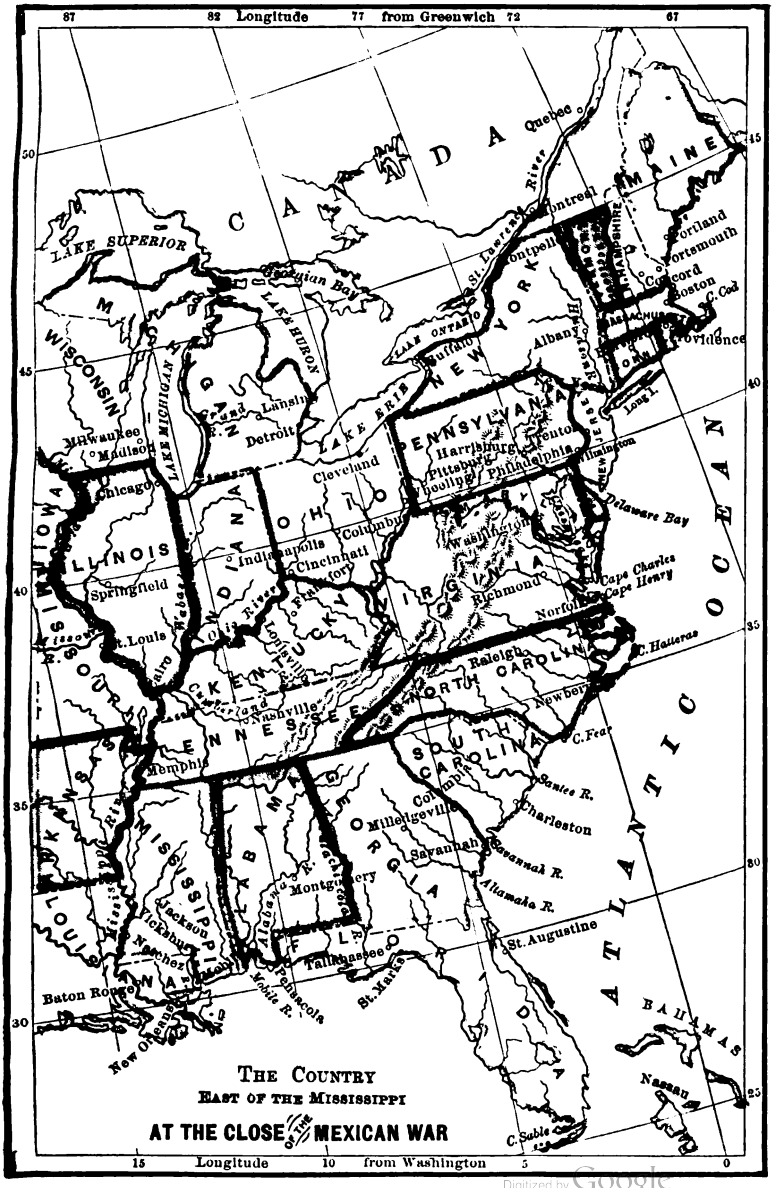
**52.** Who, next after Polk, was president? When was he inaugurated?

**53.** What excitement, with regard to California, soon broke out? What is said of the growth of California? What application to Congress was made by the Californians?

* The treaty was made by commissioners who met at Guadaloupe Hidalgo (*gwah-dah-loo'-pā he-dahl'-go*), a small town about four miles from the City of Mexico; but the boundary between the two countries soon became a subject of dispute, which was not settled till 1853, when the United States purchased the

Digitized by Google

# Progressive Map, No. 3.




THE COUNTRY
EAST OF THE MISSISSIPPI
AT THE CLOSE OF THE MEXICAN WAR

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

excluded slavery from her territory, a violent dispute commenced in Congress, and throughout the United States, which continued several months, the friends of the slave-power opposing the admission of California as a free state. Before the dispute was settled, Gen. Taylor died, after an administration of only one year, four months, and four days; and the vice-president, Millard Fillmore, thereupon, became president. (See App., p. 74, topic 163.)

**55.** Other questions, growing out of the subject of slavery, having been introduced into Congress, five acts were passed in conformity with the spirit of a compromise offered by Henry Clay. These provided for the admission of California as a free state; the organization of territorial governments for New Mexico and Utah (*yoo'-tah*), without mention of slavery; the establishment of the boundary of Texas; the abolition of the slave-trade in the District of Columbia; and the surrender to their masters of slaves escaping to free states—this last bill being known as the "Fugitive Slave Law." (App., p. 64, topic 32.)

**56.** PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION.—During the administration of Franklin Pierce, who succeeded to the presidency on the 4th of March, 1853, the controversy between the slaveholding and non-slaveholding sections of the Union was renewed, the one being in favor of and the other opposed to the extension of slavery into the territories of the United States.

**57.** This fresh outbreak had its origin mainly with Congress, in the introduction there of what is known as the "Kansas-Nebraska Bill." By the "Missouri Compromise

**54.** What dispute of national importance soon occurred? What loss did the nation sustain at that time? Who, then, became president?

**55.** Give a full account of what was done before California gained admission to the Union? Now, repeat the provisions of the five acts. By what name was Mr. Clay's bill known? *Ans.* The Omnibus Bill.

**56.** Who succeeded Fillmore in the presidency? When was Pierce inaugurated? How did the slavery question in another shape appear?

**57.** Origin of the new outbreak? Give the history of the trouble.

*Mesilla Valley*, or, as it is called, the *Gadsden Purchase*, for $10,000,000, General Gadsden having been the agent of the United State. Government in the negotiation.

Digitized by Google

Bill," passed in 1820, slavery was prohibited in all the territory bought of France, north of the southern boundary of Missouri—Missouri excepted. By the "Kansas-Nebraska Bill," which Congress passed in 1854, this prohibition was repealed, and the two territories of Kansas and Nebraska were duly organized. (See p. 136, ¶ 6.)

**58.** No sooner had the bill passed than emigrants from both sections of the Union began to pour into Kansas, those from the North being determined to make it a free state, while those from the South were equally resolved the other way; and with such undue zeal was the strife carried on, that frequent collisions took place, in which blood was sometimes shed.

**59.** As the time for the next presidential election approached, three candidates were put in nomination. James Buchanan was the choice of the Democratic party; Millard Fillmore, of the American; and John C. Fremont, of the organization opposed to the extension of slavery, known as the Republican party. After an exciting canvass, during which the repeal of the "Compromise of 1820," the troubles in Kansas, and the "Fugitive Slave Law," entered largely into the subjects of discussion, Buchanan was elected. (See p. 163, ¶ 23.)

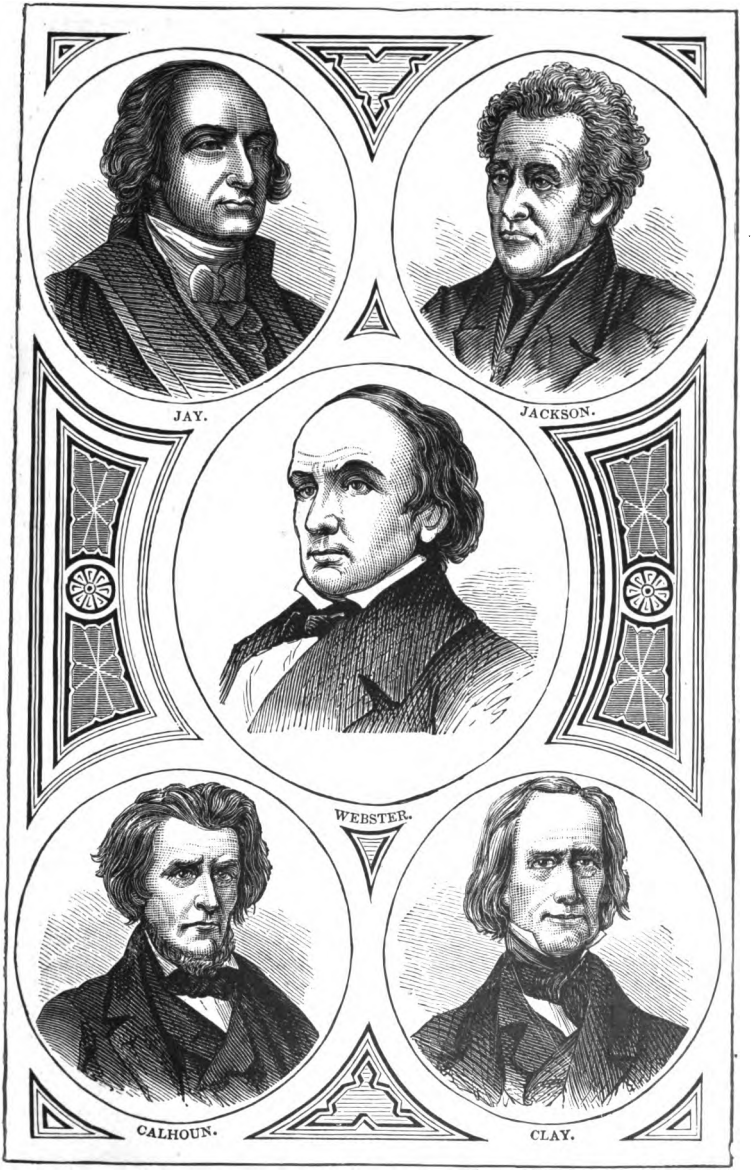
## CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

1817. James Monroe was inaugurated president..... March 4.
Mississippi was admitted into the Union..... Dec. 10.
The Seminoles commenced depredations.
1818. Jackson went against the Seminoles..... March.
Illinois was admitted into the Union..... Dec. 3.
1819. Alabama was admitted into the Union..... Dec. 14.
1820. Maine was admitted into the Union..... March 15.

58. Give an account of the strife that followed.
59. What candidates were nominated to succeed Pierce? Give an account of the canvass. What was the result of the election?

For an account of the *Rush to California for Gold*, read Note 6, end of Section.

Digitized by Google




Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

1820. The "Missouri Compromise Bill" was passed..... March 3.
1821. Spain surrendered Florida to the United States.....July 1.
Missouri was admitted into the Union..... Aug. 20.
1824. Lafayette visited the United States..... Aug. 15.
1825. John Quincy Adams was inaugurated president... March 4.
1826. John Adams and Thomas Jefferson died..... July 4.
1829. Andrew Jackson was inaugurated president.....March 4.
1832. The Black Hawk War occurred.
South Carolina declared the doctrine of Nullification. Nov. 24.
1835. The war with the Seminoles commenced:..... Dec. 28.
Seminoles massacred Thompson's and Dade's party..Dec. 28.
1836. Arkansas was admitted into the Union..... June 15.
1837. Michigan was admitted into the Union..... Jan. 26.
Martin Van Buren was inaugurated president..... March 4.
Taylor defeated the Indians at Okeechobee..... Dec. 25.
1841. William Henry Harrison was inaugurated president. March 4.
The death of President Harrison occurred..... April 4.
John Tyler was inaugurated president..... April 6.
1842. The war with the Seminoles terminated.
The Dorr Rebellion in Rhode Island occurred.
1845. Tyler signed the bill for the annexation of Texas...March 1.
Florida was admitted into the Union..... March 3.
James K. Polk was inaugurated president..... March 4.
Texas was admitted into the Union..... Dec. 29.
1846. The Mexicans captured Thornton's party..... April 26.
The Mexicans bombarded Fort Brown..... May.
Taylor defeated the Mexicans at Palo Alto..... May 8.
Taylor defeated the Mexicans at Resaca de la Palma..May 9.
Congress declared "war existed by the act of Mexico".May 11.
Taylor crossed the Rio Grande and took Matamoras. May 18.
Taylor defeated the Mexicans at Monterey..... Sept. 24.
Doniphan defeated the Mexicans at Bracito..... Dec. 25.
Iowa was admitted into the Union..... ... Dec. 28.
1847 Taylor defeated the Mexicans at Buena Vista..... Feb. 23.
Doniphan defeated the Mexicans at Sacramento.... Feb. 28.
The Mexicans surrendered Vera Cruz to Scott.... March 27.
Scott defeated the Mexicans at Cerro Gordo..... April 18.
Scott took Contreras and Churubusco..... Aug. 20.
The Americans were victorious at Molino Del Rey.. Sept. 8.
The Americans were victorious at Chapultepec.... Sept. 13.
Scott entered the city of Mexico..... Sept. 14.



Digitized by Google

1848. A treaty was made between the U. S. and Mexico... Feb. 2.
Wisconsin was admitted into the Union..... May 29.
1849. Zachary Taylor was inaugurated president..... March 5.
1850. The death of President Taylor occurred..... July 9.
Millard Fillmore was inaugurated president..... July 10.
California was admitted into the Union..... Sept. 9.
1853. Franklin Pierce was inaugurated president..... March 4.
1854. Congress passed the Kansas-Nebraska Bill..... May 31

## PRINCIPAL BATTLES OF THE WAR WITH MEXICO.

(The Americans were successful in every battle.)

| DATES. | BATTLES. | COMMANDERS. | | FORCES ENGAGED. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | American. | Mexican. | Amer'n | Mex'n |
| 1846. | | | | | |
| May 8, | Palo Alto..... | Taylor .... | Arista..... | 2,300 | 6,000 |
| May 9, | Resaca de la Palma | Taylor .... | Arista..... | 2,200 | 5,000 |
| Sept. 24, | Monterey..... | Taylor .... | Ampudia..... | 6,600 | 10,000 |
| Dec. 25, | Bracito..... | Doniphan.. | De Leon..... | 500 | 1,200 |
| 1847. | | | | | |
| Feb. 23, | Buena Vista..... | Taylor .... | Santa Anna.... | 4,700 | 17,000 |
| Feb. 28. | Sacramento ..... | Doniphan.. | Trias..... | 900 | 4,000 |
| March 27, | Vera Cruz..... | Scott..... | Morales..... | 12,000 | 6,000 |
| April 18, | Cerro Gordo..... | Scott..... | Santa Anna.... | 8,500 | 12,000 |
| Aug. 20, | Contreras..... | Scott..... | Valencia ..... | 4,000 | 7,000 |
| | Churubusco..... | Scott..... | Santa Anna.... | 8,000 | 25,000 |
| Sept. 8, | Molino del Rey... | Worth..... | Alvarez..... | 3,500 | 14,000 |
| Sept. 13, | Chapultepec..... | Scott..... | Bravo..... | 7,200 | 25,000 |
| Oct. 9, | Huamantla..... | Lane .... . | Santa Anna.... | 500 | 1,000 |

## REVIEW QUESTIONS.


PAGE

1. Name three important events of 1817..... 152
2. What events happened at Pensacola?.....127, 128, 135
3. Give the history of Florida..... 11, 12, 13, 14, 63, 98, 127, 128, 135, 153
4. What history can you give of the State of Mississippi?.....135, 136
5. Give the early history of Illinois..... 136
6. Give the early history of Alabama..... 136
7. Give the early history of Maine.....27, 33, 136
8. State what you can of the early history of Missouri.....110, 136
9. Give the particulars in relation to the admission of Missouri ..... 136
10. State all you can in relation to the "Monroe Doctrine"..... 136
11. Give an account of Lafayette .....78, 80, 96, 97, 137
12. How was John Quincy Adams elected president?..... 137
13. What presidents have been elected by the House?.....109, 137


Digitized by Google

PAGE
14. Which three ex-presidents died on the 4th of July?....(See note also.) 137
15. Name ten important events from 1818 to 1826.....152, 153
16. What can you state of the tariff law of 1828?..... 137
17. Which of the presidents served each two terms? (See Table, end of history.)
18. Give the history of the United States Banks.....106, 130, 138
19. Give an account of the Black Hawk War..... 138
20. Give the history of the "South Carolina Nullification".....137, 138, 139
21. Give the history of the troubles with the Seminoles.....135, 139, 140
22. Name seven events of Jackson's administration..... ..... 138, 153
23. Write an account of Jackson .....121, 128, 135, 138, 139, 140
24. Name three events that occurred in Van Buren's term..... 140
25. Give an account of the battle of Okeechobee..... 140
26. What distress was produced in monetary affairs?..... 140
27. What account can you give of the Canadian Rebellion?..... 140
28. Give an account of Harrison .....114, 118, 119, 120, 141
29. Name in order the events from 1836 to 1845..... ..... 153
30. Give the history of Rhode Island ..... ..31, 33, 68, 74, 79, 86, 87, 141
31. Name four important events of 1845 ..... ..... 153
32. What dispute was there in relation to Texas?..... 141
33. What was the cause of the war with Mexico?..... 143
34. Name, in order, nine important events of 1846..... 153
35. Give the history of Fort Brown.....143, 144, 145
36. Give a full account of the battle of Palo Alto ..... ...144, 154
37. Give an account of the battle of Resaca de la Palma.....144, 145, 154
38. What city did Taylor soon after get possession of?..... 145
39. What were Taylor's other successes during 1846?..... 145
40. What did General Wool accomplish during the war?..... 145
41. What service did Com. Conner render during the war?.....145, 147
42. What service did General Kearny render during the war?.....145, 147
43. Give a full account of Doniphan's expedition..... 145, 146, 154
44. Give an account of Fremont's movements and successes .....146, 147
45. What did Com. Slote accomplish?..... .....146, 147
46. What plan "to conquer a peace" was decided upon?..... 147
47. Give an account of Taylor's successes during 1847 .....147, 154
48. Of Scott's success against Vera Cruz and its fortress ..... 147
49. Of his march to and success at Cerro Gordo.....147, 148
50. Of his march from Cerro Gordo to Ayotla ..... 148
51. Of his march from Ayotla to San Augustin..... 148
52. Of his march and successes during August, 1847 .....148, 149
53. What can you state of the armistice granted by Scott? ..... 149
54. Give an account of the conflict at the Molino del Rey..... 149
55. Of further operations and Scott's final success..... 149
56. Give an account of the siege of Puebla ..... ..149, 150
57. What were the closing acts of the war? ..... 150
58. Name eight important events of 1847..... 153
59. Write an account of General Taylor .....140, 143, 144, 145-150
60. Give the early history of California .....150, 151
61. Give the history of the "Kansas-Nebraska Bill" .....151, 152
62. State what you can of Kansas..... 110, 151, 152, 157
63. Name eight events that occurred from 1848 to 1854 ..... 154

Digitized by Google

**1. The Execution of Arbuthnot and Ambrister** (p. 135, ¶ 2). —"Such was the tragedy enacted at St. Mark's, in the year of our Lord, 1818." The executions produced intense indignation in England, where they "subsequently became the subject of parliamentary inquiry. Commentaries that might have been anticipated were made in debate. Out of doors, excitement seemed to rise higher and higher. Stocks experienced a slight fall, under an apprehension of war with the United States. The newspapers kept up their fire. Little acquainted with the true character of the transaction, they gave vent to angry declamation; they fiercely denounced the government of the United States; and tyrant, ruffian, murderer, were among the epithets applied to the commanding general. Jackson was exhibited in placards through the streets of London. The journals, without any distinction of party, swelled the general chorus. But in the midst of this din of passion the ministry stood firm. At a later day of my mission, Lord Castlereagh said to me that a war might have been produced on this occasion, '*if the ministry had but held up a finger.*' On so slender a thread do public affairs sometimes hang!"—*Rush's Residence at the Court of London.*

**2. John Quincy Adams** (p. 137).—"Though Mr. Adams did not live by many years as long as his father, yet he was a man of remarkably robust frame and excellent constitution. A lady, when he was first made President, complained to a member of Congress, that she could not see the chief magistrate. 'Madam,' said he, 'you have only to go down to the Potomac bridge any morning about day-light, and you may see him swimming in the river.' After Mr. Adams was seventy years of age, that continued to be his habit; and, it was said, he often swam across the Potomac where it is more than a mile wide." Shortly after the close of his presidential term, he was elected to Congress from his native State (Massachusetts), and held the position, through repeated elections, till his death. "On the 21st of February, 1848, while in attendance as a member of the House of Representatives, he underwent his death-stroke in attempting to give utterance to an emotion. He sunk forward in his seat senseless, in a fit of mortal paralysis. A crowd of members rushed to his help, and he was lifted up and borne off through the middle aisle of the House, and taken into the Speaker's room. Almost inanimate, he is said to have uttered the few words, 'This is the last of earth.' If he could have expired when, as well as where, he wished, it would have been the next day, the 22d of February, the anniversary of Washington's birthday, instead of living till the evening of the 23d."—*Ingersoll's Second War with Great Britain.*

**3. Lafayette, the Guest of the Nation** (p. 137, ¶ 8).—"His reception at New York was sublime and brilliant in the extreme. From New York he proceeded on a tour throughout the United States. Everywhere he was received and honored as '*the Nation's Guest.*' For more than a year his journey was a complete pageant. The people appeared delirious with joy, and with anxiety to hail him, grasp him by the hand, and shower attentions and honors upon him. The gratitude and love of all persons, of every age, sex, and condition, seemed hardly to be restrained within bounds of propriety. As he passed through the country, every city, village, and hamlet poured out its inhabitants *en masse* to meet him. Celebrations, processions, dinners, illuminations, bon-fires, parties, balls, serenades, and rejoicings of every description, attended his way, from the moment he set foot on the American soil, until his embarkation to return to his native France. In June, 1825, he visited Boston; and, on the 17th day of that month, it being the anniversary of the battle of Bunker Hill, he participated in the ceremony of laying the corner-stone of the monument of that event, on Bunker (Breed's) Hill. Daniel Webster was the orator of the day. . . . . A new frigate, the Brandywine, named in honor of the gallant exploits of Lafayette at

Digitized by Google

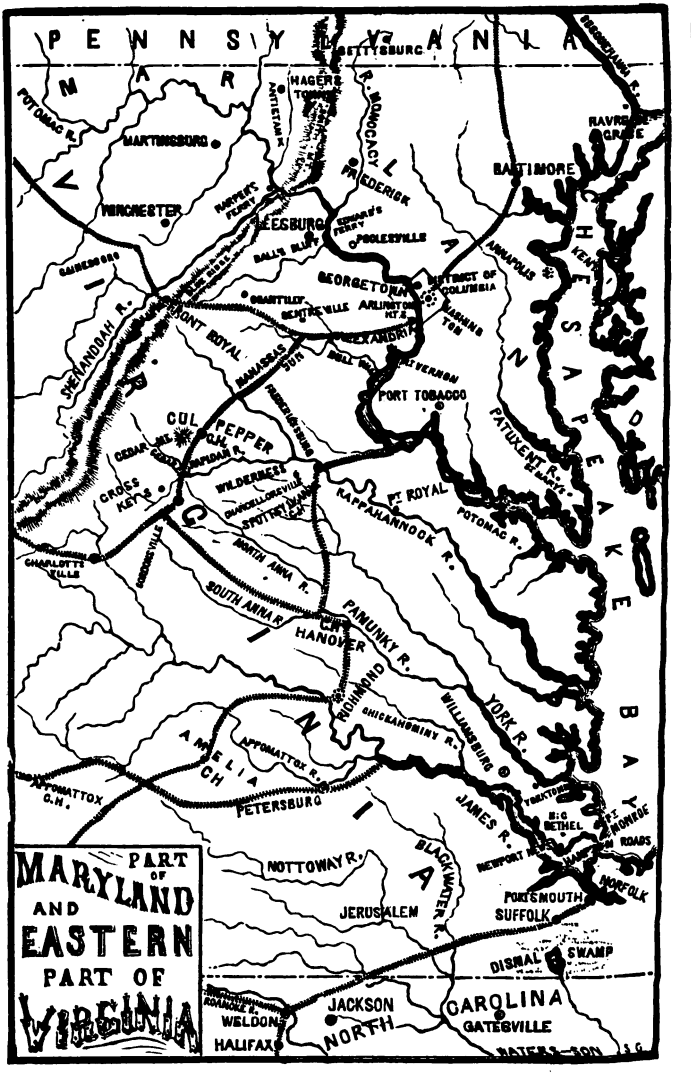
the battle of Brandywine, was provided by Congress to convey him to France. It was deemed appropriate that he should take final leave of the nation at the seat of Government in Washington. Multitudes of citizens and strangers assembled in the President's house, where an address was made by the President, to which Lafayette made a fitting and feeling response. As the last sentence of the farewell was pronounced, Lafayette advanced and took President Adams in his arms, while tears poured down his venerable cheeks."—*W. H. Seward's Life of J. Q. Adams.*

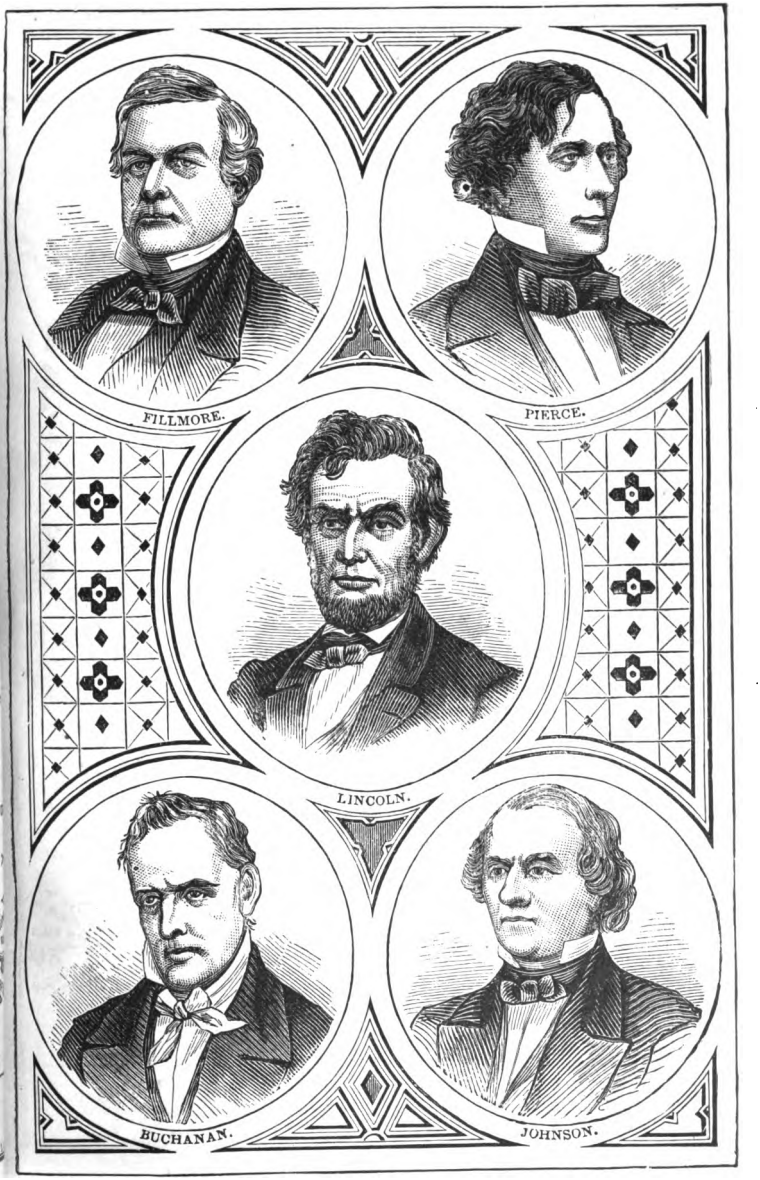
**4. The Mexican Battery Captured by Captain May** (p. 144, ¶ 32).—"The battle had lasted some two hours with great fury on both sides, and many heroic deeds had been done, when it became evident that victory could not be completed by the Americans without capturing the enemy's batteries. General Taylor sent for Captain May, and told him he must take that battery with his squadron of dragoons, if he lost every man. May instantly placed himself at the head of his men, and setting off at full speed, with cheers and shouts, dashed into the defile, where he was greeted with a discharge of grape and bullets which nearly annihilated his first and second platoons; but he was seen, unhurt, darting like lightning through this murderous hail-storm, and in a second he and his men drove away or cut to pieces the artillerists. The speed of his horses was so great, however, that they passed over the battery, and were halted in its rear. There, turning, he charged back, and was just in time to rescue a Mexican general officer, who would not leave his guns, and was parrying the strokes of one of the dragoons. The officer handed his sword to May, announced himself as General La Vega, and gave his parole."—*Frost's History of America.*

**5. Scott's March through Mexico** (p. 147-150).—"There are but two passages in modern history which present parallels to the march of Scott from Vera Cruz to the city of Mexico. These are the first conquest of Mexico by Cortez, and the other is the campaign of Napoleon in Egypt. Each of these has a strong resemblance to the second conquest of Mexico by Scott. Is there one who delights in the sound of glorious victory, and will not say that Scott's victories were complete, and his actions honorable? Is there one whose heart is pained with every sound of war, and will not say that he performed the painful duties of war with the strictest regard to the claims of humanity, and with the utmost solicitude for the return of peace?"—*Mansfield's Life of Scott.*

**6. The Rush for Gold** (p. 150, ¶ 53).—"An agent of the United States Government, who visited California about three months after the first discovery of gold there, reported that, 'San Francisco was deserted of nearly all its male inhabitants, and even females were very scarce. The mills in the vicinity were idle, the fields were open to cattle, the houses were vacant, and the farms going to waste. At Sutter's, where the discovery was made, there was much life and bustle. Flour was selling at thirty-six dollars a barrel (it sold afterwards at a hundred), and Captain Sutter was carefully gathering his crop of wheat, estimated at forty thousand bushels. The Captain had two mechanics in his employ, to each of whom he gave ten dollars a day. A two-story house, within the fort, was rented as a hotel at five hundred dollars a month. At a place about twenty-five miles up the American fork of the Sacramento river, there was a mining camp in full operation. Canvas tents and arbors of bushes covered the hill-side. There was a store, and several shanties were used as boarding-houses. The sun poured down its rays with intense heat upon two hundred miners working for gold, some using tin pans, some baskets, and some rude cradles.'"—*Tuthill's History of California.*

Digitized by Google


PENNSYLVANIA
MARYLAND
VIRGINIA
GETTYSBURG
HAGERS TOWN
ANTIETAM R.
POTOMAC R.
MARTINSBURG
WINCHESTER
HARPER'S FERRY
LEESBURG
EDWARD'S FERRY
POOLESVILLE
BALLS BLUFF
FREDERICK
MONOCACY R.
BALTIMORE
HAVRE DE GRACE
ANNAPOLIS
GEORGETOWN
DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA
WASHINGTON
ARLINGTON HTS.
ALEXANDRIA
MANASSAS GAP R.
MANASSAS JUNC.
FREDERICKSBURG
PORT TOBACCO
PATUXENT R.
CHESAPEAKE BAY
POTOMAC R.
RAPPAHANNOCK R.
FT. ROYAL
CULPEPPER C.H.
ORANGE C.H.
RAPIDAN R.
RAPIDAN STA.
CEDAR MT.
CROSS KEYS
WILDERNESS
CHANCELLORSVILLE
SPOTTSYLVANIA C.H.
CHARLOTTESVILLE
GORDONSVILLE
NORTH ANNA R.
SOUTH ANNA R.
HANOVER C.H.
PAMUNKY R.
RICHMOND
CHICKAHOMINY R.
WILLIAMSBURG
YORK R.
AMELIA C.H.
APPOMATTOX R.
APPOMATTOX C.H.
PETERSBURG
JAMES R.
YORKTOWN
FT. MONROE
BIG BETHEL
NEWPORT NEWS
HAMPTON ROADS
NOTTOWAY R.
BLACKWATER R.
PORTSMOUTH
NORFOLK
SUFFOLK
JERUSALEM
DISMAL SWAMP
ROANOKE R.
WELDON
HALIFAX
JACKSON
NORTH CAROLINA
GATESVILLE
PART OF MARYLAND AND EASTERN PART OF VIRGINIA




Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

## SECTION VIII.

*From the beginning of Buchanan's Administration in* 1857, *to the present time.*

1. THE GREAT CIVIL WAR.—BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION.—The inauguration of Buchanan took place on the 4th of March, 1857. During his administration of four years, three states—all free—were added to the Union. Minnesota was admitted in 1858; Oregon, in 1859; and Kansas, in 1861. (Note, p. 157, p. 192, and App., p. 72.)

2. The slavery question continued to be the prominent topic of discussion; and an event, which occurred in the fall of 1859, and which created intense excitement throughout the country, not only gave increased impulse to the discussion, but greatly aggravated the feeling then prevailing at the South against the North. This was "John Brown's Raid." (Read topic 217, App., p. 78.)

3. Brown's object was the liberation of slaves. With that in view, he and twenty-one associates seized the arsenal at Harper's Ferry, for the purpose of making it a rendezvous; but the movement was a total failure. Those engaged in it were overpowered by state and national troops, thirteen of their number were killed, two escaped, and the rest, including Brown, were tried and hung.

4. As Buchanan's term of office drew toward its close,

1. When was Buchanan inaugurated? What states were added to the Union?
2. What subject continued to be generally discussed?
2, 3. Give an account of John Brown's raid.
4. What is said of the presidential canvass of 1860? What was the result?

NOTE.—"How far Louisiana extended westward when it was ceded by France to Spain, history offers no means of determining. * * * In the absence of all light on the subject from history, we are forced to regard the boundaries indicated by nature, namely, the highlands separating the waters of the Mississippi from those flowing into the Pacific or the Californian Gulf, as the true western boundaries of the Louisiana ceded to the United States by France in 1803."—*Greenhow's History of Oregon and California.*

During the negotiations for the cession of Florida, in 1818, "Don Onis, the Spanish Minister at Washington, offered to agree to the Sabine and a due north line to the Missouri, and the course of that river to its head. The American claim to extend to the Pacific he pronounced a novelty now heard of for the first time."—*Hildreth's U. S.*

Digitized by Google

no less than four candidates were nominated to succeed him. After an exciting canvass, in which the slavery question was the all-absorbing one, the election resulted in favor of Abraham Lincoln, the candidate of the Republican party.

5. When it became known that the party opposed to the further extension of slavery had been successful, and that Lincoln would be the next president, public meetings were held in South Carolina to bring about a secession of that state from the Union; and, on the 20th of December, 1860, an ordinance of secession was passed by a state convention held in Charleston. (p. 139, ¶ 16.)

6. Six days after, Major Anderson, commanding at Fort Moultrie, withdrew his force of but eighty men from that fort, and established himself at Fort Sumter, a place of greater security. This being regarded by the South Carolinians as a hostile act, they at once seized the custom-house at Charleston, as well as other property belonging to the general government, and began to make preparations to drive Anderson from his new position.

7. EVENTS OF 1861.—The steamer, Star of the West, sent from New York with supplies and re-enforcements for Fort Sumter, arrived off Charleston, January 10th, 1861; but, being fired upon by batteries which had been erected and manned by authority of South Carolina, she was compelled to put back. During this month, January, five of the slave states,—Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, and Louisiana,—following the lead of South Carolina, passed secession ordinances; and on the 1st of February, Texas did the same.

5. What immediate effect did the election have in South Carolina? What action was taken by a state convention there?

6. What movement did Major Anderson make? What were the immediate consequences of the movement? Where is Fort Moultrie? (Map, p. 78.) Fort Sumter?

7. What plan for the relief of Fort Sumter did the Confederates frustrate? Which states passed secession ordinances in January, 1861? Which state followed next?

Digitized by Google

8. On the 4th of February, a congress, composed of delegates from all these states, except Texas, met at Montgomery; and, four days after, organized a government by the adoption of a "Provisional Constitution," assuming the title of the "Confederate States of America." On the 9th, this congress elected Jefferson Davis "President of the Confederacy;" and, on the 18th, Texas being then represented, he was duly inaugurated.

9. Forts, arsenals, navy-yards, custom-houses, and other property belonging to the general government, within the boundaries of the Confederate states, were seized by state authority for the Confederacy. Fort Pickens, near Pensacola, which had been saved by Lieutenant Slemmer, with Fort Sumter, and the forts at the southern extremity of Florida, alone remained in the possession of the United States.

10. LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION.—In this distracted and sad condition were the affairs of the country when Lincoln, on the 4th of March, 1861, entered upon the office of president. His inauguration took place "amid a greater display of military force than had ever before been witnessed on such an occasion."

11. The president, in his inaugural address, announced that he had "no purpose to interfere with the institution of slavery" where it existed; further stating that, in his opinion, he had "no right to do so." But this assurance had no effect whatever upon the Southern leaders. Regarding their duty to the general government as secondary to the obligation they owed to their respective states,

---

8. State what took place at Montgomery, in February. How is Montgomery situated? (Map. p. 120.)

9. What is said of the seizure of forts, &c.? Of Lieutenant Slemmer? Where is Pensacola? (Map, p. 120.) Fort Pickens?

10. When was Lincoln inaugurated? What is said of the occasion?

11. What announcement did Lincoln make? What did he further state? What is said of the effect produced? How did the Southern leaders regard their duty? What military preparations did they make?

Digitized by Google

they organized an army, and ordered Gen. Beauregard (*bō'-rē-gard*) to reduce Fort Sumter.

**12.** Accordingly, on the morning of the 12th of April, the first shot was fired upon the fort. After a bombardment of thirty-four hours, the defence being but feeble in consequence of the smallness of the garrison and the poor supply of ammunition, Anderson was compelled to capitulate. On the following day, April 14th, he departed with his command, and sailed for New York.

**13.** The news of this event produced an almost uncontrollable excitement throughout the country; and the president's proclamation, issued on the 15th, calling for troops, was responded to at once by all the free states. A Massachusetts regiment, while on its way to defend the national capital, was attacked, April 19th, in the streets of Baltimore, by a mob of Southern sympathizers. Two of the soldiers were killed, and a number wounded.

**14.** Lincoln's proclamation was followed, two days after, by one from Davis, offering letters of marque and reprisal to all persons, who, in private armed vessels, would prey upon the commerce of the United States. This was followed, April 19th, by another proclamation from Lincoln, declaring the ports of the Confederate states in a state of blockade.

**15.** With the exception of Delaware, not one of the slave states arrayed itself promptly and decidedly on the side of the Union. Before June, Virginia, Arkansas, Tennessee, and North Carolina, passed secession ordinances. Virginians seized the armory at Harper's Ferry

12. Give an account of the bombardment of Fort Sumter.

13. What effect did the news produce? What call did President Lincoln make? How was the call responded to? Give an account of the attack upon the Massachusetts regiment. What event took place just eighty-six years before? (p. 69.)

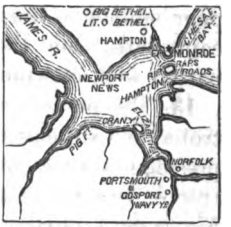
14. What proclamation did Davis put forth? By what action, on the part of Lincoln, was Davis's proclamation followed?

15. Which states besides those already named passed secession ordinances? What seizures did the Virginians make?

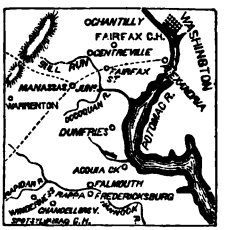
Digitized by Google

and the navy-yard at Norfolk, both places having been abandoned by the Union officers in charge after a large part of the property contained therein had been destroyed.

**16.** It can hardly be said that the national government made any offensive movement before the 24th of May. Then Gen. Scott, commanding the Union army, sent troops into Virginia; and Arlington Heights, opposite Washington, as well as the town of Alexandria, were occupied. Some days after, June 10th, a force, sent by Gen. Butler, commanding at Fortress Monroe, was severely repulsed in an attack upon the Confederate works at Big Bethel.




**17.** The Confederate army, to the number of about one hundred thousand men, occupied a line through Virginia, from Harper's Ferry to Norfolk; their strongest position being on the road from Washington to Richmond, at a place called Manassas Junction. Richmond was then the capital of the Southern Confederacy, the transfer from Montgomery having been decided upon in May.




**18.** About the middle of July, a large army, commanded by Gen. McDowell, marched to attack the Confederates, under

---

MAP QUESTIONS.—(Map. p. 156.) How is Baltimore situated? Norfolk? Harper's Ferry? Washington? Alexandria? Fortress Monroe? Big Bethel? Richmond? Where is Manassas Junction? Arlington Heights? Bull Run? Edward's Ferry? Cedar Mt.? Ball's Bluff?

**16.** What movements were made on the 24th of May? Give an account of the Battle of Big Bethel.

**17.** What line of defence did the Confederates occupy? What was Richmond then?

**18.** When did the battle of Centreville occur? How is Centreville situated? (Map. p. 156.) Give an account of the battle of Bull Run.

Digitized by Google

Beauregard, at Manassas Junction. On the 18th a conflict took place near Centreville. On the 21st occurred the battle of Bull Run, a desperate conflict, in which more than forty thousand men were engaged. At length the Confederates, being largely re-enforced, prevailed; and the Union troops, panic-stricken, fled in disorder toward Washington. The Union loss reached nearly three thousand men, while that of the Confederates did not much exceed half that number.

**19.** On the following day, July 22d, Gen. McClellan was called to take command of the forces around Washington, known as the Army of the Potomac. He had just closed with credit a campaign in West Virginia, during which the Confederates were routed at Philippi (*fi-lip'-pi*), Rich Mountain, and other places. Congress, which commenced an extra session on the 4th of July, appropriated five hundred million dollars for carrying on the war, and voted to raise five hundred thousand troops.

**20.** In the mean time efforts had been made by the Secessionists to take Missouri out of the Union. In this, however, they failed, mainly through the prompt action of Gen. Lyon, who captured their camp near St. Louis, defeated them at Booneville on the 17th of June, and thus frustrated the designs of the disloyal governor.

**21.** On the 5th of July a division of his troops, under Col. (afterward Gen.) Sigel (*se'-gel*), made a gallant fight at Carthage; but on the 10th of August, having been confronted by a vastly superior force, and fearing that a retrograde movement would be fatal to the cause, Lyon

---

**19.** To what position was McClellan called? What can you state of his previous successes? What was done by Congress?

MAP QUESTIONS.—(p. 165.) Where is St. Louis? Booneville? Carthage? Wilson's Creek? Springfield? Belmont? New Orleans? Cairo? Lexington?

**20.** What had been the aim of secessionists in Missouri? What successes did Gen. Lyon have at St. Louis? At Booneville?

**21.** What account can you give of the battle of Carthage? Of the battle of Wilson's Creek or Springfield?

Digitized by Google

made an unsuccessful attack upon the Confederate force at Wilson's Creek, near Springfield, and was killed.

**22.** In a little more than a month afterward, Col. Mulligan, commanding twenty-five hundred men at Lexington, Missouri, was attacked by a Confederate force at least five times as large, and, after a contest of four days, was compelled to surrender, September 20th.

**23.** Gen. Fremont, then in command of the Western Department, left St. Louis for Jefferson City, and thence marched against Price, who was retreating in a southerly direction. The pursuit was continued only as far as Springfield, when Fremont, in compliance with orders, turned the command over to Gen. Hunter, who held it until the arrival of Gen. Halleck. (See p. 146, ¶ 40.)

**24.** In October, Gen. Stone was in command of a large Union force on the Potomac, in Maryland. A division of this force, having crossed the river to Ball's Bluff to make a reconnoissance, was disastrously defeated, on the 21st, and its commander, Col. Baker, killed. In an attack upon the Confederate works at Belmont, Missouri, Nov. 7th, Gen. Grant was at first successful, but the enemy having been re-enforced, he retired to his boats.

**25.** Two coast expeditions—one to North Carolina, and the other to South Carolina—were completely successful. In the first, Com. Stringham (*string'-am*) and Gen. Butler, commanding a naval and military force, captured the Confederate forts at Hatteras Inlet. In the second, Com. Du-pont', with a fleet of about fifty vessels, captured the

---

**22.** Give an account of the battle of Lexington.

**23.** Who, at the time, was in the chief command of the Union forces at the West. Give an account of the pursuit made by Fremont. Who superseded Fremont in the command? Who succeeded Hunter?

**24.** Where was Gen. Stone in command? Give an account of the disaster at Ball's Bluff. By what name is the battle of Ball's Bluff also known? *Ans.* Edwards' Ferry. Give an account of the battle of Belmont?

**25.** Give an account of the expedition against the forts at Hatteras Inlet. Give an account of the expedition against the forts at Port Royal harbor. What change in commanders was made?

Digitized by Google

forts at Port Royal entrance. In the mean time, Gen. Scott, in consequence of physical infirmities, resigned the command of the army of the United States, and McClellan was appointed in his place. (App., p. 73, topic 156.)

**26.** On the sea an event occurred in November, which produced great excitement both in the United States and Great Britain. Capt. Wilkes (*wilks*), in command of the frigate San Jacinto (*san ja-sin'-to*), intercepted an English steamer, and took from her Messrs. Mason and Sli-dell', Confederate commissioners to Europe; but as the seizure was contrary to the rights of neutral vessels, and the British government resented the act, the two prisoners were given up.

**27.** This affair tended to make still less amicable the relations which, at the time, existed between the United States and England; for before the last of the States that passed secession ordinances had joined the Confederacy, Queen Victoria (May 13th) acknowledged the South as a belligerent power; and France, soon after, did the same.

**28.** The Confederates fitted out a number of privateers, one of the most successful being the steamer Sumter, Capt. Semmes (*semz*), which ran the blockade of New Orleans on the last day of June. She captured a number of vessels, and then, crossing the Atlantic, entered the bay of Gibraltar. Here she was found by a United States gunboat, and, being unable to escape, was sold. Her crew went to England, where a faster steamer was in process of construction. This vessel the Confederates obtained, and named the Alabama. (See p. 181, ¶ 80.)

**29.** During the year 1861, the Federal government increased its navy, from less than fifty, to about two hun-

---

**26.** Give an account of the capture of Mason and Slidell.
**27.** What unfriendly acts did England and France perform?
**28.** Give an account of the career of the Sumter.
**29.** What addition was made to the Union navy in 1861? What is said of the blockade? Of specie payments? Of the circulating medium? Of gold?

Digitized by Google




Digitized by Google

dred vessels. This whole force was required in blockading Southern ports; and, as it was increased in the three succeeding years, the blockade became more effective. A general suspension of specie payments by the banks of the North having taken place, specie circulation soon gave way to that of paper, and gold became an article of merchandise commanding a high premium.

**30.** EVENTS OF 1862.—At Cairo (*kā'-ro*) the Union troops established a base of operations, Gen. Grant being in command. From a point on the Mississippi, a few miles below Cairo, the whole river to its mouth was in possession of the Confederates, and great preparations were made by both parties, one to retain and the other to gain the mastery of the river.

**31.** The Confederates had also a line of defences from the Mississippi to Cumberland Gap, with strong positions at Columbus, Bowling Green, Fort Henry, Fort Donelson, and near Mill Spring. In January, 1862, Gen. Buell was in command of a Federal department, with his headquarters at Louisville. A division of his army, under Gen. Geo. H. Thomas, gained a brilliant victory at Mill Spring, Jan. 19th, the defeated party escaping further loss by crossing the Cumberland.

**32.** In February, Commodore Foote, commanding a fleet of gunboats, sailed up the Tennessee, and, on the 6th, reduced Fort Henry. Bowling Green was soon after abandoned. On the 16th, Gen. Grant, with the co-operation of the fleet, effected the important capture of Fort

---

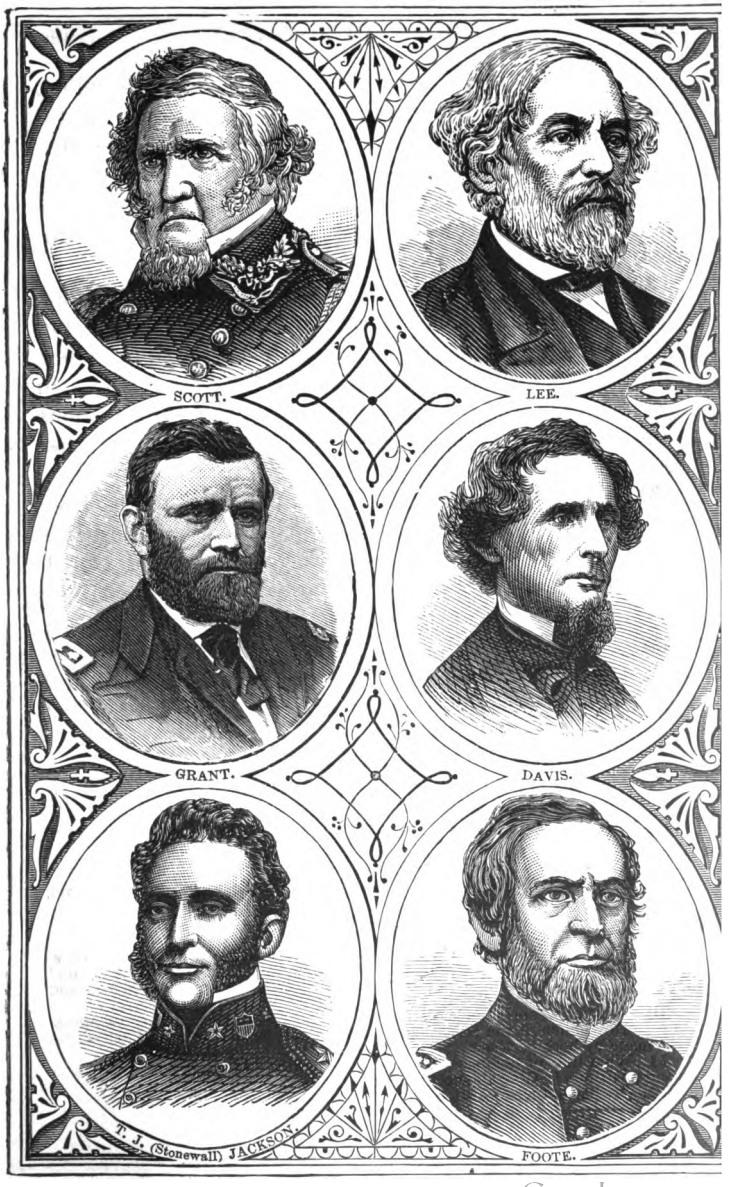
MAP QUESTIONS.—(p. 174.) Where is Cumberland Gap? Mill Spring? Louisville? Roanoke Island? Elizabeth City? Columbus? (p. 165.) Bowling Green? Fort Henry? Fort Donelson? Nashville? Pea Ridge? New Madrid? Island No. 10?

**30.** At what western place did the Union troops establish a base of operations? How much of the Mississippi did the Confederates hold? What efforts were made by both parties?

**31.** What line of defences did the Confederates have? Where were their strong positions? Give an account of the battle of Mill Spring.

**32.** Of the capture of Fort Henry. Of the capture of Fort Donelson.

Digitized by Google




Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Donelson, on the Cumberland, with about ten thousand prisoners. The Confederates thereupon evacuated Columbus and Nashville.

**33.** An important success meanwhile attended the efforts of the Unionists on the Atlantic coast. A land and naval expedition, sailing from Hampton Roads, under Gen. Burnside and Com. Goldsborough, captured Roanoke Island, Feb. 8th. This success was followed by the destruction of the Confederate flotilla at Elizabeth City, by the capture of that and other places, and by a victory gained by Burnside at Newbern. An expedition, fitted out at Port Royal, captured Fort Pulaski (*pu-las'-ke*).




PART OF SOUTH CAROLINA AND GEORGIA.

**34.** Two important events occurred on the 8th of March. Gen. Curtis, ably seconded by Sigel, defeated the Confederates, under Gen. Van Dorn, at Pea Ridge, Arkansas, after three days' hard fighting; and the ram Virginia, steaming out from Norfolk to Hampton Roads, destroyed the United States sloop-of-war Cumberland and the frigate Congress. (See p. 170, ¶ 45.)

**35.** This vessel, formerly the Merrimac, which had been sunk at Norfolk by the Union commander there at the beginning of the war, had been subsequently raised by

---

**33.** Where is Hampton Roads? (Map, p. 156.) Give an account of the expedition under Burnside and Goldsborough. Of the expedition against Fort Pulaski. What city does Fort Pulaski defend? (Map, p. 167.)

**34.** Give an account of the battle of Pea Ridge. Of the destruction effected by the ram Virginia.

**35** Give the previous history of the ram Virginia.

Digitized by Google

the Confederates, cut down almost to the water's edge, covered with a plating of iron, and named the Virginia.

**36.** The night of the 8th set in, and it was anticipated that next day all the national vessels in the vicinity of Fortress Monroe would be destroyed. But, during the night, the Monitor, a newly invented floating battery, commanded by Lieut. Worden (*wur'-den*), arrived from New York, and, on the following day, encountered the Virginia. After a contest of several hours, the latter, in a disabled condition, retreated to Norfolk.

**37.** The Union forces at the West, under Gen. Pope, were victorious in March, taking New Madrid. Again they were victorious, on the 7th of April, co-operating with Foote's gunboat fleet in the capture of Island No. 10, with six thousand prisoners. The gunboats then descended the Mississippi, defeating the Confederate fleet near Fort Pillow. On the 6th of June, Commodore Davis, Foote's successor, gained a victory over the fleet at Memphis, the town in consequence falling into his hands.

**38.** Gen. Grant, after his victory at Fort Donelson, proceeded up the Tennessee. On the morning of the 6th of April, his army, encamped at Shiloh (*shī'-lo*), near Pittsburg Landing, was suddenly attacked by Gen. A. S. Johnston's army; and, after a contest, which raged till near nightfall, the Union troops were driven to the river, where the gunboats aided them to keep the Confederates in check. Johnston was killed.

**39.** The arrival of re-enforcements under Buell, enabled Grant to assume the offensive on the following day, and

---

**36.** What was anticipated for the 9th of March? What happened during the night? Give an account of what followed.

**37.** What was the Union success at New Madrid? At Island No. 10? At Fort Pillow? At Memphis?

MAP QUESTIONS.—(p. 165.) Into what river does the Tennessee flow? Name four States in which the Tennessee runs. Where is Pittsburg Landing? What battle was fought there? *Ans.* Shiloh. Where is Corinth? Huntsville? Iuka? Cincinnati? (p. 174.) Frankfort? Richmond (Kentucky)?

**38.** Give an account of the first day's contest at Shiloh.

Digitized by Google

the Confederates, commanded by Beauregard, were driven toward Corinth (*kor'-inth*). The forces engaged in this battle, on both sides, numbered more than a hundred thousand men; and the losses were severe, being not less than twenty thousand.

**40.** Gen. Halleck arrived soon after, and took command in person of Grant's victorious army. He at once commenced an advance upon Corinth, slowly progressing every day for nearly two months, when, May 30th, the place was found deserted. A body of troops, under Gen. Mitchell, detached from Buell's army, meanwhile marched from Nashville as far as Huntsville, Alabama.

**41.** In Louisiana the Union cause met with a success of great importance. This was the capture of New Orleans, on the 25th of April. The Union fleet, commanded by Far'-ra-gut and Porter, ascended the Mississippi, bombarding and then running past two forts. The city was reached, and Gen. Butler taking formal possession, placed it under martial law.

**42.** Halleck, having been called to Washington, as commander-in-chief, Grant was left in command at Corinth. Gen. Rosecrans (*rōz'-krants*), with a division of Grant's army, gained a victory at I-u'-ka, September 19th; and, October 4th, he was again victorious, repulsing more than thirty thousand Confederates who made an attack upon his defences at Corinth

**43.** The Confederates were active in Tennessee and Kentucky during the summer, Gen. Bragg being in command with a large army. A part of this force, under Gen. Smith, defeated a body of Unionists at Richmond,

---

**39.** Give an account of the second day's contest at Shiloh.

**40.** Who, after the battle of Shiloh, took command of Grant's army? Give an account of Halleck's operations. Of Mitchell's operations.

**41.** Give an account of the capture of New Orleans.

**42.** To what position was Halleck transferred? Who was left in command of the Western troops? Give an account of the battle of Iuka. Of the battle of Corinth

Digitized by Google

marched thence to Frankfort, and threatened Cincinnati. Bragg advanced almost to Louisville, but, watched and foiled by Buell, he retreated southward, meeting with a repulse at Perryville. Buell's command was afterward transferred to Rosecrans.

**44.** Early in March, McClellan ordered an advance toward Richmond. A new organization of military departments assigned Fremont to West Virginia and East Tennessee, Banks to the Shenandoah Valley, McDowell to the Rappahannock, and McClellan to the command of the Army of the Potomac. On the 23d of March, Gen. Shields, commanding a detachment of Gen. Banks's division, gained a victory at Winchester.

**45.** At Alexandria, McClellan embarked his troops for Fortress Monroe, whence, April 4th, he commenced his




march up the peninsula between the York and James rivers. Compelling the enemy to retreat from Yorktown, after a month's siege, he gained a victory at Williamsburg, May 5th; and then pushed on to within seven miles of the Confederate capital. Meanwhile, General Wool, proceeding from Fortress Monroe, took possession of Norfolk, and the Confederates destroyed their iron-clad vessel, Virginia.

**46.** At Fair Oaks, McClellan's army was attacked on

**43.** Give an account of the battle of Richmond, Kentucky. Of Bragg's advance, and defeat at Perryville. Where is Perryville? (p. 174.) What advantage did Bragg gain during his northward march? *Ans.* He captured Munfordsville. By whom was Buell succeeded in command?

**44.** What new disposition of military commanders was made? What occurred at Winchester?

MAP QUESTIONS.—(Map, p. 156.) Where is Alexandria? Fortress Monroe? Norfolk? Into what water does the York River flow? Into what the James River? Where is Yorktown? Williamsburg? Strasburg? (p. 174.) Front Royal? Cedar Mt.? Chantilly? Fair Oaks? (Map, p. 170.)

**45.** At what place did McClellan embark his troops? From what place did he commence his Peninsula Campaign? What peninsula is alluded to? What was done at Yorktown? At Williamsburg? At Norfolk? With the ram Virginia?

Digitized by Google



MORSE.



FULTON.



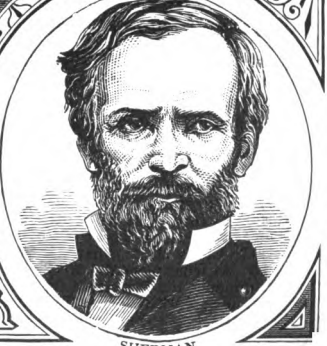
THOMAS.



SHERIDAN.



FARRAGUT.



SHERMAN.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

the 31st of May, and the battle was resumed the following day. It was a bloody though indecisive contest. Gen. Joseph E. Johnston, the Confederate general-in-chief, having been severely wounded in the battle, was relieved from active duty and Gen. Lee became his successor.

**47.** Banks's division, at the time, was at Stras'-burg, and this force the Confederates formed the plan of capturing; but in consequence of the resistance which they met at Front Royal, Banks became aware of their purpose, and made a rapid retreat to the Potomac. Their pursuing general, T. J. Jackson, known as Stonewall Jackson, was unsuccessfully pursued by Fremont, and then joined Lee.*

**48.** Believing that the force at his disposal was not sufficient to protect his lines, McClellan transferred his base of operations to the James River; but, while this movement was in progress, the Confederates fell upon the Union troops, June 25th, and a series of destructive battles took place, lasting through seven days. The contending armies numbered together not less than two hundred thousand men, and the joint losses thirty thousand.

**49.** Late in June, President Lincoln ordered the forces of Fremont, Banks, and McDowell, to be consolidated, and gave the command to Gen. Pope. Lee soon began to menace Washington; and, at Cedar Mountain, August 9th, his advance, under Jackson, gained an advantage in a conflict with Banks's division.

**50.** The Confederates, in full force, advanced, and from the 23d of August to the beginning of the following

**46.** Give an account of the battle of Fair Oaks. By what name is that battle also known? *Ans.* Seven Pines. What did the Confederate cavalry accomplish? *Ans.* Gen. Stuart passed north from Richmond entirely round the Union army. What change was made in the Confederate commanders?

**47.** Give an account of Banks's retreat and escape. What pursuit was made by Fremont?

**48.** What transfer of base did McClellan make? Why did he do so? What battles followed? How strong were the two armies, and what were their losses?

**49.** What consolidation of forces was made? What movement did Lee make? What occurred at Cedar Mt.?

* "This exploit (the Valley Campaign) of General Jackson, was undoubtedly one of the most brilliant of the war."—*Tenney.*

Digitized by Google

month the struggle between the two great armies was desperate. In that part of the struggle known as the *Second Battle of Bull Run*, Pope was defeated. In its closing part, at Chan'-til-ly, though losing Stevens and Kearny,* two of his best generals, he was more fortunate.

**51.** Lee, instead of marching to attack the fortifications of Washington, crossed the Potomac into Maryland, where he was pursued by McClellan, who had been ordered from the James. At South Mountain, September 14th, the national forces were victorious; but this success was more than counterbalanced, a few hours later, by the loss of Harper's Ferry with its munitions of war and large garrison.

**52.** On the 17th, the great battle of Antietam (*an-te'-tam*) was fought. Lee was defeated, his loss in the battle and during the campaign being not less than twenty-five thousand men. On the night of the 18th, he withdrew his forces across the Potomac, into Virginia.

**53.** After remaining in Maryland till the latter part of October, McClellan crossed the Potomac, but, in November, was superseded in the command by Burnside. Led by their new commander, the army crossed the Rappahannock, the design being to march against Richmond by the route from Fredericksburg. Fredericksburg was taken, December 12th; but, after a disastrous attempt to carry the works behind the city, the river was recrossed.

**54.** EVENTS OF 1863.—On the 1st of January, 1863, President Lincoln issued his memorable proclamation, declaring forever free the slaves in the states at war with

---

**50.** Give an account of the struggle between Lee and Pope. *Philip Kearny.

**51.** What movement did Lee then make? By whom was he pursued? What occurred at South Mountain? At Harper's Ferry? Where is South Mountain? (p. 156.)

**52.** Where is Antietam C.? (Map, p. 174.) Give an account of the battle fought there. What movement did Lee make after the battle.

**53.** By whom was McClellan superseded in command? Where is Fredericksburg? (p. 126.) Name four rivers that flow into Chesapeake Bay. Give an account of Burnside's march, repulse, and retreat.

Digitized by Google

the general government, excepting in certain designated parts occupied by national troops. On the same day Gal'-ves-ton was taken, and the naval force before the place was captured, destroyed, or dispersed by the Confederates.

**55.** The close of 1862 witnessed a fierce struggle at Mur'-frees-bo-ro between the armies of Rosecrans and Bragg. On the 2d of January, 1863, victory decided for the national cause. Nine days after, the Confederates lost Arkansas Post, which was taken by a land and naval force, commanded by Gen. McClernand and Admiral Porter.

**56.** Burnside having, at his own request, been relieved of the command of the Army of the Potomac, was succeeded by Gen. Hooker, who, toward the latter part of April, crossed the Rappahannock, and, encountering Lee on the 2d and 3d of May at Chancellorsville, was worsted, losing more than eleven thousand men, in killed and wounded. He then recrossed the river.

**57.** On the 9th of June, Lee, whose army numbered nearly a hundred thousand men, began a northward movement; and Hooker followed the invaders into Maryland, where, on the 28th of June, his command was transferred to Gen. Meade. At Gettysburg (*get'-tiz-burg*), on the 1st, 2d, and 3d of July, one of the most important, as well as severe and decisive, conflicts of the war took place. Lee was finally defeated, and, his army reduced one-third, he made a rapid retreat.

---

**54.** What can you state of Lincoln's memorable proclamation? Of affairs at Galveston, January 1st, 1863?

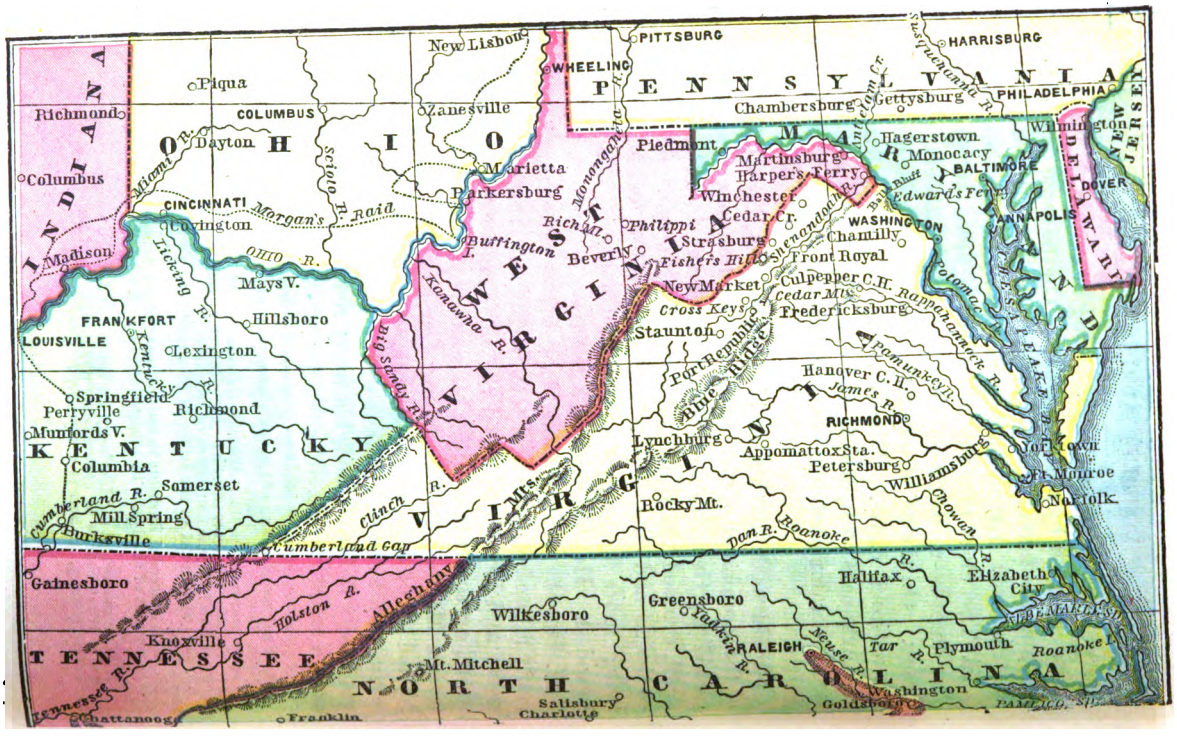
MAP QUESTIONS.—(p. 165.) Where is Galveston? Murfreesboro? Arkansas Post? Vicksburg? Port Gibson? Port Hudson? Into what water does the Red River flow? Name four towns on that river.

**55.** Give an account of the battle of Murfreesboro. Of the capture of Arkansas Post.

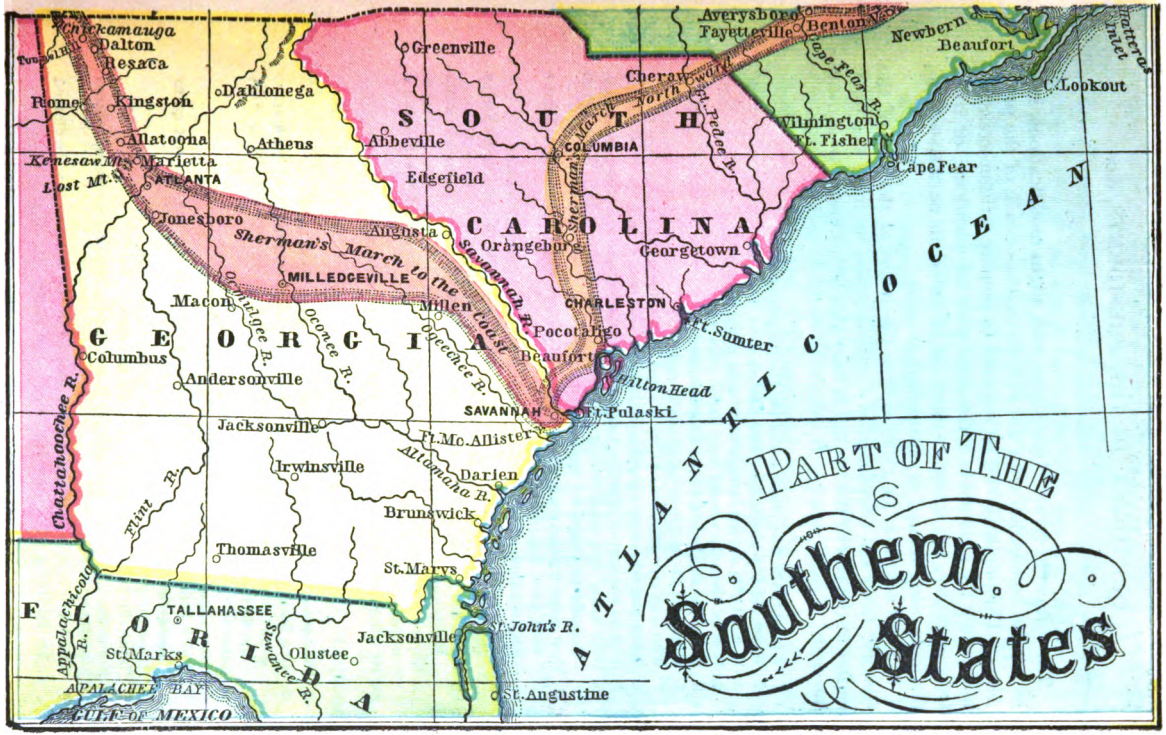
**56.** Who succeeded Burnside in the command of the Army of the Potomac? Give an account of the battle of Chancellorsville. Where is Chancellorsville? (Map, p. 156.)

**57.** What movement did Lee begin on the 9th of June? By whom was he followed? What change in commanders was made? Give an account of the battle of Gettysburg. Where is Gettysburg? (Map, p. 156.)

Digitized by Google




Digitized by Google




Digitized by Google

## QUESTIONS ON THE PRESIDENTS, &c.

The following series of questions, with slight modifications, may be used in connection with the administration of each of the presidents. The pupils should be required to prepare written exercises, numbering the answers to correspond with the questions; or, if the teacher prefer, the exercises may be prepared in narrative form, the facts being related in chronological order.

The answers may be gleaned from the tables at the end of the History, from the *Chronological Recapitulations*, or from the topic matter at the end of the book. It may also be necessary to consult the text.

1. Who was the first president of the United States?
2. When did Washington become president?
3. In what city did his inauguration take place?
4. Was he elected a second time to the office?
5. What was the length of his administration?
6. When did his administration begin and end?
7. Who was vice-president of the United States during the same time?
8. When and where was Washington born? (Table, p. 50.)
9. Give an account of Washington previous to his election to the presidency.
10. How many and what States belonged to the Union when Washington became president? (Appendix, p. 11.)
11. How many States were admitted to the Union while he was president? (See, also, Appendix, p. 11.)
12. Give the names of those States, with the date of their admission.
13. What territory, if any, was added to the possessions of the United States while Washington was president? (In other cases, see *Introduction.*)
14. What war, if any, in which this country was a party, occurred while Washington was president?
15. Name, in chronological order, all the important events of Washington's administration.
16. By whom was Washington succeeded in the presidency?

### ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS.

1. How many presidents of the United States have there been?
2. Give their names in the order of their succession, beginning at the first.
3. Name them in the reverse order, beginning with the last and ending with the first.
4. Name the presidents who served one term each.
5. Name those who served less than one term each.
6. Which president served more than one term of four years, but not quite two terms? (See Note, Appendix, p. 11.)
7. Name the presidents who served two full terms each.
8. Name the presidents who died while in office.
9. Name the vice-presidents who, by the death of their predecessors, became presidents.
10. Which of the presidents, not being elected in the usual way, were elected by the House of Representatives? (See pages 109, 137.)

Digitized by Google

**58.** It was the chief object of Gen. Grant, the commander of the national forces in the Southwest, to open the Mississippi, his first point of attack being Vicksburg. Near Port Gibson, May 1st, he gained a decided victory. Others followed, and finally, on the 4th of July, the Confederate commander, Pemberton, surrendered Vicksburg.

**59.** The commander at Port Hudson, on learning the fate of Vicksburg, likewise surrendered; and thus was the Mississippi opened. The surrender of this last place held by the Confederates on the river was made to Banks, Butler's successor. The colored troops in Banks's army were commended for their bravery in the assaults which had been made on the place.

**60.** After his victory at Murfreesboro, Rosecrans had no important contest with the Confederates until he was attacked by Bragg, near Chick-a-mau'-ga Creek, September 19th and 20th; and, but for the stand made by Thomas, his army would have been totally routed.

**61.** He then fell back to Chat-ta-noo'-ga. The timely arrival of Hooker and Grant, the latter of whom took the command, enabled the Union army to gain a decided victory, November 25th, after a three days' conflict; and Bragg was driven back into Georgia. The killed, wounded, and prisoners, on both sides, numbered not less than fifteen thousand.

**62.** At Knoxville, November 29th, Burnside repulsed Longstreet. In Missouri and Kansas guerrilla bands, cooperating with the regular Confederate forces, continued to plunder and destroy. A bold raid was made into Indiana

---

58. What was the chief object of Gen. Grant? Give an account of his successes.

59. What success did Banks afterward achieve? What is said of the colored troops?

60. Give an account of the battle of Chickamauga? Where is Chickamauga? (Map, p. 174.) Chattanooga? Knoxville?

61. Give an account of the battle of Chattanooga.

62. What occurred at Knoxville? What occurred in Missouri and Kansas? Give an account of Morgan's raid.

Digitized by Google

and Ohio, by the partisan ranger Gen. Morgan. He was pursued day and night, for a distance of nearly seven hundred miles, and his band finally killed, captured, or scattered. He was among the prisoners.

**63.** By virtue of authority vested in him, the president ordered a draft of three hundred thousand men to recruit the army. Great opposition to the measure was at once excited, which culminated in a riot in the city of New York, commencing July 13th, and lasting four days. Before the outbreak was quelled, a number of buildings were sacked and burned, and the most fiendish acts were committed, particularly against the colored population.

**64.** The navy of the United States was employed in various service during the year, and was very active. The blockade of the Confederate ports became so effective as to be fully respected by the nations of Europe; but Wilmington, on account of its wide and numerous inlets, was quite successful in maintaining an intercourse with Nassau (*nas-saw'*) and other British ports.

**65.** The people in the western counties of Virginia were, from the beginning of the war, opposed to secession; and they took early measures not only to effect a separation of their part of the state from the other section of Virginia, but to gain admission as a state into the Union. Their efforts were crowned with success, and West Virginia was admitted in 1863.

**66.** EVENTS OF 1864.—Gen. Wm. T. Sherman, in February, 1864, made a successful expedition into Mississippi; but this success was more than counterbalanced by a

---

**63.** Give an account of the riot in the city of New York.

**64.** What is said of the service of the navy? Of the blockade in general? Of the blockade of Wilmington?

**65.** Give the history of the formation of West Virginia. What aid did the Union cause receive from private associations? *Ans.* The Sanitary Commission and the Christian Commission rendered important aid to the wounded on the battle-fields and to the sick and wounded in the hospitals.

**66.** Where is Olustee? (Map, p. 174.) What occurred there?

Digitized by Google

disastrous defeat which the Union forces sustained at O-lus'-tee, Florida, on the 20th of the same month.

**67.** An expedition against Shreveport, Louisiana, conducted by Gen. Banks with the co-operation of Porter's fleet, met with a series of disasters that ended in the failure of the movement. The loss, in men and material, was heavy; and the vessels, in consequence of a fall in the Red River, were only saved from capture or destruction by the construction of a dam across the river, by which the boats were enabled to go over the falls.

**68.** The absence of troops to aid Banks in the Red River expedition, emboldened the Confederates under Gen. Forrest to make a raid into the western part of Tennessee and Kentucky. Union City was captured. An attack upon Fort Pillow, April 12th, was bravely resisted, but at last the place was carried by assault, and three hundred of its defenders, mostly colored troops, were massacred.

**69.** The services which Gen. Grant had rendered the country, added to his peculiar fitness to command large armies, induced the president to name him for the position of Lieutenant-General, and the nomination was confirmed by the Senate on the 3d of March. Vast preparations were at once begun for two campaigns—one against Richmond, by the Army of the Potomac, and the other against At-lan'-ta, to be conducted by Gen. Wm. T. Sherman.

**70.** Sherman, with an army of a hundred thousand

---

**67.** Where is Shreveport? (Map, p. 165.) Give an account of the Red River expedition. What fort was captured? *Ans.* De Russy. What battles were fought? *Ans.* Cane River, Mansfield, and Pleasant Hill.

**68.** What tempted Forrest to make a raid? What success did he have at Union City? Give an account of the "Fort Pillow massacre."

**69.** To what position was Gen. Grant promoted? Why was he so promoted? What preparations were at once begun?

**70.** From what place did Sherman advance? By whom was his progress disputed? What were his successes over Johnston? By whom was Johnston superseded in command? Why was he so superseded? Where is Atlanta? (Map, p. 174.)

Digitized by Google

men, advanced from Chattanooga early in May, his progress being disputed by Gen. Jos. E. Johnston, but in vain. He won battles, outflanked his opponent, and by the middle of July reached the vicinity of Atlanta. Johnston's "retreating policy" being condemned by the Confederates, he was superseded in the command by Gen. Hood.

**71.** From the 20th to the 28th of July, Hood made three furious assaults upon the Union lines, but each time he was repulsed with heavy loss. Sherman sent cavalry expeditions to cut the railroads by which the Confederates received supplies. Gen. Stoneman, commanding one of these, was defeated and captured. Moving with nearly the whole of his army westward around Atlanta, Sherman defeated a large division of Hood's army at Jonesboro, and compelled the Confederate commander to abandon Atlanta.

**72.** Though Gen. Meade commanded the Army of the Potomac, Gen. Grant had his headquarters with that army, and planned all the military movements. On the 4th of May, Meade crossed the Rap-id-an'. On the following day he encountered Lee in a terrific contest, known as the Battle of the Wilderness, which raged for two days. On the 7th the Confederates withdrew toward Richmond.

**73.** Near Spottsylvania Court House, Lee made a stand. Fighting occurred on the 9th; and, from that time till toward the middle of June, the struggle between the two

MAP QUESTIONS.—(p. 156.) Into what river does the Rapidan flow? North Anna? Monocacy? Cedar Creek? Where is Spottsylvania C. H.? Appomattox C. H.? Piedmont? (p. 174.) Chambersburg? Fisher's Hill? Petersburg?

**71.** What took place from the 20th to the 28th of July? What expeditions did Sherman send? What misfortune befell Stoneman? How, at last, did Sherman gain Atlanta? Where is Jonesboro? (p. 174.)

**72.** Where were Grant's headquarters? What control did Grant exercise over army movements? When did Meade cross the Rapidan? State what occurred on the following day. What occurred on the 7th.

**73.** What occurred on the 9th? What is said of the succeeding struggle? What battles are mentioned? What co-operation did Butler give?



Digitized by Google

armies was more or less severe. The battles of Spottsylvania, North Anna, and Cold Harbor were particularly desperate and bloody. Butler, co-operating with Meade, sailed from Fortress Monroe, and secured a position on the south side of the James, thus favoring a movement by which the Army of the Potomac was transferred, June 14th, to that side of the river.

**74.** Petersburg was at once besieged. On the 30th of July a mine was exploded under one of the strongest of the works before that city, so that a storming party might rush through the gap thus formed, and the place be captured. The assault was made, but it resulted in disastrous failure. Other conflicts took place between the armies of Meade and Lee, yet at the close of the year, the Confederates still held Petersburg and Richmond.

**75.** A large force, intended for co-operation with Meade's army, was in the Shenandoah Valley, under Sigel; but, after meeting a defeat at Newmarket, Sigel was superseded by Gen. Hunter. Hunter gained a victory at Pied'-mont, June 5th, and then marched upon Lynchburg, but finding the Confederate force there strengthened by recent arrivals from Lee's army, he withdrew into West Virginia. The Valley being thus open, Lee detached twenty thousand men, under Gen. Early, to invade Maryland.

**76.** With overwhelming numbers Early defeated Gen. Wallace at the Mo-noc'-a-cy River, July 9th; and, after threatening Baltimore and Washington, he recrossed the Potomac, loaded with plunder. A body of the Confeder-

**74.** What place was besieged? Where was a mine made? Give an account of the assault? What is said of other conflicts?

**75.** Where did Sigel have a force to co-operate with Meade's army? What befell Sigel? By whom was Sigel superseded in command? What success did Hunter have? What were Hunter's subsequent movements? How did the Confederates take advantage of Hunter's absence?

**76.** Give an account of the battle of Monocacy? What movements did Early then make? What occurred at Chambersburg? What success did Averill have?

Digitized by Google

ate cavalry which afterward advanced into Pennsylvania and set fire to Chambersburg, while retreating was overtaken by Gen. A'-ver-ill and defeated.

77. Grant hurried off troops for the defence of Washington, and a strong force was organized for Sheridan, who relieved Hunter from command. On the 19th of September, Sheridan attacked and routed Early near Winchester; and, three days after, at Fisher's Hill, he met and routed him again. Just a month after his victory at Winchester, his troops, then at Cedar Creek, were suddenly attacked and driven from the field, he, at the time, being absent. Arriving at this critical time, he arranged his lines, repulsed an attack, assailed in return, and, for the third time, routed Early's army.

78. Leaving Thomas in Tennessee to watch Hood, Sherman destroyed Atlanta, and, on the 15th of November, commenced his memorable march to the sea-coast. Advancing through Georgia and living upon the country, he occupied the state capital and other large towns; carried Fort McAllister by assault; and, on the morning of the 21st of December, entered the city of Savannah.

79. In the mean time Hood advanced into Tennessee, while Thomas fell back toward Nashville. Coming up at Franklin, November 30th, with the main part of the Union army, Hood made an assault, but was repulsed; and Thomas then brought his troops together at Nashville. Hood formed a plan to dislodge his opponent, but, before he could put it into execution, Thomas attacked him, on the morning of the 15th of December, and, in a battle

77. Who succeeded Hunter in command? What occurred at Winchester? At Fisher's Hill? Give an account of the battle of Cedar Creek.

78. What did Sherman do with Atlanta? What did Sherman then do? Through what state did he march? What fort did he capture? What city did he enter? Where is Fort McAllister? (Map, p. 167.)

79. What movement did Hood meanwhile make? How did Thomas act? Give an account of the battle of Franklin. Who commanded the Union troops in that battle? *Ans.* Gen. Schofield. Where is Franklin? Give an account of the battle of Nashville.

Digitized by Google




**War's Doings—Burning a Town.**

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

lasting two days, defeated and drove him from the field. Hood fled into Alabama.

**80.** The Confederates, by means of English-built privateers, sailing under the Confederate flag, succeeded in destroying a large number of American merchantmen. Semmes, in the Alabama, resumed his career of destruction, luring vessels by hoisting the British flag; but the Alabama was at last met, June 19, by the Kearsarge (*ke'-ar-sarj*), Capt. Winslow, and, after a short contest, was sunk.* (See p. 187, ¶ 101, 102.)

**81.** Of all the achievements of the army or navy of the United States during the war, none were more brilliant than that of Admiral Far'-ra-gut in Mobile Bay, on the 5th of August. He succeeded in passing Forts Morgan and Gaines at the entrance of the bay, and then gaining a complete victory over the Confederate fleet. The two forts were afterward captured.

**82.** EVENTS OF 1865, AND CLOSE OF THE WAR.—The active operations of 1865 began with the reduction of Fort Fisher, the main defence of Wilmington. This was accomplished on the 15th of January, by eight thousand men under Gen. Terry, aided by Admiral Porter's fleet. About a month before, Butler had made a demonstration against the fort, but deeming the works too strong to be carried hy his force, returned to Fortress Monroe. Wilmington was occupied by the Federal troops on the 22d of February.

**83.** Sherman having halted at Savannah only long

---

**80.** By what means were the Confederates enabled to destroy American merchantmen? What course did Semmes pursue? What was the fate of the Alabama?

**81.** How is Farragut's success in Mobile Bay spoken of? What was his achievement? Where is Mobile Bay? (p. 165.) Fort Morgan?

**82.** Where did the operations of 1865 begin? Give an account of the success achieved by Terry and Porter. What attempt had been previously made to reduce the fort? Where is Fort Fisher? (p. 174.)

**83.** When did Sherman move from Savannah? How did he compel the Confederates to evacuate Charleston? Give the account of his subsequent progress and successes.

* This contest took place off the port of Cherbourg (*sher'-boorg*), France. Semmes and forty of his crew were picked up by a British vessel, and, without authority from Winslow, were taken to England.

Digitized by Google

enough to refit his army, was again in motion by the 1st of February. On the 17th he captured Columbia, compelling the Confederates, by this achievement, to evacuate Charleston. He entered North Carolina, fought and defeated Gen. Hardee on the 16th of March, and, four days later, gained a victory over Gen. J. E. Johnston.

84. On the 29th of March the final movement of the national forces, which Gen. Grant had gathered around Richmond, commenced; and, after ten days' marching and fighting, the campaign was ended. On the 3d of April, both Petersburg and Richmond were occupied by the nation's victorious troops. The retreating troops were hotly pursued by Sheridan, and, on the 9th, Lee, overtaken and surrounded, surrendered to Grant near Appomattox Court House. From this period the history of the war is but a record of national successes in the surrender of the several remaining Confederate commanders.

85. The hearts of the loyal people were throbbing with joy because of the triumph so long struggled for, but this feeling was suddenly turned into mourning. In less than a week after Lee's surrender, and only forty days after he had entered upon his second term of office, President Lincoln was assassinated by a desperado acting in sympathy with the Confederate cause. He died on the following morning, April 15th. (App., p. 69, topic 94.)

86. JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION.—The vice-president, Andrew Johnson of Tennessee, thereupon became president, retaining the cabinet of his predecessor. The assassin of the lamented president eluded pursuit until the 26th, when, having been tracked to his hiding-place and refusing to surrender, he was shot. Jefferson Davis, after

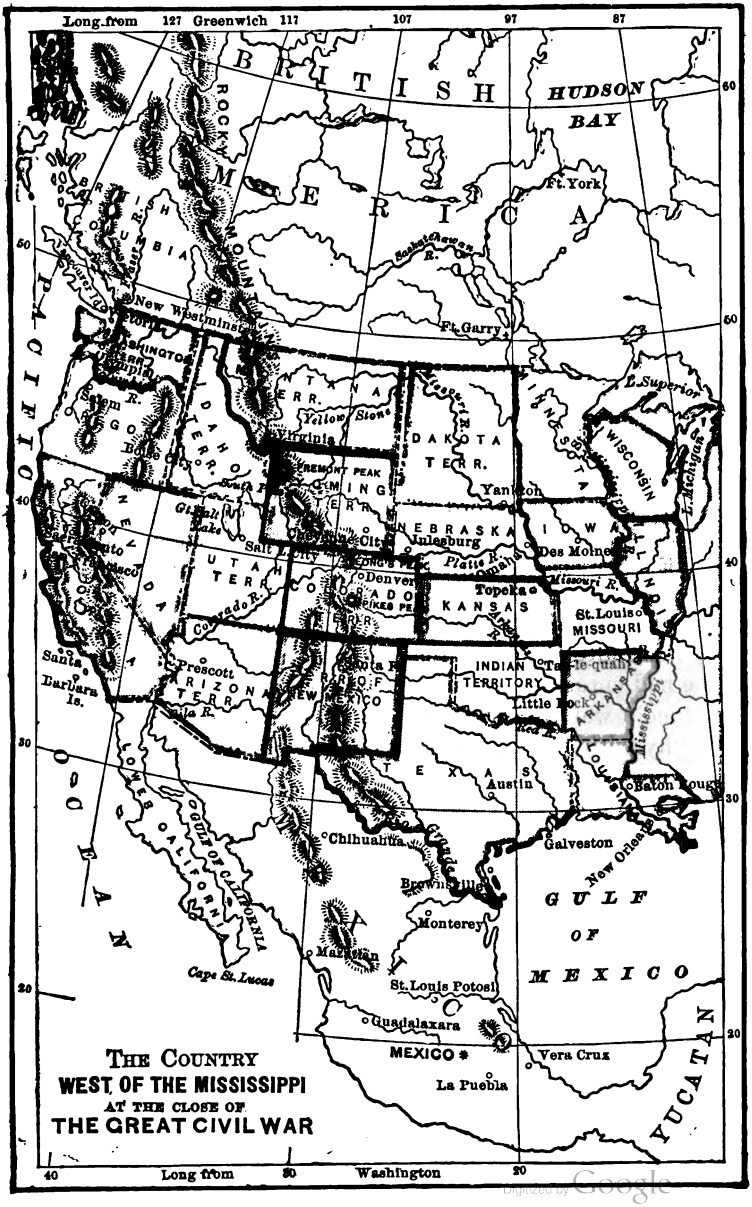
84. When did the final movement of the national forces commence? Give an account of the ten days' campaign. When, where, and to whom did Lee surrender? To whom did Johnston surrender? *Ans.* Sherman.

85. How were the people's rejoicings turned into sorrow? When did President Lincoln die?

86. Who, then, became president? What was the fate of the person who shot Lincoln? What is said of Jefferson Davis?

Digitized by Google

# Progressive Map, No. 4.




THE COUNTRY
WEST OF THE MISSISSIPPI
AT THE CLOSE OF
THE GREAT CIVIL WAR

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

abandoning Richmond, fled to Georgia, where he was captured. He was then conveyed a prisoner to Fortress Monroe; but, after a long confinement, was released (1867).

87. On the 29th of April, President Johnson issued a proclamation removing restrictions on commerce in the South; and, a month later, he addressed a proclamation of amnesty to all those who had been concerned in the late war, excepting certain specified classes of persons. A resolution of Congress, proposing an amendment to the Constitution abolishing slavery, having been approved by three-fourths of the states, slavery was declared constitutionally abolished on the 18th of December.

88. The national debt, at the close of 1865, amounted to about two billions seven hundred millions of dollars. To raise the enormous sums required during the war, the government had offered loans which were freely taken; the duty on importations was increased; taxes were imposed on incomes and manufactures; and revenue stamps were required to be placed upon bonds and other documents.

89. In March, 1865, Congress passed an act known as the Freedmen's Bureau Bill. By the term freedmen were meant all the colored people of the South, who, at the breaking out of the late war, were slaves; but who had afterward been declared free by proclamation of the president. The bill had for its object the supervision and relief of freedmen and loyal refugees. A second bill, amending and continuing in force the first, although vetoed by the president, was passed in July, 1866.

---

87. What proclamation in relation to commerce did Johnson issue? What other proclamation did he issue? What was done in relation to the abolition of slavery?

88. What did the national debt amount to at the close of 1865? How had the government procured money during the war?

89. When was the Freedmen's Bureau Bill passed? Who were meant by the term freedmen? What was the object of the Bill? What is said of the second Freedmen's Bureau Bill?

Digitized by Google

**90.** It soon became evident that Congress and President Johnson were at variance on the subject of "Reconstructing the Union," the former being opposed to the restoration of the late Confederate states to their former political standing, until certain guarantees of protection should be extended to the colored population, and other conditions complied with by the states. A Reconstruction Act was, however, passed by Congress, notwithstanding the veto of the President, March 2d, 1867, and two Supplementary Reconstruction Acts were also passed, in like manner.

**91.** In March of the same year a bill to regulate the tenure of certain civil offices was passed over the president's veto. By this bill it was declared that persons holding any civil office, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, should be entitled to hold such office until a successor should be, in like manner, appointed and qualified. This bill, known as the *Tenure-of-Office Bill*, has since been essentially modified.

**92.** During the year 1867, Nebraska was admitted into the Union, and the territorial possessions of the United States were very much enlarged by the addition of Alas'-ka, formerly known as Russian America. This vast tract of land was purchased of Russia, the price agreed to be paid being $7,200,000, in gold. (App., p. 75, topic 179.)

**93.** In August, 1867, the president suspended Mr. Stanton, the secretary of war, from office, because, "upon important questions, the views of the secretary differed from his own." Gen. Grant was appointed to discharge the duties of the office. In December, the president notified

**90.** What soon became evident as between Congress and the president? What position did Congress take? What is said of the Reconstruction Bill? Of the two Supplementary Acts?

**91.** State what you can in relation to the Tenure-of-Office Bill.

**92.** What is said of the admission of Nebraska? What is said of Alaska?

**93.** From what office was Mr. Stanton suspended? By whom was the suspension made? Why was it made? What course, in relation to the matter,

Digitized by Google

the Senate of the change he had made, and of his reasons for so doing. The Senate having duly considered the reasons, passed a resolution of non-concurrence in the suspension; and, thereupon, January 13th, 1868, Mr. Stanton resumed the exercise of the duties of secretary of war.

**94.** On the 21st of February, the president sent a message to the Senate, declaring that he had removed Mr. Stanton from office, and had placed Gen. Lorenzo Thomas in his stead until a successor should be appointed. This produced great excitement in both houses of Congress. The Senate passed a resolution notifying the President "that, under the Constitution and laws of the United States, he had no power to remove the secretary of war and designate any other officer to perform the duties of that office."

**95.** On the 24th, a resolution, impeaching President Johnson of high crimes and misdemeanors, was adopted by the House of Representatives. In accordance therewith, nine articles of impeachment, prepared by a committee of the House, were, on the 2d of March, adopted; and seven managers were thereupon selected from among the members of the House, to conduct the impeachment before the Senate.

**96.** Two more articles of impeachment having been added, in which the president was charged with declaring that Congress, as then constituted, was an illegal body, the trial was begun on the 30th of March. On the 16th of May a verdict of acquittal was declared on the eleventh article; and, ten days after, a like verdict was rendered on two other articles, when the Senate, as a court, adjourned. On the same day, May 26th, Mr. Stanton resigned his position as secretary of war. (Ap., p. 69, top. 88.)

did the president afterward take? What course and action did the Senate take? What course did Mr. Stanton take?

**94.** What course did the president take in the following February? What was the effect in Congress? What resolution did the Senate pass?

**95.** What resolution was afterward adopted by the House of Representatives? What subsequent action was taken by the House?

Digitized by Google

**97.** GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION.—The presidential election in the fall of 1868 resulted in the choice of General Ulysses S. Grant, of Illinois. Though Virginia, Mississippi, and Texas did not participate in the election, not having complied with the "reconstruction" requirements of Congress, Grant received a decided majority of the electoral votes of all the states. His inauguration tool place on the 4th of March, 1869.

**98.** During the first year of his administration the three states—Virginia, Mississippi, and Texas—were restored to representation in Congress, and thus the "Reconstruction of the Union" was fully accomplished. The number of states now (1874) composing the Union is thirty-seven, besides ten territories and the District of Columbia.

**99.** The Fifteenth Amendment to the Constitution, guaranteeing to all citizens of the United States the right of suffrage, without regard to "race, color, or previous condition of servitude," having been proposed by Congress and ratified by three-fourths of the states, was declared adopted, March 30, 1870. The Fourteenth Amendment, guaranteeing equal rights to all persons born or naturalized in the United States, had been adopted nearly two years before (July 28, 1868). (App., pp. 39, 40, 41.)

**100.** In October of 1871, the most destructive fire in the history of this country occurred at Chicago, about eighteen thousand buildings being consumed.* Scarcely less destructive to property, and far more so to human life, were the forest fires that, during the same month, raged in Michigan, Wisconsin, and Minnesota. A little more than a year after, the election for president occurred, Grant being the successful candidate. His inauguration, for a second term, took place on the 4th of March, 1873.

**97.** Who succeeded Johnson in the presidency? What states did not vote? Why not? When was Grant inaugurated?
**98.** How was the "Reconstruction of the Union" at last accomplished?

* NOTE.—In a little more than a year after the Chicago fire, a fire occurred in Boston (Nov. 9th, 10th, 1872), which laid waste 65 acres, destroying 776 buildings, and causing a total loss, in houses and merchandise, of about $75,000,000.

Digitized by Google

**101.** The depredations committed by the Alabama and other English-built privateers during the Great Civil War (pages 164, 181), were a cause of much ill-feeling on the part of the people of the United States against the British Government, and while the latter refused to make any reparation, the feeling continued. At length representatives of the respective governments met in Washington, and concluded a treaty (1871), with a view to the settlement of "all causes of difference between the two countries."

**102.** A tribunal consisting of five arbitrators (one from each of the countries: the United States, Great Britain, Italy, Switzerland, and Brazil), acting under the provisions of the treaty, assembled in Geneva, Switzerland, not long after, where they examined and decided all the claims submitted to them, and finally (Sept. 14, 1872) awarded the sum of fifteen million five hundred thousand dollars in gold to be paid by Great Britain to the United States for the satisfaction of all the claims, "known as the Alabama Claims, growing out of the acts committed by the several vessels." That amount was accordingly paid a year later (Sept. 1873).

**103.** THE NATION'S CENTENNIAL.—The year 1876, the centennial of American independence, was one of great rejoicing throughout the Union. The important events of the Revolution that occurred a hundred years before, prominently that of the Declaration of Independence, were duly commemorated; but the great occurrence of the year was the exhibition known as the "World's Fair." For the purposes of this exhibition, nearly two hundred buildings were erected in Fairmount Park, Philadelphia, the six principal ones covering more than sixty acres. In these were gathered products—natural

**101, 102.** State how the Alabama claims were settled.
**103.** What gave special importance to the year 1876? State what you can of the "World's Fair." Of the admission of Colorado.

Digitized by Google

and manufactured—of nearly every country of the globe, as well as specimens designed to illustrate the progress of each nation in science, art, and education. During the six months in which the exhibition was open, nearly ten millions of persons visited it. The admission of Colorado, "the Centennial State," into the Union was also an important event of the year.

**104.** ELECTION OF HAYES TO THE PRESIDENCY.—As Grant's second term of office drew towards its close, the two great political parties made their nominations. The candidate of the Democrats for president was Samuel J. Tilden, of New York; that of the Republicans was Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio. The election took place (Nov. 7th, 1876), but, in consequence of disputes respecting the electoral votes, in whole or in part, of some of the States, particularly of Florida, Louisiana, Oregon, and South Carolina, the result was in doubt. One hundred and eighty-five votes were necessary to a choice. Tilden had one hundred and eighty-four, without those of the four States named.

**105.** How should the votes be counted? As the constitution did not clearly provide a method, a Commission, composed of five Senators, five Representatives, and five judges of the Supreme Court, was formed by Congress to decide certain questions at issue, both parties agreeing to abide by the result.* Intense excitement prevailed in Congress and all parts of the country, but the decisions of the Commission, which gave to Mr. Hayes a majority of the votes, calmed the feeling, and the Presi-

**104.** What were the difficulties in the presidential election of that year?
**105.** State fully how the difficulties were overcome.

* To understand the process by which the election of a president is effected under the Constitution, the learner is referred to the "Twelfth Amendment to the Constitution," Appendix, p. 25.

Digitized by Google

dent of the Senate, in the presence of both Houses of Congress assembled in joint convention, declared him to be the president elect. William A. Wheeler, of New York, by the same declaration, became the vice-president (March 2, 1877).

**106.** HAYES'S ADMINISTRATION.—The oath of office was taken in the president's mansion, commonly known as the "White House," by Mr. Hayes, on Saturday evening, March 3d, 1877, a few persons only being present. The oath was administered by the Chief Justice of the United States. The inaugural ceremonies took place on Monday (the 5th) in the open air, at the east front of the Capitol, in the presence of many thousand persons. The new president had been a commander in the Union army during the great civil war, in which conflict he had rendered gallant and distinguished service and been four times wounded. He had also been governor of Ohio. His inaugural address, breathing the spirit of conciliation, was satisfactory to all parts of the Union—the South as well as the North, the East as well as the West.



RUTHERFORD B. HAYES.

**107.** During this administration the dispute respecting the right of the people of the United States to catch fish off the coast of British-American provinces was settled for a term of years. It will be recollected that a treaty

**106.** When and where did Hayes take the oath of office? State what you can of the inaugural ceremonies. What do you know of Hayes's previous history?

**107.** Give an account of the fishery dispute and settlement.

Digitized by Google

was made at Washington, in 1871, having for its object the settlement of "all causes of difference" between the United States and Great Britain (¶ 101, p. 187). Under this treaty three commissioners met in Halifax, Nova Scotia, and, by a majority-vote, decided that the United States should pay five and a half million dollars for the fishery right, or "privilege," as it was termed, but this favor was to be only for a period of twelve years. The award was not regarded as equitable by the people and government of the United States, but the amount was duly paid (1878). (See ¶ 117, p. 98.)

**108.** During the summer of 1877 a memorable railroad strike occurred. It began in Maryland by the firemen and brakemen of a freight train, in opposition to a reduction of their wages, and extended into Pennsylvania and other States. The strikers not only refused to work, but they stopped the trains from running. The strike, in some places, became a riot, and many lives were destroyed in addition to a vast amount of property. At length, after a period of three weeks, by the aid of State and national troops, order was restored, and the trains began to run with regularity.

**109.** When the great civil war broke out the country was in a very prosperous condition; but soon the banks, as well as the general government, were compelled to stop the payment of gold and silver, paying, instead, paper money, mostly "greenbacks." This act, known as the "suspension of specie payments," continued till the first of January, 1879, when the banks and government resumed specie payments, and gold and silver once more came into common use. (See ¶ 88, p. 183.)

**108.** Give an account of the railroad strike of 1877.
**109.** What is stated of specie payments?

* The right to fish on the Banks of Newfoundland and in other waters of the British American provinces, conceded to the United States by the treaty of 1783, was, the British authorities maintained, annulled by the war of 1812. By the treaty made in 1818, in consideration of certain concessions made to the United States, our government gave up all claim to fish within three marine miles of the British American coasts.

Digitized by Google

**110.** Not the least important event of this administration was the making of a treaty with China (1880). The people of California and other parts of the West had, in many ways, expressed their opposition to the system by which large numbers of Chinese laborers were brought to our Pacific coast. They asserted that, in consequence of this, labor in certain departments of business was becoming so cheapened as to compel the American workmen to abandon such departments. The treaty, arranged by a commission sent to China, practically leaves the subject of regulating the immigration to the decision and control of the United States.



JAMES A. GARFIELD.

**111.** During the summer of 1880 preparations were begun for the twenty-fourth presidential election. The Republicans nominated James A. Garfield of Ohio: the Democrats presented as their candidate the distinguished soldier, General Hancock.* The canvass was exceedingly spirited, being marked by immense meetings of the people and by great torchlight processions. The result was in favor of the Republicans; and, on the 4th of March following, the inauguration of Garfield took place. Chester A. Arthur, of New York, who had been elected vice-president, took his place as President of the Senate.

**110.** What is said of the Chinese treaty of 1880?
**111.** Give an account of the presidential contest of that year.

*Winfield Scott Hancock was born in Pennsylvania in 1824. He received his military education at West Point, and won distinction and promotion for meritorious deeds in the war with Mexico. His record made in the great Civil War is highly creditable. He held important commands in several battles, and for his conduct at Gettysburg, in which conflict he was severely wounded, he was awarded the thanks of Congress.

Digitized by Google

**112.** GARFIELD'S AND ARTHUR'S ADMINISTRATIONS.—The new president had risen from a very humble position in life. In his boyhood he drove the horses before the plough on his father's farm. Later, when not earning money in his neighbors' hay fields, he was doing so by chopping wood, or by driving horses on the canal. He loved books, and his great ambition was to get an education. At the age of eighteen he was a school teacher, at twenty-four a professor of Latin and Greek, at twenty-seven a college president, at twenty-eight a state senator, at thirty-one a general in the army, at thirty-three a member of Congress.

**113.** His administration began well. He had been in office less than four months, and was about to leave Washington to visit the Eastern States, when, at the railroad depot, he was shot down by an assassin (July 2, 1881). With little delay he was conveyed to the White House, and there, during two months, was tenderly cared for. Then, with the hope that a change of air would benefit him, he was removed to Long Branch, a summer resort in New Jersey overlooking the Atlantic. It was in vain, for on the 19th of September he died. Never was there a sorrow so universal as that which followed. To the grief-stricken people of America came words of sympathy from every part of the civilized world. The vice-president, Chester A. Arthur, on taking the oath of office, became president (Sept. 20).

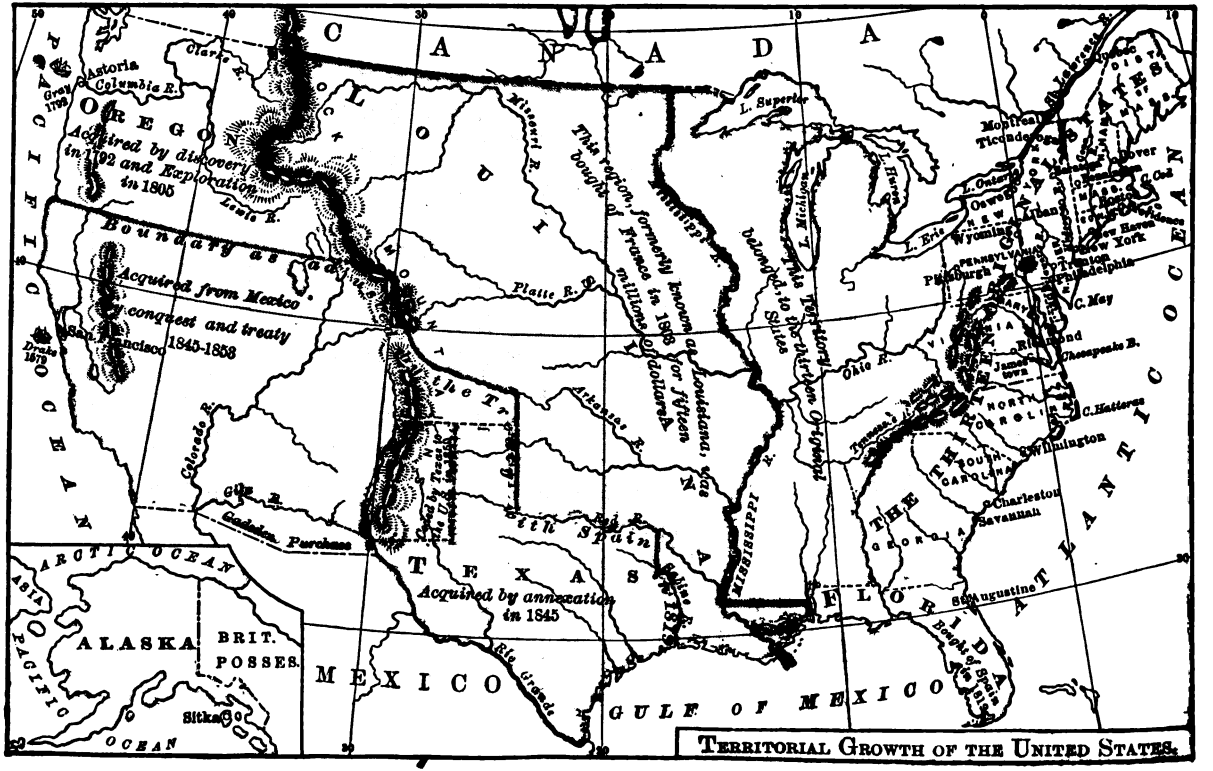


CHESTER A. ARTHUR.

**112.** What is said of Garfield's life before he became president?
**113.** State what you can of his administration and death.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google




Digitized by Google

# TERRITORIAL GROWTH OF THE UNITED STATES.

1. ORIGINAL TERRITORY.—The territory of the Republic, at the close of the War of the Revolution, was bounded by the Atlantic Ocean, the Mississippi River, the Great Lakes, and the Gulf of Mexico. Such were the limits conceded by the treaty with Great Britain (September 3, 1783); but from the region lying within them, the Spanish province of Florida must be excluded, as well as that part of the present State of Louisiana which lies east of the Mississippi, in defining the original domain of the United States. Out of that domain many new States have been formed, and to it large accessions of new territory have been made.

2. VERMONT.—This was the first of the new States. It was formed from territory which had been claimed by New York and New Hampshire, the former founding its claim on the grants made by Charles II. to the Duke of York, the latter on the colonial charter which it received at the commencement of its existence. New Hampshire was the most active in the settlement of the territory, her governor, during a period of eight years (from 1760 to 1768), having made more than a hundred township grants within its limits.

3. These, with other grants subsequently made, were afterward known as the "New Hampshire Grants." Before the Revolution, however, New York succeeded in obtaining jurisdiction over the whole territory, through a de-

1. What territory belonged to the United States when they began their existence as a nation? To what nation did Florida then belong?
2, 3. Give the early history of Vermont. When admitted?

Digitized by Google

cision of the king, to which the governor of New Hampshire assented. But the settlers refused to acknowledge the sway under which they were thus abitrarily placed, and continued their resistance until 1791, when, New York having relinquished her claim on the payment to her of $30,000, Vermont was admitted into the Union, making the number of States *fourteen*.

4. THE NORTHWEST TERRITORY.—The western portion of several of the thirteen original States extended to the Mississippi River: their colonial charters, indeed, named the Atlantic Ocean as their eastern boundary, and the South Sea (the Pacific) as their western; but these limits were restricted by the treaty of 1783. One after another, these States surrendered their western territories to the general government, and, in 1787, the region north of the Ohio River was organized under the name of the *Northwest Territory*. From this territory five States have been successively formed: *Ohio*, in 1802; *Indiana*, in 1816; *Illinois*, in 1818; *Michigan*, in 1837; and *Wisconsin*, in 1848. (Read topic 237, App. p. 85.)

5. THE SOUTHWEST TERRITORY.—The region south of the Ohio, although never organized under one territorial government, was generally known as the *Southwest Territory*. From it have been formed four States: *Kentucky* (previously a part of Virginia), in 1792; *Tennessee* (previously a part of North Carolina), in 1796; *Mississippi*, in 1817; and *Alabama*, in 1819 (both the latter being previously a part of Georgia).

6. MAINE.—Maine, in 1783, was a district of Massachusetts, having been purchased in 1677 from the heirs

4. What were the original boundaries of the Northwest Territory? Give the previous history of that territory. What States have been formed from that territory?

5. What was the Southwest Territory? What States have been formed from it?

6. Was Maine one of the thirteen original States? Was Vermont? Give the early history of Maine.

Digitized by Google

of Gorges and Mason. Thus it remained till 1820, when it was organized and admitted as a State, in conformity with the formally expressed will of its inhabitants.

7. THE LOUISIANA PURCHASE.—Though the Spaniards, under De Soto, were the first to discover the Mississippi River, they made no attempts to explore it. This was first accomplished by the French, who traversed its entire length, and occupied certain portions of its valley on both sides, giving to the whole region the name of *Louisiana*, in honor of their king, Louis XIV. At the close of the French and Indian war (1763), France ceded to Great Britain all her American possessions east of the Mississippi and north of the Iberville River, having, in the preceding year, ceded to Spain all her possessions west of the Mississippi, and south of the Iberville.

8. The latter territory was retroceded to France in 1800, and, three years later (1803), was purchased by the United States for $15,000,000. From this vast region, which extended from the Mississippi River to the Rocky Mountains, besides the State of *Louisiana* (admitted in 1812), have been formed *Missouri* (1821), *Arkansas* (1836), *Iowa* (1846), *Minnesota* (1858), *Kansas** (1861), *Nebraska* (1867), *Colorado* (1876), and the territories of *Wyoming*, *Montana*, and *Dakota*, with a reservation for the Indians, known as the *Indian Territory*.* (See note, p. 157.)

9. FLORIDA.—This was a Spanish province up to 1763, when it was ceded to Great Britain in exchange for Cuba, which the English had recently taken from Spain. By the treaty of 1783 this province was given back to Spain, to which it continued to belong till 1819, when it was

7. Who discovered the Mississippi? Who explored it? What else did the French do? To what extent of territory did the French give the name of Louisiana? How did they dispose of the part west of the Mississippi? The part east?

8. How did we acquire the part west? What States and Territories have been formed from the part bought of France?

9. Give the early history of Florida. How did we acquire it?

* Except the part of Minnesota east of the Mississippi; and the small part of Kansas and the larger ones of Colorado and Wyoming acquired from Mexico in 1848.

Digitized by Google

ceded to the United States, on condition that the latter country would pay the claims of American citizens against Spain, to the amount of $5,000,000. Owing, however, to a delay on the part of Spain to ratify the treaty, the title to the territory was not acquired by the United States till 1821.

**10.** OREGON.—The entire region west of the Rocky Mountains, extending from latitude 42° to about 54°, was long known as Oregon. It was claimed by the United States, because, among other reasons, its principal river had been discovered by Captain Gray, of the ship Columbia, of Boston, in 1792, and because, during the administration of Jefferson, it was explored by Captains Lewis and Clark, who commanded an overland expedition sent out by the United States government. If, previous to 1819, Spain had possessed any title to this region, she abandoned it in that year; since, by a clause in the treaty ceding Florida, she relinquished all her "rights, claims, and pretensions" to such territory.

**11.** Great Britain also claimed Oregon until 1846, when, by treaty, the boundary line between the possessions of the two nations was fixed at the 49th parallel, thus settling a controversy which had lasted several years, and which, at one time, threatened to produce a war between the two countries. The region thus finally yielded to the United States was first organized as a territory, under the name of *Oregon*, but now includes the State of Oregon (admitted in 1859), and the territories of Washington and Idaho.

**12.** TEXAS.—This State was once a part of the Re-

**10.** What region was long known as Oregon? What gave the United States a right to claim it? How did the United States get a title from Spain?

**11.** What troubles did the United States have in relation to the ownership of Oregon? How were the troubles settled? What are the present divisions of Oregon?

**12.** Give the early history of Texas. How and when was it acquired by the United States?

Digitized by Google

public of Mexico, but, becoming dissatisfied with the Mexican rulers, the people revolted, and, in 1836, set up an independent government. In 1845 Texas was annexed to the United States.

**13.** CALIFORNIA, ETC.—The war with Mexico gave to the United States a vast region between Texas and the Pacific Ocean, which had previously belonged to the Mexican Republic. The conquest of this region having been effected during the war, its possession was confirmed by the treaty of Guadaloupe Hidalgo, made in 1848, as well as by a subsequent treaty, known as the "Gadsden Treaty," made in 1853. (See note p. 150.)

**14.** By the terms of the first treaty, the United States agreed to pay to Mexico $15,000,000, and to assume debts due from her to American citizens to the amount of $3,000,000. By the terms of the second treaty, the United States paid an additional sum of $10,000,000, in order to secure a more southerly boundary. From the region thus acquired from Mexico have been formed the States of California (1850) and Nevada (1864), and the territories of New Mexico, Arizona, and Utah.

**15.** ALASKA.—The territory of Alaska, formerly known as Russian America, was ceded to the United States by Russia in 1867 for $7,200,000. The name of Alaska having been given to it in the treaty, it has since retained it.

**16.** Thus has the national domain increased from time to time, spreading from one ocean to the other, and gradually enfolding within its embrace every district of country that lay as an obstacle to the mighty march of its destiny. That "league of love" which first only clasped

**13, 14.** What territory did we acquire from Mexico? How was it acquired? What States and territories have been formed from it?

**15.** By what name was Alaska formerly known? How did we acquire the territory?

**16.** State how and to what extent the national domain has been increased.

Digitized by Google

within its folds an empire of *thirteen* sister States, with an area of 800,000 square miles, has been found sufficiently expansive to permit the embrace of a vast realm of *thirty-eight* States and *ten* Territories, including altogether an area of more than 3,000,000 square miles.

## CIVIL PROGRESS OF THE NATION.

1. CIVIL PROGRESS OF THE NATION. POPULATION.—The first Census—that of 1790 showed a total population in the thirteen States, and the territory on each side of the Ohio River, of less than four millions (3,921,326). In the Northwest Territory the population was so small that no return was made. In the territory south of the Ohio, the number of inhabitants was only about 37,000. The city of Philadelphia, then the largest city of the Union, contained only a population of 43,525, that of New York being more than 10,000 less (33,131); Cincinnati, settled in 1788, was but a small hamlet (in 1805, its population was only 500); Boston contained only about 18,000; and New Orleans, then a French settlement, less than 8,000. The great western cities of the present day were scarcely dreamed of.

2. The population of the Union, as shown by the census of 1870, is nearly forty millions (38,558,371). There are fourteen cities, the population of each of which exceeds 100,000, and seven in which the population is in excess of 250,000. The Metropolis contains nearly one million of inhabitants, having grown, during our national existence, to that astonishing figure from the small

1. What was the population of the United States in 1790? What was then the population of Philadelphia? of New York? of Boston?
2. What was the population of the United States in 1870? What is said of fourteen cities? Of seven? New York? Cincinnati? Chicago? St. Louis?

Digitized by Google

number before mentioned; while Cincinnati has grown from 500 in 1805, to more than 216,000. Chicago, which, in 1831, contained only about a dozen families, before the great fire of 1871 had a population of 298,000. St. Louis, a small trading-village in 1803, when it came under the United States Government, now contains about 313,000 people, and is the fourth city of the Union, being exceeded only by New York, Philadelphia, and Brooklyn.

3. COMMERCE.—The commercial progress of the country has kept pace with the vast increase in its population, and the amazing growth of its cities. In 1790, the total exports from all the ports of the United States, amounted to about twenty millions of dollars, and the imports somewhat less; in 1870, the amount of exports was over five hundred millions; and the imports amounted to about six millions more than the exports. About two-thirds of all the imports of the United States arrive in New York, and about forty per cent. of all the exports are shipped from that port.

4. The tonnage of the United States has increased from 274,377, in 1790, to 4,253,149, in 1870; while the number of American vessels (registered or enrolled) has increased during the same period to 29,015, of which about 3,500 were steam-vessels. This is considerably less than the number reported previous to the Civil War, the total tonnage in, 1862–3, being more than 5,000,000. The vast increase in population on the borders of the Great Lakes, and along the great navigable rivers, has led to the establishment of an inland and domestic trade, of greater proportions than the foreign commerce, immense as that is. The chief items of this trade are coal and lumber; but the cereals also constitute a considerable part.

3. What is said in relation to the commercial progress of the country?
4. What, in relation to the increase in tonnage?



Digitized by Google

5. MANUFACTURES.—During the Colonial period, the manufacturing industry of the American people was repressed by penal statutes, the selfish policy of the British government dictating agricultural pursuits for the purpose of benefiting the commerce of the mother-country. Hence, a free market was opened to all the agricultural products, including the raw materials of manufacture; and sometimes bounties were offered to stimulate still further their production. This policy was peculiarly fitted to increase the prosperity of the Southern Colonies, while those of the North were scarcely able to subsist.

6. When, therefore, the nation commenced its existence, the manufacturing interests were of little importance, indeed, they had scarcely commenced to be developed. Before the war of 1812, nothing was accomplished on a great scale in this direction; the embargo, however, gave a great stimulus to this interest. Since that period, an amazing expansion has been reached in every department of manufactures, but especially in those of cottons, woollens, and iron,—the three great staples, in the first of which this country is now exceeded by Great Britain alone. The principal seats of this manufacture are in the New England States, Pennsylvania, and New York.

7. The general use of furnaces, stoves, etc., for heating purposes, the innumerable applications of machinery, as a substitute for human labor, and for the propulsion of land-carriages, as well as for the purposes of navigation, render the *iron manufacture* of great importance in this country, and, accordingly, it has developed into vast proportions. Its kindred department—*mining*—has, of course, kept equal pace with it.

5, 6. How was the manufacturing industry of the colonies repressed? What further is stated in respect to manufactures?
7. What is stated of the manufacture of iron and of mining?

Digitized by Google

8. SHIP-BUILDING.—The first vessel built in New England was built in Medford, Massachusetts, for Governor Winthrop. She was launched on the fourth of July, 1631, and was called the "Blessing of the Bay,"—a name which indicated, in anticipation, the great benefits which that section of our country was to experience from this department of industry. Up to the commencement of the Civil War (1861) this branch of labor was among the most flourishing in the country; but the operations of Confederate cruisers, aided, as they were, by British influence and support, had the effect to paralyze this, as well as every other branch of industry dependent upon navigation. (Read topic 238, App. p. 85.)

9. PRINTING AND BOOK-PUBLISHING.—Under our system of free government and free schools, the various pursuits connected with the printing and publication of newspapers, books, etc., have reached a condition of great activity and extent. The wide-spread demand for information has stimulated the application of science and art in this branch of industry to the highest degree. The processes in use for the purpose, a century ago, would be at the present time comparatively valueless. One of the earliest inventions for improving the old printing-press was the *Columbian press*, invented by George Clymer of Philadelphia, in 1818; and more recently the powerful cylinder presses constructed by Richard M. Hoe, of New York, have rendered it possible to keep pace with the daily demand for newspapers and books. By the cylinder press worked by steam, in connection with the stereotype process, as many as 40,000 impressions of a newspaper can be taken in an hour.

10. AGRICULTURE.—This, the leading pursuit of our

8. What history can you give of ship-building?
9. State what you can of printing and book-publishing.
10. What is the leading pursuit of our country? By what means has agriculture made rapid strides?

Digitized by Google

country during its entire history, has made vast and rapid strides, both in processes and results, since the commencement of our national union. The great demand for labor has furnished very strong inducements for the invention and use of labor-saving machinery and implements, and the ingenuity of the American people has been strikingly illustrated by its innumerable achievements in this direction. Of these the cultivator, the mowing-machine, the reaper, the horse-rake, the threshing-machine, etc., are examples. Steam has been applied to the working of many of these implements; and, in this way, the work of one man is often made more effective than that of a hundred a century ago.

**11.** In the northern sections of the country, the chief staples are the cereal grains, maize, wheat, rye, oats, barley, etc., together with potatoes and hay. In the South, cotton, rice, sugar, and tobacco take the lead. The increase in the production of these various articles since the formation of our government has been amazing. In 1790, the cotton raised amounted to less than 250,000 pounds; while in 1860, just previous to the great Civil War, the quantity cultivated reached the extraordinary amount of more than 2,000,000,000 pounds, or nearly 4,000,000 of bales. In 1870, the crop amounted to a little over one billion and three-quarters of pounds (1,767,000,000 lbs.) Mississippi occupies the first place as a cotton-growing State.*

**12.** CANALS.—In 1827, Edward Everett thus spoke of the internal improvements of that period: "A system of internal improvements has been commenced, which will have the effect, when a little further developed, of crowding within a few years the progress of generations. Already Lake Champlain from the north, and Lake Erie

* The invention of the cotton-gin by Eli Whitney, in 1792, gave so vast an impulse to the cultivation of cotton, that the event constitutes an epoch in the history of the country.

**11.** Staples in the northern sections? Southern? Cotton?
**12.** Repeat, in substance, what Everett stated in 1827.

Digitized by Google

from the west, have been connected with Albany. The Delaware and Chesapeake Bays have been united. A canal is nearly finished in the upper part of New Jersey, from the Delaware to the Hudson, by which coal is already dispatched to our market. Another route is laid out, across the same state, to connect New York by a railroad with Philadelphia. A water communication has been opened, by canals, half-way from Philadelphia to Pittsburgh. Considerable progress is made, both on the railroad and the canal, which are to unite both Baltimore and Washington with the Ohio River. A canal of sixty miles in length is open, from Cincinnati to Dayton, in the State of Ohio; and another, of more than three hundred miles in extent, to connect Lake Erie with the Ohio, is two-thirds completed."

**13.** The various enterprises here alluded to have all been completed. The *Grand Erie Canal*, in the State of New York, was opened in 1824, but not entirely completed till 1825. This magnificent public improvement owed its success to the genius of De Witt Clinton,* and contributed in a very great degree to make New York City what it is at present—the great emporium of the country. It is 363 miles in length, and was first estimated to cost $5,000,000. Since its completion, in 1825, it has been considerably enlarged. The total length of canals in the United States, in 1854, was nearly 5,000 miles; but since that period few undertakings of this kind, of any magnitude, have been commenced, their use as a means of communication having been superseded by the construction of railroads. Extensive river improvements have also been accomplished in many parts of the country.

**13.** What is stated of the Grand Erie Canal? Of canals in the United States?

* De Witt Clinton was born in March, 1769, and was the son of General James Clinton, of Orange County, New York. He was mayor of the city of New York ten years; and was elected governor of the State in 1817, and again in 1820 and 1826. His death occurred in February, 1828.

Digitized by Google

**14.** RAILROADS.—The first great internal improvement in this country was the Philadelphia and Pittsburg Turnpike, which was completed near the close of the last century. The Cumberland Road, subsequently called the GREAT NATIONAL ROAD, had its origin in an appropriation of $30,000 by Congress, in 1806, for the construction of a road over the Alleghany mountains, from Cumberland, in Maryland, to the Ohio River. Other appropriations for the construction of this road were made from time to time; and in 1820 it had been completed to Wheeling, at an expense of $1,700,000. Subsequently it was extended to Springfield, Ohio, and partially undertaken in Indiana and Illinois; but being superseded by railways, it was never completed to the extent at one time contemplated.

**15.** The first railroads constructed in the United States were the Quincy Railroad, used to transport granite from the quarries of Quincy, Massachusetts (1826), and the Mauch Chunk Railroad, for the conveyance of coal from the mines at that place to the Lehigh River in Pennsylvania (1827). The rapid construction of railroads in every part of the country since that time presents a very striking evidence of the activity and enterprise of the people, and the civil progress of the nation.

**16.** In 1848, the number of miles of completed railways amounted to 6,000; in 1860, this had increased to nearly 31,000, the construction and equipment of which cost more than one billion of dollars ($1,151,560,289). In 1870, it had further increased to more than 53,000.

Of all the enterprises of this character, the Pacific Railroad is the most stupendous. This road extends from Omaha in Nebraska to San Francisco, and connects with the great lines from the east, bringing the great

14. Give the history of the Cumberland Road.
15. Which were the first railroads in this country?
16, 17. What further can you state in relation to railroads in this country?

Digitized by Google

eastern cities within a week's journey from San Francisco. It is 1,913 miles long between the two points above mentioned. This great undertaking was completed in 1869. Other railroads are also in contemplation across the western part of the country to the Pacific Ocean. The Northern Pacific, already commenced, has its eastern terminus at Lake Superior (Duluth), and its western at Puget's Sound, in Washington Territory.

17. Thus are the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans bound together by an iron band, by means of which, in connection with the Trans-Pacific lines of steamships, China, India, and Japan are brought within a few weeks' travel of the great American marts, and the rich products of those realms are poured into them in boundless profusion. New sources of enterprise and wealth are also developed in our own country by the same means, and additional incentives offered for settlement in the wild and uncultivated, but richly endowed, regions of our widely-extended domain.

18. Telegraphs.—The demand for the rapid communication of intelligence was by no means supplied by the locomotive and railroad; and the agency of electricity has been brought in to supplement the deficiencies of steam. The invention of the electro-magnetic telegraph is due to Prof. Morse, who, in 1844, erected the first line, between Baltimore and Washington, a distance of forty miles. This line was extended northward, through Philadelphia and New York, to Boston, in 1845. From this comparatively small beginning a vast system of telegraphic lines has been constructed, by means of which all the great centres of trade and population in the world have been brought into instantaneous communication. In 1850, the length of telegraph lines in the United States

18. What is said in relation to telegraphs?

Digitized by Google

was 23,281 miles; in 1854, it had increased to 41,392 miles; and in 1858, to more than 50,000 miles. At this present time it cannot be less than 100,000 miles.

**19.** ATLANTIC TELEGRAPH.—The first successful submarine telegraph was laid in 1851, across Dover Strait, connecting Dover and Calais. Three unsuccessful attempts to establish a telegraphic cable across the Atlantic Ocean were made in 1857, 1858, and 1865. In the first and last of these the cable parted and was partially lost; in the second it was laid, but almost immediately failed to convey signals. A fourth attempt, in 1866, proved entirely successful. The success of this gigantic enterprise, persisted in under so many discouragements, was due to the untiring energy of Cyrus W. Field. The successful cable of 1866 was laid by the *Great Eastern*, the largest steam-vessel ever constructed. She was built in London, and made her first trip in 1859. The Atlantic cable is about 2,600 miles long, and contains no less than 25,000 miles of copper wire in the conductor, 35,000 miles of iron wire in the outside covering, and upward of 400,000 miles of strands of hemp, more than enough in all to go twenty-four times round the world. Its strength is sufficient to bear a strain of nearly twenty-eight tons.

**20.** EDUCATION.—The establishment of Common Schools, in which all classes could be educated, has been a distinguishing feature in the civil progress of the country. Several of the States have inserted in their Constitutions articles requiring the maintenance of public schools. In New England, the principle has been ever avowed and sustained, that it is the right and duty of government to

---

**19.** When and where was the first successful submarine telegraph laid? What farther can you state in relation to telegraph cables?

**20.** What constitutional requirements, as regards public schools, have been made by several States? What principle has been sustained in New England?

Digitized by Google

provide the means for the instruction of the youth of all classes of society in the elements of learning. Other States have adopted this principle. In Massachusetts, by statute enacted in 1647, "each town, consisting of fifty householders, was directed to maintain a school to teach their children to read and write, and every town of one hundred families was to maintain a grammar school to fit youth for college." In the early history of Connecticut, similar laws were passed.

**21.** It has been uniformly a part of the land system of the United States to provide for public schools. In the organization of territories and the admission of States, the condition has often been imposed, that a part of each township should be permanently applied for the use or support of such schools. In nearly all the States, there is a large fund devoted to the support of common schools, under provisions of State law. The special instruction of teachers has become a prominent feature in the educational systems of most of the States. Several of the States have a Normal School fund. In most of the Slave-States, popular education was greatly neglected; but since the close of the Civil War, strenuous efforts have been made in many of the southern States to provide the means of educating all classes, including the children of the freedmen. The High Schools and Colleges of the country have also attained a high rank for scholarship and efficiency of education.

**22.** LITERATURE.—During the colonial period, America gained no prominence in any department of literary effort, except, perhaps, that of *theology*, religious disputation almost absorbing the intellectual energies of the

21. What is stated of the government land system in connection with public schools? What condition has often been imposed? What is stated of common school funds? Normal school fund?

22. What is stated of American literature during the colonial period? Of Jonathan Edwards? Of American oratory?



Digitized by Google

age. Jonathan Edwards, by the publication of his masterly "Treatise on the Will," at once secured for himself the respectful attention of thinkers in the mother-country; several of his sermons were republished in England. This distinguished man died in 1786. Since that time American literature has been enriched by many works of genius in almost every department. In oratory, no nation can claim to have surpassed the United States; and the speeches of Webster, Clay, and Everett will ever remain as monuments of the literary culture, as well as clearness and power of reasoning of those distinguished men. These are but the *bright stars* in a cluster of brilliant names.

**23.** Irving's writings were the first to make American literature popular abroad; their genial spirit, inimitable humor, and elegant style attracting all classes of readers. In history, independently of what has been done to illustrate specially the annals of every part of our own country by a host of worthy writers, the works of Bancroft, Hildreth, Prescott, and Motley, have given our literature a high rank. In fiction, Cooper won for himself, by his "Leather-stocking Tales," a very decided pre-eminence; but Hawthorne, as a literary artist, is doubtless decidedly superior. Paulding, Simms, Kennedy, Neal, Brown, and Poe occupy conspicuous places in this field of literary effort.

**24.** The effusions of American poets have deservedly obtained very high commendation and favor. These writers are a legion in number; and in this brief sketch, even a partial enumeration is impossible. The two most prolific branches of American literature are educational works and journalism, in both of which the country has attained a rank which, without doubt, will compare favorably with that of any other nation.

**23.** Of Irving's writings? In relation to history? Fiction?
**24.** Poets and poetry? Educational works and journalism?

Digitized by Google

# SLAVERY IN THE UNITED STATES.

**1.** INDIAN SLAVERY.—Slavery, in one shape or another, began in America with the first explorations made by the Europeans. The first victims were the Indians. Even Columbus made captives of the friendly natives he found on the islands he had discovered, five hundred of whom he sent to Spain to be sold. His brother, Bartholomew, sent three hundred. All the early Spanish explorers made slaves of the Indians. On the coast of Carolina, DeAyllon enticed as many as possible on board his two vessels, and with this supply of laborers for the plantations and mines of St. Domingo, treacherously took his departure (¶ 10, p. 11). De Soto killed or enslaved the Indians who opposed him, as well as hundreds who did not oppose him. This practice, by no means, was confined to the Spaniards. The English were also guilty of it. Thomas Hunt, commanding one of Smith's vessels that visited the New England coast, kidnaped several Indians and sold them in Europe (¶ 21, p. 23). The Pequod war, as we know, resulted in the total destruction of the Pequods as a tribe, but the few survivors who were not able to find refuge in other tribes, or were not sent to the West Indies and sold, were held as slaves in their own country, and so kept till death released them (¶ 38, p. 30). How sad was the fate of King Philip; but sadder by far was the fate of his son, who was sold as a slave in Bermuda.

**2.** SLAVERY IN THE COLONIES.—Negro slavery was introduced into the West India islands long before the Dutch ship, in 1619, sailed up the James river, and landed twenty Africans (¶ 13, p. 21). The fact should be noted that, two years after this event, cotton-seed was, for the first time, planted at the South, for the growth of slav-

Digitized by Google

ery and the culture of the cotton plant were closely connected. Tobacco was already (in 1621) very extensively grown, and was then produced entirely by slave labor. For several years, only a few cargoes of negroes were brought to the colonies, and these came in Dutch ships; but, encouraged by the English, companies for carrying on the trade were formed, and even ships built and owned in New England were engaged in the business. In the course of time every one of the thirteen colonies had slaves. Some of the colonies remonstrated against the trade; but what could this avail so long as the English government favored the trade, and the king himself profited by the gains? In 1750 there were about two thousand slaves in Massachusetts; in New York city about a sixth of the population were slaves; in the tobacco-growing colonies, Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina, a third were slaves; in South Carolina, where rice was the principal production, there were more slaves than free persons.

**3.** The Continental Congress, after the adoption of the Declaration of Independence, resolved that no more slaves should be imported; but the Constitution of the United States, which went into operation thirteen years later, permitted such importation until the year 1808. Thenceforth no more slaves could be brought into the country (See the Const., App., p. 22). Previous to the adoption of the Constitution, Congress passed an act which is commonly known as the "Ordinance of 1787." This prohibited slavery in all the territory north-west of the Ohio river (App., p. 77, topic 212). Massachusetts was the first State to abolish slavery; then the other Northern States, one after another, most of them by a system of gradual emancipation, followed the example. Though no more slaves were brought to the country, slaves continued to be bought and sold at the South as before.

Digitized by Google

**4.** THE COTTON-GIN.—Slave labor at the North was not profitable. The climate was cold, the soil rocky. But in the sunny and luxurious South the African, it may be said, was at home. The culture of rice, tobacco, and cotton, it was claimed, afforded the very kind of labor he could best perform. Yet the whole business in the interior of the Southern States was in a languishing condition, and the discouraged inhabitants were beginning to leave for the promising West. They were cultivating cotton in small quantities, but it was difficult to separate the fibre from its seed. The work was slow, because it was all done by hand. A great change just then was about to take place—a wonderful change. Eli Whitney, of Massachusetts, went to Georgia and invented the cotton-gin. To the planter the invention at once opened the way to employment, wealth, and respectability: it set the whole South in motion. The difficulty of separating the cotton from its seed was removed. Not a pound of cotton had been exported from the United States in 1792. In 1793 the gin was invented. In 1794, one million five hundred thousand pounds of cotton were sent to Europe. Slavery thrived and "cotton was king."

**5.** THE MISSOURI COMPROMISE.—When Maine applied for admission to the Union the number of States was twenty-two, and as these were equally divided, eleven of them being slave States and eleven free, the southern members of Congress, unwilling that the North should have the control in the Senate, objected to the admission (App., p. 14). Just then the people of Missouri took measures to form a State government, and also applied for admission to the Union; but, as they possessed slaves, they wanted Missouri to be admitted without any conditions against slavery. After an angry discussion, lasting through months, Maine was admitted (1820). The contest, however, was at once renewed, for the people of

Digitized by Google

the North, who were opposed to any increase of the number of slave States, were not willing to welcome Missouri with its Constitution permitting slavery. At length an important measure, known as the "Missouri Compromise," was adopted. By this it was agreed that, with the exception of Missouri, slavery should never be allowed to exist in any part of the territory of the United States west of the Mississippi, north of latitude 36° 30′. Missouri was then admitted (p. 136).

**6.** The Wilmot Proivso.—This agreement, the "Missouri Compromise," was observed for a third of a century; still the slavery question cropped out from time to time, "abolition societies" became numerous, and when Texas, a slave State and former province of Mexico, asked to be admitted to the Union, the application, though stoutly resisted by most of the northern members of Congress, was finally granted (¶ 26, p. 141). The annexation of Texas led to a war with Mexico, and this resulted in the cession to the United States of a large part of the Mexican territory. As slavery in Mexico had been abolished more than twenty years, the territory thus acquired was "free soil." In anticipation of this acquisition, Mr. Wilmot, for himself and other members of Congress from the free States, had offered an addition to the Mexican treaty, which soon became known as the "Wilmot Proviso." The object of this proviso was to preserve forever as free soil the territory to be acquired (App., p. 78).

**7.** The Compromise of 1850.—Though the "Wilmot Proviso" did not meet with complete success in Congress, it became the foundation-stone of the "Free Soilers," whose party cry (in 1848), with ex-president Van Buren as their presidential candidate, was "Free Soil, Free Speech, Free Labor, and Free Men;" and who, themselves, became the founders of the Republican party, that (in 1856) gave John C. Fremont more than a mill-

Digitized by Google

ion of votes to make him president (¶ 59, p. 152), and, four years later, put Lincoln at the head of the nation. California, a part of the territory acquired from Mexico, soon had a large population, and the people, opposed to slavery, sought admission to the Union. The application being resisted by Calhoun and other champions of the slave cause, a violent controversy followed, which ended in an agreement known as the "Compromise of 1850." This compromise abolished the slave trade in the District of Columbia, enacted the "Fugitive Slave Law," and admitted California as a free State (¶ 55, p. 151). Texas had claimed the entire territory west of her present limits, as far as the Rio Grande: by the compromise just adopted this claim was relinquished to the general government, on the payment to the State of ten millions of dollars (See map facing p. 189).

**8.** Repeal of the Compromise of 1820.—The lull was of short duration. Four years later the "Slavery Question" was revived in Congress, by the passage of the "Kansas-Nebraska Bill." This law repealed the "Compromise of 1820," a compact that had been regarded as sacred, and made for all time. Then came a fierce and bloody struggle between the North and the South for the mastery in Kansas, a struggle in which John Brown took an important part, and which resulted in a victory to the North, and ultimately in the admission of Kansas as a free State (¶ 57, p. 151, and p. 157).

**9.** The Dred Scott Case.—A decision made by the Supreme Court of the United States, in 1856, added fuel to the flame that was burning at the time. This was made public directly after the inauguration of Buchanan (¶ 2, p. 157). Dred Scott, a negro slave, had been taken by his owner from Missouri, a slave State, to a free State, and thence to the free territory west of the Mississippi.

Digitized by Google

Finally, his master returned with him to Missouri. Believing that, as he had been taken to the territory, where, under the "Compromise of 1820," it had been declared that slavery should never have any existence—had been taken there before the repeal of the compromise,—he was thus no longer legally a slave, he brought a suit for his freedom, and obtained a judgment in his favor. A higher court, however, soon reversed the decision, and the case, on appeal, was taken to the Supreme Court of the United States. Again the decision was against Scott. Chief Justice Taney, in behalf of a majority of the court, declared that for more than a century previous to the adoption of the Constitution of the United States, negroes, whether slaves or free, had been regarded as "so far inferior to the white race, that they had no rights which the white man was bound to respect."

**10.** EMANCIPATION.—The election of Lincoln to the presidency, as the struggle in Kansas was drawing to a close, was followed by the secession movement, on the part of South Carolina and other Southern States, and by the Great Civil War (pp. 157–172). In the midst of the war Lincoln put forth his memorable proclamation, declaring the slaves in all the States and districts at war with the national government to be forever free (¶ 54, p. 172). To give perfect validity to this declaration, and to make complete the abolition of slavery in every part of the land, the thirteenth amendment to the Constitution was adopted directly after the close of the war, but not before the death of Lincoln (¶ 87, p. 183). Thus, after an existence of nearly two hundred and fifty years—commencing in 1619, when a Dutch ship landed twenty Africans on the banks of the James, and ending when the issues of the Great Civil War set free nearly four millions of negroes—was slavery declared to have no longer an existence within the United States.

Digitized by Google

## CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

1857. James Buchanan was inaugurated president.....March 4.
1858. Minnesota was admitted into the Union.....May 11.
1859. Oregon was admitted into the Union.....Feb. 14.
John Brown made a raid into Virginia.....Oct. 16.
1860. South Carolina passed a secession ordinance.....Dec. 20.
Anderson withdrew from Ft. Moultrie to Ft. Sumter. Dec. 26.
1861. Mississippi (Jan. 9), Florida (Jan. 10), Alabama (Jan. 11), Georgia (Jan. 19), Louisiana (Jan. 26), Texas (Feb. 1), Virginia (April 17), Arkansas (May 6), Tennessee (May 7), and North Carolina (May 20), passed secession ordinances.
Kansas was admitted into the Union .....Jan. 29.
The "Southern Confederacy" was formed.....Feb.
Davis became "President of the Confederacy".....Feb. 18.
Lincoln was inaugurated president of the U. States...Mar. 4.
The Confederates attacked Fort Sumter.....April 12, 13.
President Lincoln called for 75,000 troops.....April 15.
Davis offered letters of marque and reprisal.....April 17.
Lincoln proclaimed a blockade of Southern ports...April 19.
Volunteer troops were attacked in Baltimore.....April 19.
England (May 13), France (June 10), Spain (June 17), and Portugal (July 29), acknowledged the Confederate states as belligerents.
The Confederates were routed at Philippi.....June 3.
Union troops were repulsed at Big Bethel.....June 10.
The Confederates were routed at Booneville.....June 17.
The United States Congress met in extra session.....July 4.
The Confederates were victorious at Carthage.....July 5.
The Confederates were routed at Rich Mountain....July 11.
The Union army was routed at Bull Run.....July 21.
The Confederates gained a victory at Wilson's Creek. Aug. 10.
A Union force captured the forts at Hatteras Inlet..Aug. 29.
Lexington, Mo., was surrendered to the Confederates. Sep. 20.
The Confederates gained a victory at Ball's Bluff....Oct. 21.
A Union force captured forts at Port Royal entrance. Nov. 7.
The Confederates were victorious at Belmont..... Nov. 7.

Digitized by Google

1861. Mason and Slidell were taken from a Br. steamer....Nov. 8.
1862. The Confederates were defeated at Mill Spring.....Jan. 19.
Fort Henry was captured by a fleet of U. S. gunboats.Feb. 6.
A Union force captured Roanoke Island.....Feb. 8.
Fort Donelson was captured by the Unionists.....Feb. 16.
The Confederates were defeated at Pea Ridge.....March 8.
The Merrimac destroyed two U. S. vessels .....Mar. 8
Engagement between the Monitor and Merrimac...March 9.
The Unionists captured Newbern..... .....March 14.
The Confederates were defeated at Winchester....March 23.
The Unionists gained a victory at Shiloh .....April 7.
Island No. 10 was captured by the Unionists.....April 7.
Fort Pulaski was surrendered to the Unionists.....April 11.
New Orleans was captured by the Unionists.....April 25.
The Confederates retreated from Williamsburg.....May 5.
The battle of Fair Oaks was fought.....May 31, June 1.
Memphis surrendered to the Unionists..... ...June 6.
"The Seven days' contest before Richmond"..June 25–July 1.
The battle of Cedar Mountain was fought.....Aug. 9.
Battles between Manassas and Washington.....Aug. 23–30.
The Confederates were victorious at Richmond, Ky.Aug. 30.
The Confederates, under Lee, invaded Maryland.....Sept. 5.
Lee's army was defeated at South Mountain.....Sept. 14.
Harper's Ferry surrendered to the Confederates.....Sept. 15.
Lee's army was defeated at Antietam.....Sept. 17.
The Unionists were victorious at Iuka..... ..Sept. 19.
The Confederates were repulsed at Corinth.....Oct. 4.
The Unionists gained the battle of Perryville.....Oct. 8.
The Confederates gained a victory at Fredericksburg.Dec. 13.
1863. Lincoln issued the Emancipation Proclamation.....Jan. 1.
The Confederates captured Galveston .... .....Jan. 1.
The Unionists gained a victory at Murfreesboro.....Jan. 2.
The Unionists captured Arkansas Post .....Jan. 11.
The Confederates were defeated at Port Gibson.....May 1.
The Unionists were defeated at Chancellorsville.....May 3.
West Virginia was admitted into the Union .....June 20.
Lee made his second invasion of Maryland.....June 21.
The Union army was victorious at Gettysburg.....July 3.
Vicksburg was surrendered to the Unionists.....July 4.
Port Hudson was surrendered to the Unionists.....July 8.
The great riot in New York occurred.....July 13–16.

Digitized by Google

1863. Morgan made a raid into Indiana and Ohio.....July.
The Confederates were victorious at Chickamauga..Sept. 20.
The Unionists gained a victory at Chattanooga.....Nov. 25.
The Confederates were repulsed before Knoxville...Nov. 29.
1864. The Unionists were defeated at Olustee.....Feb. 20
Grant was appointed Lieutenant-General.....March 3.
Grant was appointed to command the U. S. armies..Mar. 12.
The Red River Expedition was made.....March and April.
The Confederates captured Fort Pillow.....April 12.
The Army of the Potomac began a forward movement. May 3.
The battle of the Wilderness was fought.....May 5, 6.
Sherman began his march against Atlanta.....May 7.
The battles near Spottsylvania were fought.....May 9–21.
The Unionists were routed near New Market.....May 15.
The Confederates were defeated at Piedmont.....June 5.
The Kearsarge met and sunk the Alabama.....June 19.
The Confederates, under Early, invaded Maryland...July 4.
The Confederates gained a victory at the Monocacy..July 9.
Sherman gained victories before Atlanta.....July 20, 22, 28.
Chambersburg was sacked and partly burned.....July 30.
The Unionists exploded a mine before Petersburg...July 30.
The Unionists gained a victory in Mobile Bay.....Aug. 5.
Sherman captured Atlanta.....Sept. 2.
The Confederates were defeated at Winchester.....Sept. 19.
The Confederates were routed at Fisher's Hill.....Sept. 22.
The Unionists were victorious at Cedar Creek.....Oct. 19.
Nevada was admitted into the Union.....Oct. 31.
The Confederates were repulsed at Franklin.....Nov. 30.
The Unionists gained a victory at Nashville.....Dec. 16.
Savannah was occupied by Sherman's army.....Dec. 21.
1865. Union troops and fleet captured Fort Fisher.....Jan. 15.
Sherman captured Columbia.....Feb. 17.
Charleston was occupied by Union troops.....Feb. 18.
Wilmington was captured by Union troops.....Feb. 22.
The Freedmen's Bureau Bill became a law.....March 3.
The Unionists were victorious at Averysboro.....March 16.
The Confederates were routed at Bentonville.....March 20.
Union troops occupied Petersburg and Richmond...April 3.
Lee surrendered to Grant.....April 9.
President Lincoln was assassinated.....April 14.
Andrew Johnson was inaugurated president.....April 15.

Digitized by Google

1865. Gen. J. E. Johnston surrendered to Sherman.. ...April 26
Jefferson Davis was captured. ..... ..... .....May 10.
Slavery was declared constitutionally abolished.....Dec. 18.
1866. Congress passed 2d F's Bureau Bill over veto .....July 16.
1867. Nebraska was admitted into the Union. . . .....March 1.
Congress passed Reconstruction Bill over veto... .March 2.
Congress passed Tenure-of-Office Bill over veto....March 2.
Alaska was purchased for $7,200,000 .....June 20.
1868. The House of Repre'tives impeached Pres't Johnson.Feb. 24.
The president's trial was commenced in the Senate..Mar. 30.
He was acquitted on the eleventh article.....May 16.
He was acquitted on two other articles.....May 26.
Stanton resigned as secretary of war.....May 26.
The 14th Amendment was declared adopted.....July 28.
1869. Ulysses S. Grant was inaugurated president.....March 4.
1870. The 15th Amendment was declared adopted.....
1871. The "Alabama Treaty" was concluded.....May 8.
The great fire of Chicago occurred.... .....Oct. 8, 9, 10.
1876. The Centennial Anniversary of American Independence was celebrated.
The "World's Fair" in Philadelphia...May 10 to Nov. 10.
Colorado was admitted into the Union.....Aug. 1.
1877. Rutherford B. Hayes was inaugurated president..March 5.
1877. A fishery treaty was made with Great Britain.....Nov. 23.
1879. The banks and government resumed specie payments. Jan. 1.
1880. A treaty was made with China.
1881. James A. Garfield was inaugurated president.....March 4.
The death of Garfield occurred.....Sept. 19.
Chester A. Arthur became president.....Sept. 20.

Digitized by Google

## REVIEW QUESTIONS.


PAGE

1. Give the history of the slavery question .... 21, 136, 141, 150, 151, 152. 157, 158
2. Give the account of John Brown's raid ..... 157
3. State the circumstances attending Lincoln's election ..... 157, 158
4. Give the facts in relation to the history of Fort Sumter ..... 158–160
5. How many and what states passed secession ordinances? ..... 186
6. Give the history of the formation of the Southern Confederacy ..... 158
7. What property did the Confederates take possession of? ..... 159
8. What is said in connection with Lincoln's inauguration? ..... 159
9. What, in connection with his inaugural address? ..... 159
10. What three proclamations were issued in April, 1861? ..... 160
11. What occurred during that month in Baltimore? ..... 160
12. How did the United States lose Harper's Ferry and Norfolk? ..... 160, 161
13. What movement was made by order of General Scott? ..... 161
14. Give the particulars in relation to the battle of Bull Run ..... 161, 162
15. In relation to McClellan's campaign in West Virginia ..... 162
16. In relation to Lyon's successes, his defeat and death ..... 162, 163
17. In relation to Mulligan's defence and surrender ..... 163
18. What followed, connected with Fremont, Hunter, and Halleck? ..... 163
19. Give the particulars of Baker's defeat at Ball's Bluff ..... 163
20. Of the coast expedition to North Carolina ..... 163
21. Of the coast expedition to South Carolina ..... 163, 164
22. Of the capture and release of Mason and Slidell ..... 164
23. Of the unfriendly action taken by England and France ..... 164
24. Give the history of the steamer Sumter ..... 164
25. How was the U. S. Navy increased and employed during 1861? ..... 164, 166
26. What changes in money matters took place in 1861? ..... 166
27. Name the important events of 1861 ..... 166, 167
28. What preparations were made as regards the Mississippi? ..... 166
29. Give an account of Thomas's victory at Mill Spring ..... 166
30. Of Commodore Foote's success against Fort Henry ..... 166
31. Of Grant's success at Fort Donelson ..... 166, 167
32. Of the success of the expedition against Roanoke ..... 167
33. Of events in Arkansas during March, 1862 ..... 167
34. Of events at and near Hampton Roads, March 8th and 9th ..... 167, 168
35. What two successes did General Pope gain in the West? ..... 168
36. What success did Com. Davis have soon after? ..... 168
37. Give a full account of the battle of Shiloh ..... 168, 169
38. What did General Halleck do after the battle? ..... 169
39. To what position was General Halleck then called? ..... 169
40. Give an account of the capture of New Orleans ..... 169
41. Of Rosecrans's two victories—Iuka and Corinth ..... 169
42. Of Bragg's march through Tennessee and Kentucky ..... 169, 170
43. What new organization of military departments was made? ..... 170
44. How did McClellan begin his Peninsular Campaign? ..... 170
45. What success did he have at Yorktown and Williamsburg? ..... 170
46. Give some account of General Wool ..... 145, 170
47. Give an account of the battle of Fair Oaks ..... 170, 171


Digitized by Google

PAGE

48. Give an account of Banks's escape from capture ..... 171
49. Give an account of the "Seven Days' Battle before Richmond"..... 171
50. What change did Lincoln make in army organizations? ..... 171
51. Give an account of the contest between Lee and Pope.....171, 172
52. What movement did Lee then make?..... 172
53. Give an account of the battle of South Mountain ..... 172
54. Of the loss (for the second time) of Harper's Ferry..... 172
55. Of the battle of Antietam, and Lee's retreat..... 172
56. Of McClellan's subsequent movements and loss of command..... .... 172
57. Of Burnside's attempt to reach Richmond ..... 172
58. Name, in order, the important events of 1862..... 187
59. What important event occurred on the 1st of January, 1863?..... 172
60. State what took place at Galveston on that day ..... 173
61. Give an account of Rosecrans's victory at Murfreesboro..... 173
62. Of the capture by Union forces of Arkansas Post ..... 173
63. Give an account of the battle of Chancellorsville ..... 173
64. What march and pursuit a month afterward took place? ..... 173
65. Give an account of the battle of Gettysburg ..... 173
66. Give an account of Grant's success on the Mississippi..... 175
67. Give an account of Banks's success at Port Hudson ..... 175
68. Of the entire contest for the Mississippi ..... .....166, 168, 169, 175
69. Give an account of the battle of Chickamauga Creek..... 175
70. Give an account of the battle of Chattanooga..... 175
71. Give a sketch of Rosecrans's military career.....169, 170, 175
72. Give a sketch of Burnside's military career.....167, 172, 173, 175
73. Give an account of Morgan's raid into Indiana and Ohio .....175, 176
74. Give an account, with the cause, of the riot in New York City..... 176
75. What service did the navy render during the year 1863?..... 176
76. In what case, and why, was not the blockade successful? ..... 176
77. Give the early history of the state of West Virginia ..... 176
78. Name, in order, the important events of 1863.....187, 188
79. What disaster befell the Unionists in Florida? .....176, 177
80. Give the full account of the Red River expedition..... 177
81. Give the full account of Forrest's raid in the West..... 177
82. What two extensive campaigns were planned? . . . ..... 177
83. Give an account of the contest between Sherman and Johnston .....177, 178
84. Give an account of the contest between Sherman and Hood..... 178
85. Of events from the 4th to the 7th of May with the army of the Potomac 178
86. Of the battles of Spottsylvania, North Anna, and Cold Harbor.....178, 179
87. What movement did Meade afterward make? ..... 179
88. What attempts were made to capture Petersburg? ..... 179
89. Give a sketch of Sigel's military career .....162, 167, 179
90. Give an account of Early's invasion of Maryland..... 179
91. Give a full account of the contest between Sheridan and Early..... 180
92. Give an account of Sherman's march from Atlanta to Savannah ..... 180
93. Give a full account of the contest between Thomas and Hood.... ...180, 181
94. Give, in full, the history of the Confederate steamer Alabama... ....164, 181
95. What did Admiral Farragut accomplish during the war?.....169, 181
96. What was done by General Butler during the war?... ...161, 168, 169, 179, 181
97. Name the important events of 1864..... 188

Digitized by Google

PAGE
98. Give an account of the failure and success at Fort Fisher.... ..... 181
99. Give an account of Sherman's march from Savannah.... ... .....181, 182
100. Of his whole march from Chattanooga .....177, 178, 180, 181, 182
101. Give an account of the closing military events of the war ..... 182
102. Give an account of the events of April 14th, 15th, and 16th .....182, 212
103. Give an account of the other events of that month... ... ..182, 183, 207, 208
104. Give an account of the other events of the year 1865.....183, 207, 208
105. Give the important military events in Grant's life..163, 166, 168, 175, 177-182
106. Name, in order, the important events of 1865 ..... 207, 208
107. State all the facts in connection with the Freedmen's Bureau Bills...183, 207
108. All, in connection with the subject of "Reconstructing the Union".. 184
109. All, in relation to the Tenure-of-Office Bill ..... ..... ..... 184
110. What can you state of Nebraska and Alaska? ..... .. . ..... 184
111. Give the facts relating to Stanton's suspension from office.....184, 185
112. Relate the events which grew out of the suspension ..... 185
113. Give the facts in relation to Grant's election to the presidency..... 186
114. Give the history and import of the 14th Amendment to the Constitution.....186, App., p. 39
115. The history and import of the 15th Amendment.....186, App., p. 41
116. State what you can in relation to the great Chicago fire.... ..... 186
117. Give the history, in full, of the settlement of the Alabama Claims.. 187
118. Give an account of the Centennial events of 1876..... .....187, 188
119. Give the facts in relation to the election of Hayes to the presidency. 188

QUESTIONS TO BE ANSWERED FROM THE TABLES ON PAGE 228.

1. How many presidents of the United States have there been?—2. Give their names in the order of their succession.—3. How many and which of them served two terms each?—4. Which of them died while in office? (141, 151, 182.)—5. By whom were they succeeded in office?—6. How many states belonged to the Union when Washington was inaugurated in 1789? (Appendix, p. 11.)—7. When did North Carolina and Rhode Island adopt the Constitution of the United States? (Ap., p. 11.)—8. Name the thirteen original states in the order of their settlement.—9. Name them in their geographical order, beginning with the one most northeasterly.—10. How many states belonged to the Union at the close of Washington's administration?—11. Give the names of the three new states, with the dates of their admission into the Union.—12. What addition was made to the Union during Jefferson's administration?—13. What, during Madison's administration?—14. What, during Monroe's?—15. What, during Jackson's?—16. What, during Tyler's?—17. What, during Polk's?—18. What, during Fillmore's?—19. What, during Buchanan's?—20. What, during Lincoln's?—21. What, during Johnson's?—22. Name the administrations during which no states were admitted to the Union.

Digitized by Google

## PRESIDENTS AND VICE-PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES.

| NO. | PRESIDENTS. | RESIDENCE. | INAUGURATED. | VICE-PRESIDENTS. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | George Washington | Virginia | April 30, 1789 | John Adams. |
| 2. | John Adams | Massachusetts | March 4, 1797 | Thomas Jefferson. |
| 3. | Thomas Jefferson | Virginia | March 4, 1801 | Aaron Burr.<br>George Clinton.* |
| 4. | James Madison | Virginia | March 4, 1809 | George Clinton.<br>Elbridge Gerry.* |
| 5. | James Monroe | Virginia | March 4, 1817 | Daniel D. Tompkins. |
| 6. | John Q. Adams | Massachusetts | March 4, 1825 | John C. Calhoun |
| 7. | Andrew Jackson | Tennessee | March 4, 1829 | John C. Calhoun.†<br>Martin Van Buren. |
| 8. | Martin Van Buren | New York | March 4, 1837 | Richard M. Johnson. |
| 9. | William H. Harrison* | Ohio | March 4, 1841 | John Tyler. |
| 10. | John Tyler | Virginia | April 6, 1841 | |
| 11. | James K. Polk | Tennessee | March 4, 1845 | George M. Dallas |
| 12. | Zachary Taylor* | Louisiana | March 5, 1849 | Millard Fillmore. |
| 13. | Millard Fillmore | New York | July 10, 1850 | |
| 14. | Franklin Pierce | New Hampshire | March 4, 1853 | William R. King.* |
| 15. | James Buchanan | Pennsylvania | March 4, 1857 | John C. Breckinridge. |
| 16. | Abraham Lincoln* | Illinois | March 4, 1861 | Hannibal Hamlin.<br>Andrew Johnson. |
| 17. | Andrew Johnson | Tennessee | April 15, 1865 | |
| 18. | Ulysses S. Grant | Illinois | March 4, 1869 | Schuyler Colfax.<br>Henry Wilson.* |
| 19. | Rutherford B. Hayes | Ohio | March 5, 1877 | William A. Wheeler. |
| 20. | James A. Garfield* | Ohio | March 4, 1881 | Chester A. Arthur. |
| 21. | Chester A. Arthur | New York | September 20, 1881 | |

## SETTLEMENT AND ADMISSION OF THE STATES.

| STATES. | SETTLED. When. | SETTLED. Where. | SETTLED. By whom. | ADMIT'D | DURING WHOSE ADMINISTRATION. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Virginia | 1607 | Jamestown | English | The 13 original States. | |
| New York | 1614 | New York | Dutch | | |
| Massachusetts | 1620 | Plymouth | English | | |
| New Hampshire | 1623 | Little Harbor | English | | |
| Connecticut | 1633 | Windsor | English | | |
| Maryland | 1634 | St. Mary's | English | | |
| Rhode Island | 1636 | Providence | English | | |
| Delaware | 1638 | Wilmington | Swedes | | |
| North Carolina | 1650 | Chowan River | English | | |
| New Jersey | 1664 | Elizabeth | Dutch | | |
| South Carolina | 1670 | Ashley River | English | | |
| Pennsylvania | 1682 | Philadelphia | English | | |
| Georgia | 1733 | Savannah | English | | |
| Vermont | 1724 | Fort Dummer | English | 1791 | |
| Kentucky | 1775 | Boonesboro | English | 1792 | Washington. |
| Tennessee | 1757 | Fort Loudon | English | 1796 | |
| Ohio | 1788 | Marietta | English | 1803 | Jefferson. |
| Louisiana | 1699 | Iberville | French | 1812 | |
| Indiana | 1730 | Vincennes | French | 1816 | Madison. |
| Mississippi | 1716 | Natchez | French | 1817 | |
| Illinois | 1682 | Kaskaskia | French | 1818 | |
| Alabama | 1711 | Mobile | French | 1819 | Monroe. |
| Maine | 1625 | Bristol | French | 1820 | |
| Missouri | 1764 | St. Louis | French | 1821 | |
| Arkansas | 1685 | Arkansas Post | French | 1836 | |
| Michigan | 1670 | Detroit | French | 1837 | Jackson. |
| Florida | 1565 | St. Augustine | Spaniards | 1845 | Tyler. |
| Texas | 1692 | San Antonio | Spaniards | 1845 | |
| Iowa | 1833 | Burlington | English | 1846 | Polk. |
| Wisconsin | 1669 | Green Bay | French | 1848 | |
| California | 1769 | San Diego | Spaniards | 1850 | Fillmore. |
| Minnesota | 1846 | St. Paul | Americans | 1858 | |
| Oregon | 1811 | Astoria | Americans | 1859 | Buchanan. |
| Kansas | | | Americans | 1861 | |
| West Virginia | | | English | 1863 | |
| Nevada | | | Americans | 1864 | Lincoln. |
| Nebraska | | | | 1867 | Johnson. |
| Colorado | | | | 1876 | Grant. |

* Died in office. † Resigned.

Digitized by Google

# APPENDIX.

## THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

*A Declaration by the Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled, July 4th, 1776.*

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these, are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established, should not

Digitized by Google

be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But, when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having, in direct object, the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these states. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world:—

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature; a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

Digitized by Google

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the state remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these states; for that purpose, obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone, for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined, with others, to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them by a mock trial, from punishment, for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these states:

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our consent:

Digitized by Google

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefit of trial by jury:

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies:

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our governments:

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress, in the most humble terms; our repeated peti-

Digitized by Google

tions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name, and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, that these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain, is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent states, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent states may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other, our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

Digitized by Google

The foregoing declaration was, by order of Congress, engrossed. and signed by the following members:

JOHN HANCOCK.

*New Hampshire.*
Josiah Bartlett,
William Whipple,
Matthew Thornton.

*Massachusetts Bay.*
Samuel Adams,
John Adams,
Robert Treat Paine,
Elbridge Gerry.

*Rhode Island.*
Stephen Hopkins,
William Ellery.

*Connecticut.*
Roger Sherman,
Samuel Huntington,
William Williams,
Oliver Wolcott.

*New York.*
William Floyd,
Philip Livingston.
Francis Lewis,
Lewis Morris.

*New Jersey.*
Richard Stockton,
John Witherspoon,
Francis Hopkinson,
John Hart,
Abraham Clark.

*Pennsylvania.*
Robert Morris,
Benjamin Rush,
Benjamin Franklin,
John Morton,
George Clymer,
James Smith,
George Taylor,
James Wilson,
George Ross.

*Delaware.*
Cæsar Rodney,
George Read,
Thomas M'Kean.

*Maryland.*
Samuel Chase,
William Paca,
Thomas Stone,
Charles Carroll, of Carrollton.

*Virginia.*
George Wythe,
Richard Henry Lee,
Thomas Jefferson,
Benjamin Harrison,
Thomas Nelson, jun.,
Francis Lightfoot Lee,
Carter Braxton.

*North Carolina.*
William Hooper,
Joseph Hewes,
John Penn.

*South Carolina.*
Edward Rutledge,
Thomas Heyward, jun.
Thomas Lynch, jun.
Arthur Middleton.

*Georgia.*
Button Gwinnett,
Lyman Hall,
George Walton.

---

NOTE.—"The fourth of July is the day of national rejoicing, for on that day the Declaration of Independence, that solemn and sublime document, was adopted. Tradition gives a dramatic effect to its announcement. It was known to be under discussion, but the closed doors of Congress excluded the populace. They awaited, in throngs, an appointed signal. In the steeple of the state-house (Philadelphia), was a bell imported twenty-three years previously from London by the Provincial Assembly of Pennsylvania. It bore the portentous text from Scripture: 'Proclaim liberty throughout all the land, unto all the inhabitants thereof.' A joyous peal from that bell gave notice that the bill had been passed. It was the knell of British domination. * * * The excitable populace of New York were not content with the ringing of bells to proclaim their joy. There was a leaden statue of George III. in the Bowling Green, in front of the fort. Since kingly rule is at an end, why retain its effigy? On the same evening, therefore, the statue was pulled down amid the shouts of the multitude, and broken up to be run into bullets 'to be used in the cause of independence.'" —*Irving's Life of Washington.*

Digitized by Google

# THE CONSTITUTION

OF

# THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

---

1. Origin of the Constitution.—When the Revolutionary struggle commenced, there were three forms of colonial government in force among the colonies, namely: the provincial or royal, the proprietary, and the charter. The provincial or royal government was under the control of a governor, who, appointed by the king, administered affairs according to instructions from his royal master. The colonies of this class were New Hampshire, New York, New Jersey, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia.

2. The proprietary government was under the control of one or more proprietors, who derived their authority by grant and privileges conferred by the king. Pennsylvania, Delaware, and Maryland were subject to the proprietary rule. The charter government secured certain political rights to the people by royal charter. Of this class were Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut.

3. On the 11th of June, 1776, Congress resolved that a committee should be appointed to prepare a form of con-

1. What forms of government existed among the colonies previous to the Revolution? What was the provincial or royal government? Which of the colonies were provincial or royal?

2. What was the proprietary government? Give the names of the colonies that were subjected to the proprietary rule? What was the charter government? Which of the colonies had charters?



Digitized by Google

federation, to be entered into by the colonies. On the 12th of July following, this committee, consisting of one from each state, reported a draft of Articles of Confederation. The Report was considered and debated from time to time until the 15th of November, 1777, when, with some amendments, it was adopted.

**4.** These Articles of Confederation were ratified in 1778 by all the states except Delaware and Maryland, and by Delaware in 1779; but, in consequence of the delay on the part of Maryland, they did not go into effect until the 1st of March, 1781, the day on which they were signed by the delegates from that state.

**5.** It was soon found that the Articles of Confederation were not adequate to the wants of the government. They were deficient as regards the regulation of commerce, the settling of controversies between the states, the making of treaties with foreign nations, and especially so in not conferring the necessary power upon Congress to liquidate the debts incurred during the war.

**6.** Consequently, a convention of delegates from all the states, except Rhode Island, met at Philadelphia, in May, 1787, for the purpose of revising the Articles of Confederation; but it was thought best by a majority of the delegates to adopt an entirely new form of government, instead of making any attempts to amend the defective one then in existence. Accordingly, on the 17th of September, 1787, after four months' deliberation, the present Constitution,—except some changes which were made in after years,—was adopted by the Convention.

---

**3.** What resolution was first adopted in Congress in relation to a form of confederation? Give the subsequent history of the measure.

**4.** When did the states ratify the Articles of Confederation? When did the Articles of Confederation go into effect?

**5.** What was soon ascertained with reference to the Articles of Confederation? In what respects were they deficient?

**6.** What convention was held in May, 1787? What was done by the convention?

Digitized by Google

7. The new Constitution was submitted to the people, who, in the newspapers, legislative halls, and elsewhere, discussed it with earnestness and thoroughness; the ratification of nine states being requisite before it could go into effect. It met with considerable opposition; but after it had been adopted by all the states, except North Carolina and Rhode Island, it went into operation, March 4th, 1789.

---

NOTE.—Congress ought to have met on the 4th of March, 1789, but in consequence of delay in the arrival of members, the most of whom had to make their way to New York on horseback or by sea, there being no railroads in those days, a quorum was not secured before the 30th. "Washington received sixty-nine votes, that being the whole number of electors voting. John Adams received thirty-four votes in all, not a majority; but sufficient, as the Constitution then stood, being the second highest number, to make him vice-president." The sixty-nine votes received by Washington were from ten states only. New York did not vote because of a disagreement between the two houses of her legislature; and North Carolina and Rhode Island had not adopted the Constitution. "The inauguration was delayed for several days by a question which had arisen as to the form or title by which the President elect was to be addressed; and this had been deliberated in a committee of both Houses. The question had been mooted without Washington's privity, and contrary to his desire, as he feared that any title might awaken the sensitive jealousy of Republicans at a moment when it was all important to conciliate public good will to the new form of government. It was a relief to him, therefore, when it was finally resolved that the address should be simply 'the President of the United States, without any addition of title; a judicious form which has remained to the present day."—*Irving's Life of Washington.*

---

THE CONSTITUTION WAS ADOPTED AS FOLLOWS:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| By | Delaware, on the 7th of December | 1787 |
| | Pennsylvania, on the 12th of December | 1787 |
| | New Jersey, on the 18th of December | 1787 |
| | Georgia, on the 2d of January | 1788 |
| | Connecticut, on the 9th of January | 1788 |
| | Massachusetts, on the 6th of February | 1788 |
| | Maryland, on the 28th of April | 1788 |
| | South Carolina, on the 23d of May | 1788 |
| | New Hampshire, on the 21st of June | 1788 |
| | Virginia, on the 26th of June | 1788 |
| | New York, on the 26th of July | 1788 |
| | North Carolina, on the 21st of November | 1789 |
| | Rhode Island, on the 29th of May | 1790 |

Digitized by Google

# THE CONSTITUTION.

## PREAMBLE.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

## ARTICLE I.

### THE LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT.

#### SECTION I.

All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

#### SECTION II.

1*st Clause.* The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the peo-

PREAMBLE.—What is the introductory part of the Constitution called? What is the object of the preamble? *Ans.* To state the purposes of the Constitution. How many and what purposes are stated in the preamble? By whom was the Constitution ordained and established? Recite the preamble. How many and what departments of government are established under the Constitution? *Ans.* Three: the legislative, the judicial, and the executive. What is the legislative department? *Ans.* The power that enacts the laws. What is the executive department? *Ans.* The power that enforces the laws. What is the judicial department? *Ans.* The power that interprets the laws.

ARTICLE I.—*Sec.* 1. Of what does Article first of the Constitution treat? In whom is the legislative power vested? Of how many and what branches does Congress consist?

Digitized by Google

ple of the several states, and the electors in each state shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the state legislature.

2*d Clause.* No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state in which he shall be chosen.

3*d Clause.* Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several states which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons.* The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each state shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the state of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five,

SEC. II.—1*st Clause.*—By whom are the representatives chosen? How often are they chosen? What qualifications are requisite for electors of representatives? What is an elector? *Ans.* One who has the right to vote in choosing an officer.

2*d Clause.*—How old must a person be before he can be a representative? How long must he have been a citizen of the United States? What is the requisite in regard to his habitation? Now name the three qualifications requisite for a representative.

3*d Clause.*—How were representatives and direct taxes apportioned among the states? How were the respective numbers of the representative population of the several states to be determined? What provision is made in regard to Indians? What was meant by "all other persons?" *Ans.* Slaves. When was the first census or enumeration to be made? How often thereafter is the census to be made? How many inhabitants at least are required for one representative? If a state should not have that number, what is the law? Was the first representation in Congress based upon the actual population of the several states? Which state at first sent the greatest number of representatives? Which two states sent the smallest number? Of how many members did the first House of Representatives consist? Of how many does the present House consist? (292.)

* See Article XIV. of the Amendments.

Digitized by Google

New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

*4th Clause.* When vacancies happen in the representation from any state, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

*5th Cause.* The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION III.

*1st Clause.* The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each state, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

*2d Clause.* Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resigna-

*4th Clause.*—How are vacancies in the representation of a state to be filled?

*5th Clause.*—By whom is the speaker of the House of Representatives chosen? By whom are the other officers of the House chosen? What sole power has the House? What is meant by impeachment? *Ans.* An accusation against a public officer, charging him with misconduct in the discharge of his official duties.

SEC. III.—*1st Clause.*—Of whom is the Senate composed? By whom are the senators chosen? For how long a period are they chosen? How does the mode of electing a senator differ from that of a representative? *Ans.* A senator of the United States is chosen by the legislature of his state; a representative is chosen by the people. How do their terms of office differ? *Ans.* A senator is chosen for six years; a representative for only two. How many votes is each senator entitled to? Have the large states any more senators than the small ones?

*2d Clause.*—Into how many classes were the senators at first divided? In what order were their seats of office vacated? What proportion of the Senate is elected every second year? How often is one-third elected? When may the executive of a state fill a vacancy in the Senate? For how long a time does a senator so appointed hold his office? How is the vacancy then filled? Now state how vacancies in the Senate are filled.

Digitized by Google

tion, or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any state, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

*3d Clause.* No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state for which he shall be chosen.

*4th Clause.* The vice-president of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

*5th Clause.* The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president pro tempore, in the absence of the vice-president, or when he shall exercise the office of president of the United States.

*6th Clause.* The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall all be on oath or affirmation. When the president of the United States is tried, the chief-justice shall preside: and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

*7th Clause.* Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust,

---

*3d Clause.*—How old must a person be before he can be a senator? How long must he have been a citizen of the United States? What is required of him in regard to residence? Now name the three requisites for a senator. How do they differ from those of a representative? (See page 13.)

*4th Clause.*—Who is president of the Senate? When only is he entitled to vote?

*5th Clause.*—What officers are chosen by the Senate? What is meant by a "president pro tempore?" *Ans.* One chosen only for the time being. When does the Senate choose a "president pro tempore?"

*6th Clause.*—What sole power has the Senate? What sole power has the House? (See page 14.) Under what solemnity does the Senate sit for the trial of impeachments? When does the chief-justice preside in the Senate? Who presides when the president of the United States is tried? What proportion of the Senate is necessary to a conviction?

*7th Clause.*—How far may judgment extend in cases of impeachment? To what is the convicted party further liable?

Digitized by Google

or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECTION IV.

1*st Clause.* The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each state by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by law make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

2*d Clause.* The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION V.

1*st Clause.* Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide.

2*d Clause.* Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

3*d Clause.* Each house shall keep a journal of its pro-

---

SEC. IV.—1*st Clause.*—What is prescribed by each state legislature in regard to elections for senators and representatives? What power has Congress over such regulations?

2*d Clause.*—How often does Congress assemble? On what day is it prescribed that the meeting shall take place? May a different day be appointed? How?

SEC. V.—1*st Clause.*—Of what is each house constituted the judge? What proportion constitutes a quorum? What is meant by a quorum? *Ans.* A sufficient number to do business. What power do a smaller number possess as regards adjourning? What else may they do as regards absentees?

2*d Clause.*—What power has each house over the rules of its proceedings? What power does each house possess for enforcing its rules?

3*d Clause.*—What is required of each house, in respect to keeping a journal? How is publicity given to the proceedings of Congress? What part of its journal may either house withhold from publication?

When shall the yeas and nays be entered on the journal?

Digitized by Google

ceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

*4th Clause.* Neither house, during the session of Congress shall, without the consent of the other adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

SECTION VI.

*1st Clause.* The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

*2d Clause.* No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person

*4th Clause.*—For what length of time may either house adjourn without the consent of the other? How is each house restricted as regards the place to which it may adjourn?

SEC. VI.—*1st Clause.*—Are members of Congress compensated for their services? How is the compensation determined? Are members of Congress paid by their states respectively, or by the general government? *Ans.* They are compensated by the general government, out of the treasury of the United States. What personal privileges are members of Congress entitled to? What are the three exceptions to the general privilege that the Constitution allows to Congressmen? In what does treason consist? (See p. 32.) What is felony? *Ans.* A crime punishable with death. What is meant by a breach of the peace? *Ans.* A violation of the public order. For what are members of Congress not to be questioned?

*2d Clause.*—To what offices cannot members of Congress be elected? Suppose that a person holds an office under the United States, what then?

Digitized by Google

holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

SECTION VII.

1*st Clause.* All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

2*d Clause.* Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the president of the United States; if he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the president within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he

SEC. 7.—1*st Clause.*—In which branch of Congress must all bills for raising revenue originate? What power has the Senate over such bills?

2*d Clause.*—After a bill has passed both houses of Congress, what must be done with it? What must the president do with the bill? What is the president's act of objecting to a bill called? *Ans.* A veto. Why was the veto power given to the president? *Ans.* To enable him to protect the executive department of the government against the encroachments of the legislature: also with a view to greater security against the enactment of improper laws. When the president vetoes a bill, what is the duty of the house to which it is sent? When is the bill sent to the other house? What accompanies the bill to the other house? Then what does that other house do with the bill? If two-thirds approve of the bill, what then? Now state how a bill may become a law, notwithstanding the veto of the president? When the two houses reconsider a vetoed bill, how do they determine the votes? What record of names is imperative? State how a bill may become law, even though the president has neither signed nor vetoed it. In what case does a bill fail to become a law, though it has passed both houses of Congress, and is not vetoed?

Digitized by Google

had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

3*d Clause.* Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the president of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION VIII.

The Congress shall have power—

1*st Clause.* To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

2*d Clause.* To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

3*d Clause.* To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several states, and with the Indian tribes;

---

3*d Clause.*—What is necessary to be done with orders, resolutions, and votes, requiring the concurrence of both houses before they can take effect? What is the object of the provision? *Ans.* If it were not for the provision, Congress might pass laws, calling them orders or resolutions, and thus evade the president's veto. When the president vetoes an order, resolution, or vote, what course does it take? In what case, requiring the concurrent action of both houses, has the president no veto power?

SEC. VIII.—1*st Clause.*—What power has Congress in regard to taxes, duties, imposts, and excises? What are taxes? *Ans.* Contributions of money exacted by government from individuals, for public purposes. How many kinds of taxes are there? *Ans.* Two; direct and indirect. What are direct taxes? *Ans.* Taxes laid directly on the person or property of individuals. What are indirect taxes? *Ans.* Taxes laid on the importation, exportation, and consumption of goods. What are duties? *Ans.* Taxes on the importation or exportation of goods. What are imposts? *Ans.* Taxes on goods imported. What are excises? *Ans.* Taxes on goods produced or manufactured in the country.

2*d Clause.*—What power has Congress in regard to borrowing money?

3*d Clause.*—What in regard to regulating commerce?

Digitized by Google

*4th Clause.* To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;

*5th Clause.* To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

*6th Clause.* To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

*7th Clause.* To establish post-offices and post-roads;

*8th Clause.* To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;

*9th Clause.* To constitute tribunals inferior to the supreme court;

10*th Clause.* To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations;

11*th Clause.* To declare war, grant letters of marque

---

*4th Clause.*—What in regard to a rule of naturalization? What is meant by naturalization? *Ans.* The act by which a foreigner becomes a citizen of the United States. How long must a person reside in the United States before he can be naturalized? *Ans.* Five years. What power has Congress in regard to bankruptcies? What is meant by bankruptcies? *Ans.* A person is a bankrupt when he is unable to pay his just debts.

*5th Clause.*—What power has Congress in regard to coining money? What, in regard to the value of money? What, in regard to foreign coins? What, in regard to weights and measures.

*6th Clause.*—What power has Congress in regard to counterfeiting?

*7th Clause.*—What power has Congress in regard to post-offices and post-roads?

*8th Clause.*—In what way may Congress promote the progress of science and arts? For how long a time is the author of a book entitled to the exclusive right of publishing it? *Ans.* Twenty-eight years? What is the right called? *Ans.* A copyright. May a copyright be renewed? *Ans.* At the expiration of the twenty-eight years, it may be renewed for the further period of fourteen years. For how long a time is the inventor of a machine entitled to the exclusive right of manufacturing it? *Ans.* Fourteen years. What is the right called? A patent right. Can a patent right be extended? *Ans.* The commissioner of patents is authorized, at the end of the fourteen years, to extend the right for the further period of seven years.

*9th Clause.*—What power has Congress in regard to judicial tribunals?

*10th Clause.*—What, in regard to piracies, felonies, etc.? What is piracy? *Ans.* Robbery on the high seas? What is meant by the term "high seas?" *Ans.* All the waters of the ocean beyond the boundaries of low-water mark.

*11th Clause.*—What power has Congress in regard to declaring war? What, in regard to "letters of marque and reprisal?" What are letters of marque and

Digitized by Google

and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

12*th Clause.* To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

13*th Clause.* To provide and maintain a navy;

14*th Clause.* To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

15*th Clause.* To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions;

16*th Clause.* To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the states respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

17*th Clause.* To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular states, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the gov-

reprisal? *Ans.* Commissions granted by the government to individuals, authorizing them to prey upon the commerce of another nation. What power has Congress in regard to rules concerning captures?

12*th Clause.*—What power has Congress in regard to armies. In what way is such power restricted?

13*th Clause.*—What power has Congress in regard to a navy?

14*th Clause.*—What power in regard to the government of the land and naval forces?

15*th Clause.*—What power in regard to calling forth the militia, etc.?

16*th Clause.*—What power in regard to organizing armies, and disciplining the militia? What, in regard to governing the militia? What reservations are secured to the respective states?

17*th Clause.*—What power has Congress in regard to the seat of government, and to places purchased for certain purposes set forth? What is the district occupied as the seat of government called? *Ans. The District of Columbia.* How large was the District of Columbia originally? *Ans.* Ten miles square. From what states had it been derived? *Ans.* By cession from the states of Maryland and Virginia? Is the District of Columbia at present ten miles square? *Ans.* The portion derived from Virginia having been ceded back to that state, in 1846, the District is now confined to the Maryland side of the Potomac. What consent is requisite before the United States can acquire property in a state for the erection of forts, magazines, etc.

Digitized by Google

ernment of the United States; and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the state in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards; and other needful buildings;—and

18*th Clause.* To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION IX.

1*st Clause.* The migration or importation of such persons as any of the states now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

2*d Clause.* The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

3*d Clause.* No bill of attainder or ex post facto law shall be passed.

---

18*th Clause.*—What general powers are conferred upon Congress in regard to making laws?

SEC. IX.—1*st Clause.*—What restriction was imposed upon Congress in regard to the migration or importation of certain persons? Who were meant by "such persons?" *Ans.* Slaves. What was the great object of the clause? *Ans.* To enable Congress to put an end to the importation of slaves into the United States, after the year 1808. In what way was Congress left to restrain the importation without actually forbidding it? When was the importation actually prohibited? *Ans.* On the 1st of January, 1808.

2*d Clause.*—What is said of the writ of habeas corpus? What is a writ of habeas corpus? *Ans.* A written command from a judge or other magistrate, directing that the body of a certain person shall be brought before him. What is the object of the writ? *Ans.* To provide a means of redress for all manner of illegal imprisonment. Repeat the clause in relation to the writ of habeas corpus. In what cases may the privilege of the writ of habeas corpus be suspended?

3*d Clause.*—What is said of bills of attainder or ex post facto laws? What is a bill of attainder? *Ans.* An act of the legislature inflicting the punishment of death, without trial, upon persons supposed to be guilty of high crimes. What is an ex post facto law? *Ans.* A law which renders an act punishable which was not punishable at the time of its commission.

Digitized by Google

*4th Clause.* No capitation, or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

*5th Clause.* No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any state.

*6th Clause.* No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one state over those of another: nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one state, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

*7th Clause.* No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

*8th Clause.* No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States: and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECTION X.

*1st Clause.* No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make any thing but

*4th Clause.*—In what way may Congress lay a capitation or other direct tax? What is meant by a capitation tax? *Ans.* A direct tax upon individuals. How is the census to be taken? (See p. 13.)

*5th Clause.*—What prohibition is imposed upon Congress in relation to articles exported from any state?

*6th Clause.*—What preference is forbidden in relation to a regulation of commerce or revenue? What freedom have vessels that are bound from one state to another?

*7th Clause.*—Under what circumstances only can money be drawn from the national treasury? What publication must be made in regard to receipts and expenditures of all public money?

*8th Clause.*—What is said in the Constitution about titles of nobility? What is said of officeholders accepting presents, etc.? Under what circumstances may an officeholder accept a present? Repeat the clause relating to titles and presents.

Sec. X.—*1st Clause.*—What prohibition is placed upon the several states

Digitized by Google

gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

*2d Clause.* No state shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws: and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any state on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

*3d Clause.* No state shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another state, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

---

as regards treaties, alliances, or confederations? What, as regards letters of marque and reprisal? What, as regards the coining of money? What, as regards bills of credit? What is meant by bills of credit? *Ans.* Bills of credit, within the meaning of the Constitution, are bills intended to circulate as money among the people. What is constituted a legal tender in payment of debt? What prohibition is placed upon individual states, in regard to a bill of attainder? What, in regard to an ex post facto law? What, in regard to a law impairing the obligation of contracts? What, in regard to a title of nobility? Recite the clause just considered.

*2d Clause.*—What prohibition are individual states under, as regards imposts or duties? In what case only may a state lay any imposts or duties? What are inspection laws? *Ans.* Laws requiring certain articles of commerce to be examined by officers called inspectors. What disposition must be made of the net produce of all duties and imposts laid by any state? What are the inspection laws of individual states as regards imports or exports subject to?

*3d Clause.*—What prohibitions are individual states under as to the laying of a duty of tonnage? What is a duty of tonnage? *Ans.* A tax laid on vessels at a certain rate per ton. What prohibition are individual states under as to the keeping of troops? What, as to the keeping of ships of war? What, as to an agreement or compact with another state, or with a foreign power? What, as to engaging in war? Under what circumstances then may a state engage in war?

---

NOTE.—Under the original clause of the Constitution providing for the election of president and vice-president, the electors voted for two persons, without naming their choice for the higher position, "the person having the greatest number of votes" being declared president, and the next, vice-president. Washington, John Adams, and Jefferson (for the first term), were so elected. For the present method, see the 12th Amendment, on the next page. (For a history of political parties, see topic 224, Ap., p. 81.)

Digitized by Google

# ARTICLE II.

## THE EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT.

### SECTION I.

1*st Clause.* The executive power shall be vested in a president of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the vice-president, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows.

2*d Clause.* Each state shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the state may be entitled in the Congress; but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

### THE TWELFTH AMENDMENT TO THE CONSTITUTION.

1*st Clause.* The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for president and vice-president, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their bal-

ARTICLE II.—SEC. I.—1*st Clause.*—Of what does Article II. of the Constitution treat? In whom is the executive power of the United States vested? What is the president's term of office? How often may a president be re-elected? *Ans.* The Constitution does not limit the number of terms for which a president may be re-elected. Who was the first president of the United States? (See table, p. 212.) For how many terms did Washington serve? Why was not Washington elected for a third term? *Ans.* At the close of his second term of office, he declined to be a candidate for a third term. What has been the effect of his declination? *Ans.* Washington's example in declining to be elected for a third term, has become a precedent by which subsequent presidents have been guided. How many and what presidents have served two terms each? (See table, p. 212.) Which has the longest term of office—the president, a senator, or a representative? What term has each? What is the vice-president's term of office? Who was the first vice-president of the United States? (See table, p. 212.) By whom are the president and vice-president chosen? *Ans.* The president and vice-president are not chosen by the people directly, but by electors.

2*d Clause.*—In what manner does each state appoint electors? What number of electors is each state entitled to? Who are prohibited from being electors?

*The Twelfth Amendment to the Constitution.*—What has been done with the

Digitized by Google

lots the person voted for as president, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as vice-president, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as president, and of all persons voted for as vice-president, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate;—the president of the Senate shall, in presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted;—the person having the greatest number of votes for president, shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as president, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the president. But in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a president whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the vice-president shall act as president, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the president.

---

original clause of the Constitution prescribing the proceedings to be taken to elect a president and vice-president? *Ans.* The original clause of the Constitution, prescribing the mode in which the president and vice-president were to be elected has been repealed, and its place supplied by the twelfth amendment to the Constitution. What is the history of the twelfth amendment? *Ans.* It was proposed in 1803, and declared adopted in 1804. Where do the electors for president and vice-president meet? In what way do they vote? What is prescribed respecting one of the persons for whom they shall not vote? How is it required that their ballots shall be made out? After voting, what lists are they required to prepare? What provision must be complied with, before the lists can pass out of their hands? After the lists are signed, certified, and sealed, to whom are they directed? To what place are they then transmitted? What does the president of the Senate do with the certifi-

Digitized by Google

*2d Clause.* The person having the greatest number of votes as vice-president, shall be the vice-president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the vice-president: a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

*3d Clause.* But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of president shall be eligible to that of vice-president of the United States.

---

*4th Clause.* The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

*5th Clause.* No person except a natural-born citizen, or

---

cates? How is it determined who is elected president? Now describe the manner in which the electors choose a president. In the event of no choice being made by the electors, by whom is the president chosen? From how many and what candidates must the House of Representatives choose the president? In what way must the choice be made? How are the votes taken in choosing the president? How many votes is each state entitled to? How many is each entitled to, when voting by electors? In choosing the president by the House of Representatives, how many constitute a quorum? In such case, how many states are necessary to a choice? Whenever the right of choosing a president devolves upon the House of Representatives, till what time may the right be exercised? Now describe the manner in which the House of Representatives choose a president? In the event of both the electors and House of Representatives failing to choose a president, what takes place?

*2d Clause.*—Who shall be the vice-president? In the event of no person having a majority of electoral votes, by whom is the vice-president chosen? When choosing a vice-president, how many senators are requisite to a quorum? How many are necessary to a choice?

*3d Clause.*—Who are ineligible to the office of vice-president?

*4th Clause.*—What power has Congress over the time of choosing the electors? What as to the day on which the electors shall vote? In the event of Congress determining the day on which the electors shall give their votes, what sameness is prescribed? When are the electors chosen? *Ans.* On the Tuesday next after the first Monday, in the last November of each presidential term. Where do the electors meet to give their votes? *Ans.* In their respective states, at a place appointed by the legislature thereof, usually in the capital. When do the electors meet to give their votes? *Ans.* On the first Wednesday in the last December of each presidential term.

Digitized by Google

a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of president; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

*6th Clause.* In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the vice-president; and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the president and vice-president, declaring what officer shall then act as president, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a president shall be elected.

*7th Clause.* The president shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

*8th Clause.* Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—

---

*5th Clause.*—What person, as regards his place of birth, cannot be eligible to the office of president? How old must a person be to be eligible to that office? How many years must a person, to be eligible to that office, have resided within the United States? Now state the legal qualifications of a president. Recite the clause relating to the qualifications.

*6th Clause.*—In what contingencies does the office of president devolve on the vice-president? What provision is made by the Constitution for the case of removal or death, etc., of the president? What provision is made by the Constitution for the case of removal or death, etc., of both president and vice-president? In the case of removal, etc., of both president and vice-president, what officer shall, by law of Congress, act as president? *Ans.* The president of the Senate, *pro tempore*, shall act as president. What is to be done, in case there is no president of the Senate? *Ans.* The speaker of the House of Representatives shall act as president. How long shall such officer continue to act?

*7th Clause.*—What does the Constitution provide as regards the compensation to be allowed to the president? What restriction is imposed, in regard to any other emolument? Recite the clause relating to the president's compensation. What is the salary of the president? *Ans.* $50,000 a year, together with the use of the presidential mansion and its furniture. What is the salary of the vice-president? *Ans.* $10,000 a year.

Digitized by Google

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of president of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

SECTION II.

1*st Clause.* The president shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several states, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

2*d Clause.* He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law: but the Congress may by law vest the appointment

---

8*th Clause.*—What does the president do, just before entering on the execution of his office? Repeat the oath or affirmation taken by the president.

SEC. II.—1*st Clause.* In what relation does the president stand toward the army and navy? When only can he command the militia? Whose opinions may he require in writing? Upon what subjects may he require the opinions? Is he bound to be guided by such opinions? *Ans.* He is not. What executive departments have been established by Congress? *Ans.* Six, namely: Of State, of the Navy, of War, of the Treasury, Post-office Department, and of the Interior. For what purpose were they established? *Ans.* To aid the president in the executive and administrative business of the government. How are the heads of the departments appointed? *Ans.* By the president, with the advice and consent of the Senate. How is the attorney-general appointed? *Ans.* In like manner as the heads of the departments. Of whom does the president's cabinet consist? *Ans.* Of the heads of the departments, and the attorney-general. What power has the president, in relation to reprieves and pardons? What is a reprieve? *Ans.* A limited suspension or delay of the execution of a sentence in a criminal case. With what exception is the president vested with the power to grant reprieves and pardons?

Digitized by Google

of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the president alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

3*d Clause.* The president shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions, which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION III.

He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION IV.

The president, vice-president, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

---

2*d Clause.*—What power has the president relative to treaties? In whom is the appointing power vested? What is the first step in making an appointment? What offices are enumerated, for which the president and Senate make appointments? What may Congress do in relation to the appointment of inferior officers?

3*d Clause.*—What vacancies can the president fill? When does such appointment expire?

SEC. III.—What information is the president required to give to Congress? What recommendations is he required to make? In what way are the recommendations made? *Ans.* By means of written messages. Was the reading of written messages always the practice? *Ans.* The first two presidents, Washington and Adams, used to meet Congress, and make their recommendations by addresses, which they read. Is Congress obliged to adopt the president's recommendations? *Ans.* It is not. When may the president convene both houses? May he convene only one house? When? When may the president adjourn Congress? What is the duty of the president respecting ambassadors, etc.? What is his duty respecting the execution of the laws? What is his duty respecting the granting of commissions?

Digitized by Google

# ARTICLE III.

## THE JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT.

### SECTION I.

The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one supreme court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

### SECTION II.

1*st Clause.* The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more states; between a state and citizens of another state; between citizens of different

---

SEC. IV.—For what crimes may government officers be removed from office? How may the removal be effected?

ARTICLE III.—SEC. I.—Of what does Article III. of the Constitution treat? In what is the judicial power of the United States vested? How long do the judges hold their offices? What is established as to the compensation of the judges? How can the judges be removed from office? (See page 15.) How is the supreme court of the United States organized? *Ans.* It is composed of one chief-justice, and eight associate justices, any five of whom constitute a quorum. What is the salary of the chief-justice? *Ans.* $10,500 a year. What is the salary of each associate justice? *Ans.* $10,000 a year.

SEC. II.—*1st Clause.*—Name the first of the nine subjects in which the United States courts have jurisdiction. Name the second, concerning ambassadors, etc. Name the third, concerning certain jurisdiction. The fourth, concerning controversies with the United States. The fifth, concerning controversies between states. The sixth, concerning controversies between a state and citizens. The seventh, concerning controversies between citizens. The eighth, concerning controversies between citizens claiming lands. What is the last of the nine subjects?

Digitized by Google

states; between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states, and between a state, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

2*d Clause.* In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a state shall be a party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

3*d Clause.* The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the state where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SECTION III.

1*st Clause.* Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

2*d Clause.* The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason

---

2*d Clause.*—In what cases has the supreme court original jurisdiction? What is meant by original jurisdiction? *Ans.* That in which a suit originates or commences. What is meant by appellate jurisdiction? *Ans.* That in which the decision of an inferior court is taken on appeal.

3*d Clause.*—Before whom must the "trial of all crimes" be held? What cases are exceptions to the law? By whom are impeachments tried? (See page 15.) Where must the trial of a crime committed within a state be held? Where, when not committed within a state? Repeat the entire clause just considered.

SEC. III.—1*st Clause.*—In how many things does treason against the United States consist? What are the two things? What is necessary to a conviction of treason?

Digitized by Google

shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture except during the life of the person attainted.

## ARTICLE IV.

### MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS.

#### SECTION I.

Full faith and credit shall be given in each state to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other state. And the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

#### SECTION II.

1*st Clause.* The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states.

2*d Clause.* A person charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another state, shall on demand of the executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having jurisdiction of the crime.

3*d Clause.* No person held to service or labor in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be dis-

---

2*d Clause.*—What power has Congress relative to the punishment of treason? How does the Constitution limit the consequences of attainder? What is meant by attainder? *Ans.* Attainder means a staining, corruption, or rendering impure. What is meant by corruption of blood? *Ans.* By "corruption of blood" a person is disabled to inherit lands from an ancestor; nor can he either retain those in his possession, or transmit them by descent to his heirs.

ARTICLE IV.—SEC. I.—Of what does Article IV. treat? How are the public acts, etc., of the several states, to be treated in each state? How are they to be proved?

SEC. II.—1*st Clause.*—What privileges and immunities are the citizens of each state entitled to?

2*d Clause.*—What is said of persons charged with crime, fleeing into another state?

3*d Clause.*—What is said of persons escaping from service or labor? What persons were referred to in the third clause? *Ans.* Fugitive slaves and persons bound by indentures of apprenticeship. (See Art. XIII. of Amendments.)

Digitized by Google

charged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECTION III.

1*st Clause.* New states may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new state shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other state; nor any state be formed by the junction of two or more states, or parts of states, without the consent of the legislatures of the states concerned as well as of the Congress.

2*d Clause.* The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular state.

SECTION IV.

The United States shall guarantee to every state in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.

## ARTICLE V.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-

SEC. III.—1*st Clause.*—By whom may new states be admitted into the Union? What is said of the formation of new states? How many states belonged to the Union at the adoption of the Constitution? (See pages 13-14.) How many belong to the Union now? (See table.)

2*d Clause.*—What power has Congress respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States? What construction as to claims is not to be put upon any part of the Constitution?

SEC. IV.—What guarantee does the Constitution make to the several states in respect to their form of government? In what two events are the United States bound to protect individual states?

ARTICLE V.—Of what does Article V. treat? In what two ways may amendments to the Constitution be proposed? What two ways are provided for rati-

Digitized by Google

thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid, to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress: provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.



## ARTICLE VI.

1*st Clause.* All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

2*d Clause.* This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby, any thing in the Constitution or laws of any state to the contrary notwithstanding.

3*d Clause.* The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the

---

fying amendments? What three restrictions upon the power of making amendments were originally imposed by the Constitution? Why have two of the restrictions lost their force? What do "the first and fourth clauses" referred to, declare? What permanent restriction upon the power of making amendments still exists in full force?

ARTICLE VI.—1*st Clause.*—What debts and engagements does the Constitution recognize?

2*d Clause.*—What is declared to be the supreme law of the land? By what are the judges in every state bound?

Digitized by Google

United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

## ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the conventions of nine states, shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the states so ratifying the same.

---

# AMENDMENTS,

PROPOSED BY CONGRESS, AND RATIFIED BY THE LEGISLATURES OF THE SEVERAL STATES, PURSUANT TO THE FIFTH ARTICLE OF THE ORIGINAL CONSTITUTION.

## ARTICLE I.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

---

*3d Clause.*—Who, besides the judges, are bound to support the Constitution? In what way shall they be bound? What prohibition is made in regard to religious tests?

ARTICLE VII.—How many states were necessary to ratify the Constitution in order to its establishment?

AMENDMENTS.

Why were the first ten articles of amendments made? *Ans.* Because it was generally felt that the Constitution did not sufficiently protect the rights of the people. How may they, then, be regarded? *Ans.* As a declaration securing to the people and states certain rights beyond the possibility of being encroached upon by Congress. When were they proposed? *Ans.* In 1789, during the first session of the first Congress under the Constitution. When were they adopted? *Ans.* Having been ratified by three-fourths of the states, they were declared adopted in 1791.

*1st Article.*—What declaration does the first amendment make, respecting religion? What, respecting the freedom of speech? What, respecting the freedom of the press? What, respecting the right of petition?

Digitized by Google

## ARTICLE II.

A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

## ARTICLE III.

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

## ARTICLE IV.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

## ARTICLE V.

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal

---

*2d Article.*—What is the declaration respecting the right of the people to keep and bear arms?

*3d Article.*—What is said of quartering soldiers?

*4th Article.*—What is said of searches and seizures? What is said of the issuing of warrants?

*5th Article.*—What is said of holding persons to answer for crimes? What is said of a second trial for the same offence? What is the meaning of the clause that no person shall "be twice put in jeopardy," etc.? *Ans.* It means that no person shall be a second time tried for an offence of which he has been legally acquitted or convicted. When shall not a person be compelled to witness against himself? What guarantee of protection to life, liberty, and property is given? When only can private property be taken for public use?

Digitized by Google

case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

## ARTICLE VI.

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

## ARTICLE VII.

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States than according to the rules of the common law.

## ARTICLE VIII.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

## ARTICLE IX.

The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

---

*6th Article.*—What right shall a person accused of crime have? What right, as to the witnesses against him? What right, as to the witnesses in his favor? What right, as to the assistance of counsel?

*7th Article.*—In what suits shall the right of trial by jury be preserved? In what way only shall the re-examination of facts tried by a jury be made?

*8th Article.*—What is said of bail, fines, and punishments?

Digitized by Google

## ARTICLE X.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people.

## ARTICLE XI.

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit, in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

## ARTICLE XIII.*

SECTION I.—Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SEC. II.—Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

## ARTICLE XIV.

SECTION I.—All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the state wherein they reside. No state shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citi-

---

*9th Article.*—What is said of rights retained by the people?

*10th Article.*—What is said of the powers reserved to the states?

*11th Article.*—What is said of the restriction upon the judicial power? What is the history of the eleventh amendment? *Ans.* It was proposed by Congress in 1794, and declared adopted in 1798.

*13th Article.*—SECTION I.—What is said of slavery and involuntary servitude?

SEC. II.—What power has Congress with reference to this subject? What is the history of the thirteenth amendment? *Ans.* It was proposed in 1865, and declared adopted in December of the same year. (See Const., Art. IV., Sec. II.)

ARTICLE XIV.—When was the 14th Article adopted? *Ans.* Having been ratified by three-fourths of the states it was declared adopted on the 28th of July, 1868.

* For the twelfth amendment, see page 25.

Digitized by Google

zens of the United States; nor shall any state deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SEC. II.—Representatives shall be apportioned among the several states according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each state, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for president and vice-president of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a state, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such state, being 21 years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such state.

SEC. III.—No person shall be a senator or representative in Congress, or elector of president and vice-president, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any state, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any state Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any state,

---

*Section* 1. Who are declared to be citizens of the United States? What restriction is imposed upon the states with regard to the privileges or immunities of citizens? What, with regard to the lives, liberty, or property of persons? What, with regard to the protection of the law given to persons?

*Sec.* 2. How are representatives and direct taxes apportioned among the states? How does this provision of the Constitution differ from the one formerly in force? (See Const., Art. I., Sec. II., 3d Clause.) When shall a reduction be made in the basis of representation to which a state may be entitled?

*Sec.* 3. What class of persons, in consequence of their rebellious acts, are deprived of certain exalted privileges? Name the privileges which are withheld from them. Is it possible for any person belonging to that class to have the privileges accorded to him? How? (See Const., Art. I., Sec. III., 3d Clause.)

Digitized by Google

to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each house, remove such disability.

SEC. IV.—The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any state shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SEC. V.—The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

## ARTICLE XV.

SEC. I.—The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SEC. II.—The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

*Sec.* 4. What shall not be questioned as regards the debts of the United States? What debts, obligations, and claims, are declared illegal and void? What restriction is imposed upon the General Government and individual states, with respect to such debts, obligations, and claims?

*Sec.* 5. What legislation may Congress enact in regard to the provisions of Article XIV.?

Digitized by Google

THE

# FAREWELL ADDRESS

OF

# GEORGE WASHINGTON,

## FIRST PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES,

ON HIS DECLINING A SECOND RE-ELECTION.

---

FRIENDS AND FELLOW-CITIZENS—

The period for a new election of a citizen to administer the executive government of the United States being not far distant, and the time actually arrived when your thoughts must be employed in designating the person who is to be clothed with that important trust, it appears to me proper, especially as it may conduce to a more distinct expression of the public voice, that I should now apprize you of the resolution I have formed, to decline being considered among the number of those out of whom a choice is to be made.

I beg you at the same time to do me the justice to be assured that this resolution has not been taken without a strict regard to all the considerations appertaining to the relation which binds a dutiful citizen to his country; and that in withdrawing the tender of service which silence in my situation might imply, I am influenced by no diminution of zeal for your future interest; no deficiency of grateful respect for your past kindness; but am supported by a full conviction that the step is compatible with both.

The acceptance of, and continuance hitherto in the office to which your suffrages have twice called me, have been a uniform sacrifice of inclination to the opinion of duty,

Digitized by Google

and to a deference for what appeared to be your desire. I constantly hoped that it would have been much earlier in my power, consistently with motives which I was not at liberty to disregard, to return to that retirement from which I had been reluctantly drawn. The strength of my inclination to do this previous to the last election, had even led to the preparation of an address to declare it to you; but mature reflection on the then perplexed and critical posture of our affairs with foreign nations, and the unanimous advice of persons entitled to my confidence, impelled me to abandon the idea.

I rejoice that the state of your concerns, external as well as internal, no longer renders the pursuit of inclination incompatible with the sentiment of duty or propriety; and am persuaded, whatever partiality may be retained for my services, that in the present circumstances of our country, you will not disapprove of my determination to retire.

The impressions with which I first undertook the arduous trust were explained on the proper occasion. In the discharge of this trust, I will only say, that I have with good intentions contributed toward the organization and administration of the government the best exertions of which a very fallible judgment was capable. Not unconscious, in the outset, of the inferiority of my qualifications, experience in my own eyes, perhaps still more in the eyes of others, has strengthened the motives to diffidence of myself; and every day the increasing weight of years admonishes me more and more, that the shade of retirement is as necessary to me as it will be welcome. Satisfied that if any circumstances have given peculiar value to my services, they were temporary, I have the consolation to believe, that while choice and prudence invite me to quit the political scene, patriotism does not forbid it.

Digitized by Google

In looking forward to the moment which is intended to terminate the career of my public life, my feelings do not permit me to suspend the deep acknowledgment of that debt of gratitude which I owe to my beloved country, for the many honors it has conferred upon me; still more for the steadfast confidence with which it has supported me; and for the opportunities I have thence enjoyed of manifesting my inviolable attachment, by services faithful and persevering, though in usefulness unequal to my zeal. If benefits have resulted to our country from these services, let it always be remembered to your praise, and as an instructive example in our annals, that under circumstances in which the passions, agitated in every direction, were liable to mislead, amidst appearances sometimes dubious—vicissitudes of fortune often discouraging—in situations in which not unfrequently want of success has countenanced the spirit of criticism—the constancy of your support was the essential prop of the efforts, and a guaranty of the plans by which they were effected. Profoundly penetrated with this idea, I shall carry it with me to my grave, as a strong incitement to unceasing wishes that Heaven may continue to you the choicest tokens of its beneficence:—that your union and brotherly affection may be perpetual—that the free constitution which is the work of your hands may be sacredly maintained—that its administration in every department may be stamped with wisdom and virtue—that, in fine, the happiness of the people of these states, under the auspices of liberty, may be made complete, by so careful a preservation, and so prudent a use of this blessing, as will acquire to them the glory of recommending it to the applause, the affection, and adoption of every nation which is yet a stranger to it.

Here, perhaps, I ought to stop. But a solicitude for your welfare, which cannot end but with my life, and the

Digitized by Google

apprehension of danger, natural to that solicitude, urge me, on an occasion like the present, to offer to your solemn contemplation, and to recommend to your frequent review, some sentiments, which are the result of much reflection, of no inconsiderable observation, and which appear to me all-important to the permanency of your felicity as a people. These will be offered to you with the more freedom, as you can only see in them the disinterested warnings of a parting friend, who can possibly have no personal motive to bias his counsel. Nor can I forget, as an encouragement to it, your indulgent reception of my sentiments on a former and not dissimilar occasion.

Interwoven as is the love of liberty with every ligament of your hearts, no recommendation of mine is necessary to fortify or confirm the attachment.

The unity of government which constitutes you one people, is also now dear to you. It is justly so; for it is a main pillar in the edifice of your real independence, the support of your tranquillity at home, your peace abroad; of your safety; of your prosperity; of that very liberty which you so highly prize. But as it is easy to foresee that from different causes and from different quarters, much pains will be taken, many artifices employed, to weaken in your minds the conviction of this truth; as this is the point in your political fortress against which the batteries of internal and external enemies will be most constantly and actively (though often covertly and insidiously) directed, it is of infinite moment that you should properly estimate the immense value of your national Union, to your collective and individual happiness; that you should cherish a cordial, habitual, and immovable attachment to it; accustoming yourselves to think and speak of it as of the palladium of your political safety and prosperity; watching for its preservation with jeal-

Digitized by Google

ous anxiety; discountenancing whatever may suggest even a suspicion that it can in any event be abandoned; and indignantly frowning upon the first dawning of every attempt to alienate any portion of our country from the rest, or to enfeeble the sacred ties which now link together the various parts.

For this you have every inducement of sympathy and interest. Citizens by birth or choice, of a common country, that country has a right to concentrate your affections. The name of AMERICAN, which belongs to you, in your national capacity, must always exalt the just pride of patriotism, more than any appellation derived from local discriminations. With slight shades of difference, you have the same religion, manners, habits, and political principles. You have in a common cause fought and triumphed together; the Independence and Liberty you possess are the work of joint councils and joint efforts, of common dangers, sufferings, and successes.

But these considerations, however powerfully they address themselves to your sensibility, are greatly outweighed by those which apply more immediately to your interest. Here every portion of our country finds the most commanding motives for carefully guarding and preserving the union of the whole.

The *North*, in an unrestrained intercourse with the *South*, protected by the equal laws of a common government, finds in the productions of the latter, great additional resources of maritime and commercial enterprise and precious materials of manufacturing industry. The *South*, in the same intercourse, benefiting by the agency of the *North*, sees its agriculture grow and its commerce expand. Turning partly into its own channels the seamen of the *North*, it finds its particular navigation invigorated; and while it contributes, in different ways, to nourish and increase the general mass of the national

Digitized by Google

navigation, it looks forward to the protection of a maritime strength, to which itself is unequally adapted.—The *East*, in a like intercourse with the *West*, already finds, and in the progressive improvement of interior communications, by land and water, will more and more find a valuable vent for the commodities which it brings from abroad or manufactures at home. The *West* derives from the *East* supplies requisite to its growth and comfort—and what is perhaps of still greater consequence, it must of necessity owe the *secure* enjoyment of indispensable *outlets* for its own productions to the weight, influence, and the future maritime strength of the Atlantic side of the Union, directed by an indissoluble community of interest as one nation. Any other tenure by which the *West* can hold this essential advantage, whether derived from its own separate strength, or from an apostate and unnatural connection with any foreign power, must be intrinsically precarious.

While then every part of our country thus feels the immediate and particular interest in Union, all the parts combined cannot fail to find in the united mass of means and efforts, greater strength, greater resource, proportionably greater security from external danger, a less frequent interruption of their peace by foreign nations; and what is of inestimable value, they must derive from Union an exemption from those broils and wars between themselves, which so frequently afflict neighboring countries, not tied together by the same government; which their own rivalship alone would be sufficient to produce, but which opposite foreign alliances, attachments, and intrigues would stimulate and embitter. Hence likewise they will avoid the necessity of those overgrown military establishments, which under any form of government are inauspicious to liberty, and which are to be regarded as particularly hostile to Republican Liberty. In this sense it is,

Digitized by Google

that your Union ought to be considered as the main prop of your liberty, and that the love of the one ought to endear to you the preservation of the other.

These considerations speak a persuasive language to every reflecting and virtuous mind, and exhibit the continuance of the Union as a primary object of patriotic desire. Is there a doubt whether a common government can embrace so large a sphere? Let experience solve it. To listen to mere speculation in such a case were criminal. We are authorized to hope that a proper organization of the whole, with the auxiliary agency of governments for the respective subdivisions, will afford a happy issue to the experiment. It is well worth a fair and full experiment. With such powerful and obvious motives to Union, affecting all parts of our country, while experience shall not have demonstrated its impracticability, there will always be reason to distrust the patriotism of those, who in any quarter may endeavor to weaken its bands.

In contemplating the causes which may disturb our Union, it occurs as matter of serious concern, that any ground should have been furnished for characterizing parties by *geographical* discriminations—*Northern* and *Southern*—*Atlantic* and *Western*; whence designing men may endeavor to excite a belief that there is a real difference of local interests and views. One of the expedients of party to acquire influence, within particular districts, is to misrepresent the opinions and aims of other districts. You cannot shield yourselves too much against the jealousies and heart-burnings which spring from these misrepresentations; they tend to render alien to each other those who ought to be bound together by fraternal affection. The inhabitants of our western country have lately had a useful lesson on this head: they have seen, in the negotiation by the Executive, and in the unanimous ratification by the Senate, of the treaty with Spain, and the

Digitized by Google

universal satisfaction at the event throughout the United States, a decisive proof how unfounded were the suspicions propagated among them of a policy in the general government, and in the Atlantic States, unfriendly to their interests in regard to the MISSISSIPPI: they have been witnesses to the formation of two treaties, that with Great Britain and that with Spain, which secure to them every thing they could desire, in respect to our foreign relations, toward confirming their prosperity. Will it not be their wisdom to rely for the preservation of these advantages on the UNION by which they were procured? Will they not henceforth be deaf to those advisers, if such there are, who would sever them from their brethren, and connect them with aliens?

To the efficacy and permanency of your Union, a Government for the whole is indispensable. No alliances, however strict, between the parts can be an adequate substitute; they must inevitably experience the infractions and interruptions which all alliances in all times have experienced. Sensible of this momentous truth, you have improved upon your first essay, by the adoption of a Constitution of Government better calculated than your former for an intimate Union, and for the efficacious management of your common concerns. This Government, the offspring of your own choice, uninfluenced and unawed, adopted upon full investigation and mature deliberation, completely free in its principles, in the distribution of its powers, uniting security with energy, and containing within itself a provision for its own amendment, has a just claim to your confidence and your support. Respect for its authority, compliance with its laws, acquiescence in its measures, are duties enjoined by the fundamental maxims of true liberty. The basis of our political systems is the right of the people to make, and to alter their Constitutions of Government. But the Constitution which at

Digitized by Google

any time exists, until changed by an explicit and authentic act of the whole people, is sacredly obligatory upon all. The very idea of the power and the right of the people to establish Government, presupposes the duty of every individual to obey the established Government.

All obstructions to the execution of the laws, all combinations and associations, under whatever plausible character, with the real design to direct, control, counteract or awe the regular deliberation and action of the constituted authorities, are destructive of this fundamental principle, and of fatal tendency. They serve to organize faction, to give it an artificial and extraordinary force—to put in the place of the delegated will of the nation, the will of a party, often a small but artful and enterprising minority of the community; and, according to the alternate triumphs of different parties, to make the public administration the mirror of the ill-concerted and incongruous projects of faction, rather than the organ of consistent and wholesome plans digested by common councils and modified by mutual interests.

However combinations or associations of the above description may now and then answer popular ends, they are likely, in the course of time and things, to become potent engines, by which cunning, ambitious, and unprincipled men will be enabled to subvert the power of the people, and to usurp for themselves the reins of government; destroying afterward the very engines which have lifted them to unjust dominion.

Toward the preservation of your government, and the permanency of your present happy state, it is requisite, not only that you steadily discountenance irregular oppositions to its acknowledged authority, but also that you resist with care the spirit of innovation upon its principles, however specious the pretexts.—One method of assault may be to effect in the form of the constitution

Digitized by Google

alterations which will impair the energy of the system, and thus to undermine what cannot be directly overthrown. In all the changes to which you may be invited, remember that time and habit are at least as necessary to fix the true character of governments, as of other human institutions; that experience is the surest standard by which to test the real tendency of the existing constitution of a country—that facility in changes upon the credit of mere hypothesis and opinion, exposes to perpetual change from the endless variety of hypothesis and opinion; and remember, especially, that for the efficient management of your common interests, in a country so extensive as ours, a government of as much vigor as is consistent with the perfect security of liberty, is indispensable. Liberty itself will find in such a government, with powers properly distributed and adjusted, its surest guardian. It is, indeed, little else than a name, where the government is too feeble to withstand the enterprises of faction, to confine each member of the society within the limits prescribed by the laws, and to maintain all in the secure and tranquil enjoyment of the rights of person and property.

I have already intimated to you the danger of parties in the state, with particular reference to the founding of them on geographical discriminations. Let me now take a more comprehensive view, and warn you in the most solemn manner against the baneful effects of the spirit of party, generally.

This spirit, unfortunately, is inseparable from our nature, having its root in the strongest passions of the human mind. It exists under different shapes in all governments, more or less stifled, controlled, or repressed; but in those of the popular form, it is seen in greatest rankness, and it is truly their worst enemy.

The alternate domination of one faction over another,

Digitized by Google

sharpened by the spirit of revenge, natural to party dissension, which in different ages and countries has perpetrated the most horrid enormities, is itself a frightful despotism. But this leads at length to a more formal and permanent despotism. The disorders and miseries which result, gradually incline the minds of men to seek security and repose in the absolute power of an individual: and sooner or later the chief of some prevailing faction, more able or more fortunate than his competitors, turns this disposition to the purposes of his own elevation, on the ruins of public liberty.

Without looking forward to an extremity of this kind (which nevertheless ought not to be entirely out of sight), the common and continual mischiefs of the spirit of party are sufficient to make it the interest and duty of a wise people to discourage and restrain it.

It serves always to distract the public councils, and enfeeble the public administration. It agitates the community with ill-founded jealousies and false alarms: kindles the animosity of one part against another, foments occasionally riot and insurrection. It opens the door to foreign influence and corruption, which find a facilitated access to the government itself through the channels of party passions. Thus the policy and the will of one country are subjected to the policy and will of another.

There is an opinion that parties in free countries are useful checks upon the administration of government, and serve to keep alive the spirit of liberty. This within certain limits is probably true: and in governments of a monarchical cast, patriotism may look with indulgence, if not with favor, upon the spirit of party. But in those of the popular character, in governments purely elective, it is a spirit not to be encouraged. From their natural tendency it is certain there will always be enough of that spirit for every salutary purpose. And there being con-

Digitized by Google

stant danger of excess, the effort ought to be, by force of public opinion, to mitigate and assuage it. A fire not to be quenched, it demands uniform vigilance to prevent its bursting into a flame, lest, instead of warming, it should consume.

It is important, likewise, that the habits of thinking, in a free country, should inspire caution in those intrusted with its administration, to confine themselves within their respective constitutional spheres, avoiding in the exercise of the powers of one department to encroach upon another. The spirit of encroachment tends to consolidate the powers of all departments in one, and thus to create, whatever the form of government, a real despotism. A just estimate of that love of power, and proneness to abuse it, which predominates in the human heart, is sufficient to satisfy us of the truth of this position. The necessity of reciprocal checks in the exercise of political power, by dividing and distributing it into different depositories, and constituting each the guardian of the public weal against invasions by the others, has been evinced by experiments ancient and modern: some of them in our country and under our own eyes. To preserve them must be as necessary as to institute them. If, in the opinion of the people, the distribution or modification of the constitutional powers be in any particular wrong, let it be corrected by an amendment in the way which the constitution designates. But let there be no change by usurpation; for though this, in one instance, may be the instrument of good, it is the customary weapon by which free governments are destroyed. The precedent must always greatly overbalance in permanent evil any partial or transient benefit which the use can at any time yield.

Of all the dispositions and habits which lead to political prosperity, Religion and Morality are indis-

Digitized by Google

pensable supports. In vain would that man claim the tributes of PATRIOTISM, who should labor to subvert these great pillars of human happiness, these firmest props of the duties of men and citizens. The mere politician, equally with the pious man, ought to respect and to cherish them. A volume could not trace all their connections with private and public felicity. Let it simply be asked, where is the security for property, for reputation, for life, if the sense of religious obligation desert the oaths which are the instruments of investigation in courts of justice? And let us with caution indulge the supposition, that morality can be maintained without religion. Whatever may be conceded to the influence of refined education on minds of peculiar structure, reason and experience both forbid us to expect that national morality can prevail in exclusion of religious principle.

It is substantially true, that virtue or morality is a necessary spring of popular government. The rule indeed extends with more or less force to every species of free government. Who that is a sincere friend to it, can look with indifference upon attempts to shake the foundation of the fabric?

Promote then, as an object of primary importance, institutions for the general diffusion of knowledge. In proportion as the structure of a government gives force to public opinion, it is essential that public opinion should be enlightened.

As a very important source of strength and security, cherish public credit. One method of preserving it, is to use it as sparingly as possible—avoiding occasions of expense by cultivating peace; but remember also that timely disbursements to prepare for danger, frequently prevent much greater disbursements to repel it; avoiding likewise

Digitized by Google

the accumulation of debt, not only by shunning occasions of expense, but by vigorous exertions in time of peace to discharge the debts which unavoidable wars may have occasioned, not ungenerously throwing upon posterity the burden which we ourselves ought to bear. The execution of these maxims belongs to your Representatives, but it is necessary that public opinion should co-operate. To facilitate to them the performance of their duty, it is essential that you should practically bear in mind, that toward the payment of debts there must be revenue; that to have revenue there must be taxes; that no taxes can be devised which are not more or less inconvenient and unpleasant; that the intrinsic embarrassment inseparable from the selection of the proper objects (which is always a choice of difficulties) ought to be a decisive motive for a candid construction of the conduct of the government in making it, and for a spirit of acquiescence in the measures for obtaining revenue which the public exigencies may at any time dictate.

Observe good faith and justice toward all nations, cultivate peace and harmony with all: religion and morality enjoin this conduct; and can it be that good policy does not equally enjoin it? It will be worthy of a free, enlightened, and, at no distant period, a great nation, to give to mankind the magnanimous and too novel example of a people always guided by an exalted justice and benevolence. Who can doubt but in the course of time and things, the fruits of such a plan would richly repay any temporary advantage which might be lost by a steady adherence to it? Can it be, that Providence has not connected the permanent felicity of a nation with its virtue? The experiment, at least, is recommended by every sentiment which ennobles human nature. Alas! is it rendered impossible by its vices?

Digitized by Google

In the execution of such a plan, nothing is more essential than that permanent, inveterate antipathies against particular nations, and passionate attachments for others, should be excluded; and that in place of them just and amicable feelings toward all should be cultivated. The nation which indulges toward another an habitual hatred or an habitual fondness, is in some degree a slave. It is a slave to its animosity or to its affection, either of which is sufficient to lead it astray from its duty and its interest. Antipathy in one nation against another, disposes each more readily to offer insult and injury, to lay hold of slight causes of umbrage, and to be haughty and intractable, when accidental or trifling occasions of dispute occur. Hence frequent collisions, obstinate, envenomed, and bloody contests. The nation, prompted by ill-will and resentment, sometimes impels to war the government, contrary to the best calculations of policy. The government sometimes participates in the national propensity, and adopts through passion what reason would reject; at other times, it makes the animosity of the nation subservient to projects of hostility instigated by pride, ambition, and other sinister and pernicious motives. The peace often, sometimes perhaps the liberty, of nations has been the victim.

So, likewise, a passionate attachment of one nation for another produces a variety of evils. Sympathy for the favorite nation, facilitating the illusion of an imaginary common interest in cases where no real common interest exists, and infusing into one the enmities of the other, betrays the former into a participation in the quarrels and wars of the latter, without adequate inducement or justification. It leads also to concessions to the favorite nation of privileges denied to others, which is apt doubly to injure the nation making the concessions, by unnecessarily parting with what ought to have been retained;

Digitized by Google

and by exciting jealousy, ill-will, and a disposition to retaliate, in the parties from whom equal privileges are withheld: And it gives to ambitious, corrupted, or deluded citizens (who devote themselves to the favorite nation) facility to betray or sacrifice the interests of their own country, without odium, sometimes even with popularity: gilding with the appearance of a virtuous sense of obligation a commendable deference for public opinion, or a laudable zeal for public good, the base or foolish compliances of ambition, corruption, or infatuation.

As avenues to foreign influence in innumerable ways, such attachments are particularly alarming to the truly enlightened and independent patriot. How many opportunities do they afford to tamper with domestic factions; to practise the arts of sedition, to mislead public opinion, to influence or awe the public councils! Such an attachment of a small or weak, toward a great and powerful nation, dooms the former to be the satellite of the latter. Against the insidious wiles of foreign influence (I conjure you to believe me, fellow-citizens) the jealousy of a free people ought to be *constantly* awake; since history and experience prove that foreign influence is one of the most baneful foes of Republican Government. But that jealousy to be useful must be impartial; else it becomes the instrument of the very influence to be avoided, instead of a defence against it. Excessive partiality for one foreign nation, and excessive dislike of another, cause those whom they actuate to see danger only on one side, and serve to veil and even second the arts of influence on the other. Real patriots, who may resist the intrigues of the favorite, are liable to become suspected and odious; while its tools and dupes usurp the applause and confidence of the people, to surrender their interest.

The great rule of conduct for us, in regard to foreign nations, is, in extending our commercial relations, to have

Digitized by Google

with them as little political connection as possible. So far as we have already formed engagements, let them be fulfilled with perfect good faith. Here let us stop.

Europe has a set of primary interests, which to us have none, or a very remote relation. Hence she must be engaged in frequent controversies, the causes of which are essentially foreign to our concerns. Hence, therefore, it must be unwise in us to implicate ourselves, by artificial ties, in the ordinary vicissitudes of her politics, or the ordinary combinations and collisions of her friendships or enmities.

Our detached and distant situation invites and enables us to pursue a different course. If we remain one people, under an efficient government, the period is not far off when we may defy material injury from external annoyance; when we may take such an attitude as will cause the neutrality we may at any time resolve upon to be scrupulously respected; when belligerent nations, under the impossibility of making acquisitions upon us, will not lightly hazard the giving us provocation; when we may choose peace or war, as our interest, guided by justice, shall counsel.

Why forego the advantages of so peculiar a situation? Why quit our own to stand upon foreign ground? Why, by interweaving our destiny with that of any part of Europe, entangle our peace and prosperity in the toils of European ambition, rivalship, interest, humor, or caprice?

It is our true policy to steer clear of permanent alliances with any portion of the foreign world: so far, I mean, as we are now at liberty to do it; for let me not be understood as capable of patronizing infidelity to existing engagements. I hold the maxim no less applicable to public than to private affairs, that honesty is always the best policy. I repeat it, therefore, let those engagements be observed in their genuine sense. But, in my

Digitized by Google

opinion, it is unnecessary, and would be unwise to extend them.

Taking care always to keep ourselves, by suitable establishments, on a respectable defensive posture, we may safely trust to temporary alliances for extraordinary emergencies.

Harmony, and a liberal intercourse with all nations, are recommended by policy, humanity, and interest.

But even our commercial policy should hold an equal and impartial hand; neither seeking nor granting exclusive favors or preferences;—consulting the natural course of things; diffusing and diversifying by gentle means the streams of commerce, but forcing nothing; establishing, with powers so disposed, in order to give trade a stable course, to define the rights of our merchants, and to enable the government to support them, conventional rules of intercourse, the best that present circumstances and mutual opinion will permit, but temporary, and liable to be from time to time abandoned or varied, as experience and circumstances shall dictate; constantly keeping in view, that it is folly in one nation to look for disinterested favors from another: that it must pay with a portion of its independence for whatever it may accept under that character; that by such acceptance, it may place itself in the condition of having given equivalents for nominal favors, and yet of being reproached with ingratitude for not giving more. There can be no greater error than to expect, or calculate upon, real favors from nation to nation. It is an illusion which experience must cure, which a just pride ought to discard.

In offering to you, my countrymen, these counsels of an old and affectionate friend, I dare not hope they will make the strong and lasting impression I could wish—that they will control the usual current of the passions, or prevent our nation from running the course which has

Digitized by Google

hitherto marked the destiny of nations: But if I may even flatter myself that they may be productive of some partial benefit, some occasional good; that they may now and then recur to moderate the fury of party spirit, to warn against the mischiefs of foreign intrigue, to guard against the impostures of pretended patriotism; this hope will be a full recompense for the solicitude for your welfare by which they have been dictated.

How far in the discharge of my official duties I have been guided by the principles which have been delineated, the public records and other evidences of my conduct must witness to you and to the world. To myself, the assurance of my own conscience is, that I have at least believed myself to be guided by them.

In relation to the still subsisting war in Europe, my proclamation of the 22d of April, 1793, is the index to my plan. Sanctioned by your approving voice, and by that of your Representatives in both Houses of Congress, the spirit of that measure has continually governed me, uninfluenced by any attempts to deter or divert me from it.

After deliberate examination, with the aid of the best lights I could obtain, I was well satisfied that our country, under all the circumstances of the case, had a right to take, and was bound in duty and interest to take, a neutral position. Having taken it, I determined, as far as should depend upon me, to maintain it with moderation, perseverance, and firmness.

The considerations which respect the right to hold this conduct, it is not necessary on this occasion to detail. I will only observe, that according to my understanding of the matter, that right, so far from being denied by any of the Belligerent Powers, has been virtually admitted by all.

The duty of holding a neutral conduct may be inferred, without any thing more, from the obligation which jus-

Digitized by Google

tice and humanity impose on every nation, in cases in which it is free to act, to maintain inviolate the relations of peace and amity toward other nations.

The inducements of interest for observing that conduct will best be referred to your own reflections and experience. With me, a predominant motive has been to endeavor to gain time to our country to settle and mature its yet recent institutions, and to progress, without interruption, to that degree of strength and consistency which is necessary to give it, humanly speaking, the command of its own fortunes.

Though, in reviewing the incidents of my administration, I am unconscious of intentional error, I am nevertheless too sensible of my own defects, not to think it probable that I may have committed many errors. Whatever they may be, I fervently beseech the Almighty to avert or mitigate the evils to which they may tend. I shall also carry with me the hope that my country will never cease to view them with indulgence; and that after forty-five years of my life dedicated to its service, with an upright zeal, the faults of incompetent abilities will be consigned to oblivion, as myself must soon be to the mansions of rest.

Relying on its kindness in this as in other things, and actuated by that fervent love toward it, which is so natural to a man who views in it the native soil of himself and his progenitors for several generations; I anticipate with pleasing expectation that retreat, in which I promise myself to realize, without alloy, the sweet enjoyment of partaking, in the midst of my fellow-citizens, the benign influence of good laws under a free government—the ever favorite object of my heart, and the happy reward, as I trust, of our mutual cares, labors, and dangers.

G. WASHINGTON.

UNITED STATES,
17th September, 1796.

Digitized by Google

# QUESTIONS

## FOR TOPICAL STUDY AND RECITATION.

THE pupils should gather the required information from the pages referred to, as well as from the statements found in connection with these topical headings; and, after arranging the facts in chronological order, should give connected accounts, in writing or otherwise, as directed by the teacher.

*The numbers following the questions refer to the pages of the History; the Ap., with the numbers in connection therewith, to the pages of the Appendix.*

1. *Give a sketch of the life of John Adams*.. .... 98, 106, 107, 108, 109, 137, Ap. 8
   Was born at Quincy, Massachusetts, in 1735.
2. *Give an account of Samuel Adams*.... .....69, 70, Ap. 8
   Was born at Boston, in 1722, where he died in 1803.
3. *Give an account of John Quincy Adams*..... .....137, 138, note 2, p. 155 a.
   Son of John Adams, 2d president of the U. S., was born near Boston, in 1767. While at Washington, in February, 1848, occupying his seat as a member of the House of Representatives, he had a shock of paralysis, of which he died a few hours after.
4. *Give an account of Ethan Allen* .....69
   Born in Connecticut in 1737; died in Vermont in 1789. In the dispute growing out of the claim made by New York to Vermont (p. 107), Allen took a conspicuous part, being commander of a military force for the latter. In the expedition conducted by Montgomery against Canada (p. 72) he was captured; and being sent to England in irons, was held a captive two years.
5. *Give an account of Major John André*..... .....93, 94, note 9, p. 104 d.
   Born in London in 1751. His body was buried at Tappan, but, in 1821, it was disinterred and removed to England, where it was placed in Westminster Abbey beneath a costly monument.
6. *Give an account of Sir Edmund Andros*.....30, 31, 34, 39, 40
   Andros was born in England in 1637, and died there in 1714. In 1674 he was appointed governor of New York, and received its surrender by the Dutch after their fifteen months' repossession of it. In 1680 he seized the government of East Jersey, depriving the governor, Philip Carteret, brother of the proprietor, of his office. In 1681 he was recalled to England. New England having been consolidated, he was appointed its governor in 1686. In 1688, New York and New Jersey were added to his jurisdiction. (Brodhead's History of New York, and Palfrey's of New England, treat the story of the rescue of the Connecticut Charter and its concealment in the hollow of a tree (p. 30) as a "tradition." Palfrey says: "No writing of the period alludes to this remarkable occurrence.") After the trial of Andros on the charges preferred by the people of Massachusetts (p. 34), which ended without any judicial decision, he was made governor of Virginia, in which position he acted with moderation.
7. *Give an account of John Armstrong*.....58
   Was a native of Pennsylvania, and, as a general in the American army during the Revolution, rendered good service in the defence of Ft. Moultrie (p. 74) and at the battles of Brandywine and Germantown.
8. *Give an account of John Armstrong, Jr*..... 98, 126
   Son of the preceding, was also in the Revolution. He was the author of the "Newburg Addresses," written at the close of the war to quicken Congress

Digitized by Google

to do justice to the soldiers. They produced discontent among the officers, and had it not been for the wisdom of Washington (p. 98, might have led to unfortunate results. He was secretary of war in 1814, when the British captured the city of Washington, and was unjustly censured for the disaster.

9. *Give an account of Benedict Arnold*.... .....69, 72, 78, 83, 84, 92, 94, 97
Born in Norwich, Conn., in 1740; died in London in 1801. After his treason, at the head of an expedition against Virginia, he set fire to Richmond (1781). Lafayette was sent to capture the traitor, but, owing to the inferiority of his force, did not succeed. To one of the prisoners captured by the British, Arnold put the question: "If the Americans should catch me, what would they do with me?" The prompt reply was: "They would cut off your leg that was wounded at Saratoga and bury it with the honors of war, but the rest of you they would hang." After the war Arnold made several attempts to engage in business in British America and the West Indies. Finally he went to England, where he lived in obscurity, everybody avoiding him.

10. *What account can you give of Gen. Robert Anderson?*.....158, 159, 160
Born in Kentucky in 1805; took an active part in the war against the Seminoles (p. 139; was with Scott in Mexico (p. 147); in 1861 was appointed a general in the U. S. army, but, in consequence of failing health, was not able to participate in active military service. He died in France in 1871.

11. *Give an account of Nathaniel Bacon*..... .. ..... 23
Bacon and his party entered Jamestown, but fearing they could not hold it, and being unwilling that it should be used by Berkeley's party, they burned it. Only some slight ruins of the town remain. (See note, p. 23.)

12. *Give an account of Col. E. D. Baker*..... .....163
Born in England in 1811, resigned his position as a member of Congress when the Mexican war broke out, and joined Scott (p. 147). At the time of his death he was a United States senator from Oregon.

13. *Give an account of Gen. Nathaniel P. Banks*.....170, 171, 175, 177
Born in Massachusetts in 1816, was a representative in Congress several years; was elected speaker of the House in 1854, after an exciting contest of two months; was governor of Massachusetts; and again in Congress.

14. *Give an account of Commodore Wm. Bainbridge*..... 110, 117
Born in New Jersey in 1774; died in Philadelphia in 1833. Was in command of the frigate Philadelphia when she struck on a rock and was captured (p. 110), and he was held in captivity nineteen months.

15. *Give an account of Gen. P. G. T. Beauregard*..... 160, 161, 162, 169
Born in Louisiana, received a military education at West Point, and was a lieutenant in Scott's army in Mexico (p. 147).

16. *Give an account of the Committees of Correspondence.*
The system adopted by the patriots of the Revolution, in 1772, of holding correspondence among the colonies, was the invention of Samuel Adams. By means of it, the different colonies were informed of the intentions, plans, and doings of each other: and thus unity of action was attained.

17. *History of Slavery*. 21, 39, 136, 141, 150, 151, 152, 157, 158, 183, 186, 215, 220; Ap. 22.
It is computed that 300,000 slaves were imported into the thirteen colonies up to the time of the Declaration of Independence (1776). Slavery existed in all of the states until 1780. The northern states then, one after another, most of them by a system of gradual emancipation, began to abolish slavery.

18. *The wars of European origin before the French and Indian, and the causes of each* ..... .....34, 35, 36

19. *By what treaties, and when, were they terminated?*.....34, 35, 36, 3.

20. *When did the British evacuate the different ports after the Revolution?*...98, 101

Digitized by Google

21. *Give an account of General Braxton Bragg*..... 169, 170, 173, 175
Born in North Carolina about 1815, received a military education at West Point, and held a command, first as lieutenant and afterward as captain, in Taylor's army during the Mexican war. Died in Texas, in 1876.

22. *Give an account of Gen. Edward Braddock*..... 57, 58
Born in Scotland. Before he came to America he had been forty years in the British army, serving in the wars against Spain, Portugal, and Germany.

23. *Give an account of Gen. Jacob Brown*..... 121, 123, 124, 125
Born in Pennsylvania in 1775. In early life he was a Quaker and a schoolteacher. At his death, which occurred at Washington in 1828, he held the supreme command in the United States army.

24. *Give an account of James Buchanan*..... 152, 157, 158, 159
Born in Pennsylvania in 1791; died there in 1868. He was a representative in Congress, envoy extraordinary to St. Petersburg, United States senator, secretary of state, and minister to England.

25. *Give an account of Don Carlos Buell*..... 166, 168, 169, 170
Born in Ohio, received a military education at West Point, and distinguished himself in the two Mexican campaigns conducted by Taylor and Scott.

26. *Give an account of Gen. John Burgoyne*..... 69, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85
Born in England. After his surrender to Gates he returned to England, where he was coldly received in Parliament, of which body he was a member. He wrote several dramas, and died in London in 1792.

27. *Give an account of Gen. A. E. Burnside*..... 167, 172, 173, 175
Born in Indiana in 1824, received a military education at West Point, and, after the Great Civil War, was governor of Rhode Island.

28. *Give an account of Aaron Burr*.....71, 72, 86, 109, 111
Born in New Jersey in 1756. He graduated at the College of New Jersey (Princeton), accompanied Arnold in the expedition against Canada (p. 72), and distinguished himself in the battles of Quebec (p. 72) and Monmouth (p. 86). His death occurred on Staten Island, N. Y., in 1836.

29. *Give an account of Gen. B. F. Butler*..... 161, 163, 169, 175, 179, 181
Born in New Hampshire in 1818, graduated at college, and acquired a high reputation as a lawyer. After the Great Civil War he was a member of the U. S. House of Representatives from Massachusetts, and was one of the seven managers by whom President Johnson's impeachment was conducted before the Senate (p. 185).

30. *Give an account of John and Sebastian Cabot*..... 10, 54
It is not known when and where these navigators were born, nor at what time and place they died, though it is supposed they were natives of Italy.

31. *Give an account of John C. Calhoun*..... 138, 139
Born in South Carolina in 1782, graduated at Yale College, was admitted to the bar, was a representative in both Houses of Congress, and was secretary of war in Monroe's cabinet, and secretary of state in Tyler's. His death occurred at Washington in 1850.

32. *Give an account of Henry Clay*..... 139, 151
Born in Virginia in 1777, was admitted to the bar, and was elected to Congress from Kentucky, where he was many years speaker of the House of Representatives, and afterward a senator. He was one of the commissioners that signed the treaty at Ghent in 1814 (p. 129). His death occurred at Washington in 1852. (He was often called by his political friends "the Mill-Boy of the Slashes," in allusion to the fact that, when a boy, he was often sent on errands to a place near his home called "the Slashes," where there was a mill.)

Digitized by Google

33. *Give an account of Sir Henry Clinton*.....69, 73, 75, 84, 91, 93, 97
After the Revolution he was appointed governor of Gibraltar. He died in 1795.

34. *Give an account of Christopher Columbus*.....5, 9, 10
The most of his life, previous to its great event, was passed on the waters of the Mediterranean and off the west coast of Africa. He made a voyage toward Greenland, passing beyond Iceland. Having, in 1498, reached America the third time, he began to govern a colony which he had previously established at Hispaniola; but his efforts were misrepresented, charges were made against him, and he was sent to Spain in chains. This outrage produced great indignation throughout Spain, and the king consequently disclaimed having authorized it. (Read Note 1, end of Sec. I.)

35. *Give an account of Lord Charles Cornwallis*.....76, 77, 78, 91, 92, 95, 96, 97
After the Revolution he was appointed to an important command in India, where he inaugurated a series of victories by which the British authority there was finally established. He died in India in 1805.

36. *Give an account of Fernando Cortez*..... 11, 12. Topic 51, Appendix, p. 66.
Born in Spain in 1485, and died there neglected and in solitude in the 63d year of his age. In 1535-6, he explored part of the western coast of Mexico.

37. *Give an account of Col. George Croghan*.....114, 118, 119
Born in Kentucky in 1791. He was in the battles of Tippecanoe and Fort Meigs (May 5), and served with Taylor in Mexico. His death occurred at New Orleans in 1849.

38. *Give an account of Gen. S. R. Curtis*.....143, 167
Born in Ohio in 1807; received a military education at West Point, served under Taylor in Mexico, and was a representative in Congress from Iowa.

39. *What can you state of Kosciusko?*.....84; Note 6, p. 104 b.
Thaddeus Kosciusko, a Polish patriot, was with Gates in the two battles of Stillwater, and afterward distinguished himself as an adjutant of Washington. He died in Switzerland in 1817, his death being caused by a fall from his horse over a precipice. His remains were removed by the Emperor Alexander of Russia, to the cathedral church of Cracow, Poland, where they repose by the side of other Polish heroes.

40. *Give the early history of the city of Boston*.....26, 67, 68, 70, 72, 73

41. *Give an account of the Rev. John Davenport*.....30
Born in England; was the minister of a church at New Haven for thirty years, and afterward of another church at Boston, where he died.

42. *Give an account of Jefferson Davis*.....159, 160, 182, 188
Born in Kentucky in 1808; received a military education at West Point, served with credit in the Black Hawk (p. 138) and Mexican wars, was a representative in Congress and a U. S. senator from Mississippi, and secretary of war in President Pierce's cabinet.

43. *Give an account of General Dearborn*.....121
Henry Dearborn was born in New Hampshire in 1751; was in the battle of Bunker Hill (p. 70), was with Arnold in the expedition against Canada (p. 72), and was taken prisoner at the attack upon Quebec. Being exchanged, he served under Gates in the Northern campaign (p. 84), and did good service in the battle of Monmouth (p. 86), in Sullivan's expedition against the Indians (p. 90), and in the operations before Yorktown (p. 97). He died in 1829.

44. *What can you state of Silas Deane?*.....78
Born in Connecticut, and was a member of the first Continental Congress. In consequence of the extravagant contracts he made in France, he was recalled, and John Adams was appointed commissioner in his place. He died in England in poverty.

Digitized by Google

45. *Give an account of Commodore Stephen Decatur, Jr.*..... 110, 117, 130
Born in Maryland in 1779. The affair between the Chesapeake and the Leopard in 1807 (p. 111), in the opinion of Decatur, was disgraceful, and he did not hesitate to speak in severe terms of the conduct of Commodore Barron, who commanded the Chesapeake on that occasion. The consequence was a duel with Barron, thirteen years after, in which Decatur was killed.

46. *What can you state of the Baron Dieskau?*..... 57, 58
Was a German general, and served in France and Germany. After being wounded (p. 58), he returned to Europe, and died at Paris in 1767.

47. *Give a sketch of D'Estaing's life*..... 85, 86, 87, 90, 91
Born in France in 1729; was a member of the Assembly of Notables in the French Revolution, but, falling under the suspicion of the Terrorists, was guillotined in 1794.

48. *Give the history of Delaware*.... ..... 44, 45, 46, 160; Ap. 11, 14
Delaware Bay and River were so named in honor of Lord Delaware, one of the early governors of Virginia: whence the name of the State.

49. *Give a sketch of the life of Baron De Kalb*.... ..... 92
Born in 1732, in a German province then held by France; was an officer in the French army just previous to the time he came to America with Lafayette in 1777, was second in command under Gates, and died three days after the battle of Sanders Creek.

50. *What can you state of the "Jersey Prison-Ship?"*..... .....
During the Revolution, the British used the hulks of their decaying ships for the imprisonment of captives. One of these, the Jersey Prison-Ship, which was anchored near Brooklyn, N. Y., is noted for the inhuman treatment which its prisoners received, hundreds of whom died in consequence.

51. *Give the history of California*.... Note 11, p. 17 f., 150, 151; Note 6, p. 155 b.
"A romance was published in Spain in 1510, in which the word California, applied to an imaginary island, for the first time occurred. Cortez had read the book, it is supposed; and when he sailed along the west coast of Mexico, in 1535, supposing he was in the region of the island, he called the country California."

52. *Give the history of Connecticut*.... 28, 29, 30, 32, 51, 68, 78, 89, 126; Ap. 11, 13

53. *Give a sketch of Dr. Franklin's life*..... 78, 98; Note 15, p. 104 f.; Ap. 8
Benjamin Franklin, a philosopher and statesman, was born at Boston in 1706. He learned the printing business in Boston, followed it in Philadelphia, and, after a trip to England, became postmaster of Philadelphia. About the year 1746 he began to make experiments in electricity, applying his discoveries to the invention of lightning-rods for the protection of buildings. The people of Pennsylvania and other Colonies becoming dissatisfied with the rule which the colonial proprietors exercised, Franklin was sent to England to gain redress; and in this he was successful. He again went to Europe, both before and after the Revolution; was a member of the committee to draft the Declaration of Independence; and signed, in France, the treaty of alliance between that country and the United States (p. 85). He died in Philadelphia, in the 85th year of his age.

54. *Give the history of Florida*..... 11, 12, 13, 14, note p. 17, 63, 98, 127, 128, 135, 153, 154, 158, 159, 177; Table of States.

55. *Give a sketch of the life of John C. Fremont*..... 146, 147, 152, 163, 171

56. *What can you state of Millard Fillmore?*..... 151, 152
Born in New York in 1800. Before his election to the vice-presidency he held several public positions in the state of New York, and served four terms as a representative in Congress. His death occurred at Buffalo, in 1874.

Digitized by Google

57. *What account can you give of Admiral Farragut?* ..... 169, 181
David G. Farragut was born in Tennessee in 1801. At the early age of eleven he became a midshipman, which position he held on board the Essex when that vessel captured the Alert (p. 117). After the Great Civil War, he crossed the Atlantic in a government vessel, and visited the principal seaports of Europe. He died in 1870.

58. *Give a sketch of Admiral Foote's life*..... .. ..... ... 166, 168
Andrew H. Foote was born in Connecticut in 1806. He spent the most of his life in the naval service of his country, and was an active friend of religious and philanthropic enterprises. His death occurred at New York in 1863, as he was preparing to take charge of the squadron off Charleston.

59. *State what you can of General Gage*... ..... ..... 67, 68, 69

60. *Give a sketch of the life of General Gates* ..... 84, 92, 95
Horatio Gates was born in England in 1728. He was an officer in Braddock's expedition, in 1755, and was severely wounded in the battle of the Monongahela. After the Revolutionary War, he resided in Virginia, and subsequently removed to New York, where he died in 1806.

61. *Give the history of Georgia*..... 48, 68, 87, 88, 90, 91, 135, 158, 175, 180, 183; Ap. 11, 14; Table of States.

62. *What can you state of Bartholomew Gosnold?* ..... ..... 15, 18

63. *Give a sketch of Gen. Grant's life*..163, 166, 168, 169, 175, 177, 178, 182, 183, 186
Ulysses S. Grant was born in Ohio in 1822; received a military education at West Point, participated in the battles of Palo Alto (p. 144), Resaca de la Palma, Monterey, and in every one of Scott's battles in Mexico. At the commencement of the Great Civil War, he was engaged in commercial business at Galena, Illinois, and was among the first to offer his services to the government.

64. *Give a sketch of General Greene's life*..... 95, 96
Nathaniel Greene was born of Quaker parents, in Rhode Island, in 1742. He aided, at the beginning of the Revolution, in driving the British from Boston (pp. 72, 73), and took a prominent part in the battles of Trenton, Princeton, Brandywine, and Germantown. He died of "sunstroke," in Georgia, in 1786.

65. *Give a sketch of Alexander Hamilton's life*..... Note 16, p. 104 f., 106, 111
Hamilton was born in one of the West India Islands in 1757. At the age of thirteen he was sent to New York to be educated. At the beginning of the Revolution he was one of the first to take up arms in behalf of the patriots, performing a creditable part as captain of an artillery company in the battle of Long Island. By his activity and intelligence he attracted the attention of Washington, and after the battles of Trenton and Princeton, in both of which he was engaged, he accepted an invitation from Washington to take a place on his staff, as aide-de-camp. He participated in the battles of Brandywine, Germantown, and Monmouth. (See Note 6, p. 113 b.)

66. *Give a sketch of the life of Nathan Hale*..... 75
He was born in Connecticut in 1755; graduated at Yale College, and became a teacher. Directly after the battle of Lexington he entered the army as lieutenant, and before the close of the year was promoted to be a captain. After the battle of Long Island (p. 75) and the retreat of the American army, Washington desired to gain a knowledge of the condition of the enemy on Long Island, and Hale volunteered for the service: but, as he was returning with the information, he was arrested by the enemy, and, on the following morning (Sep. 22, 1776), was hung as a spy, saying, with his last breath: "I only regret that I have but one life to lose for my country."

Digitized by Google

67. *In what respects do the cases of Hale and Arnold differ?*.....93, 94

68. *Give a sketch of John Hancock's life*.....69; Ap. 6
He was born in Massachusetts, in 1737, and died there in 1793. He was the president of the second Continental Congress (p. 71). After the Revolution he was elected governor of Massachusetts, and, with the exception of an interval of two years, was annually re-elected till his death.

69. *Give a sketch of General Harrison's life*.....114, 118, 119, 120, 141
He was born in Virginia in 1773. His father's name was Benjamin (Ap. 8). At the age of eighteen he joined the army, served under St. Clair (p. 107) and Wayne, and was governor of Indiana Territory (p. 136).

70. *Give a sketch of Patrick Henry's life*.....66, 71. Topic 233, Ap. p. 84.
Born in Virginia in 1736; died there in 1799. Was admitted to the bar; was a member of "The First Continental Congress" (p. 68), and governor of Virginia. He opposed the adoption of the Federal Constitution (p. 99). Without doubt he was the most gifted orator in America during his time.

71. *What can you state of General Joseph Hooker?*.....178, 179
Was born in Massachusetts in 1815; received a military education at West Point, distinguished himself in the Mexican War, and in McClellan's Peninsula (p. 170) and Antietam battles.

72. *Give a sketch of Henry Hudson's life*.....87
Hudson made four voyages for the purpose of finding a shorter passage to the Pacific than the one around Cape Horn. While in the large bay which now bears his name, during his fourth voyage, in 1610, a mutiny occurred among his men, and he, with eight who remained faithful to him, was put into an open boat, and abandoned. No tidings were ever afterward heard of him.

73. *State what you can of General Hull*.....Note 2, p. 134 a. 115, 116
William Hull was born in Connecticut in 1753. He fought with courage in the battles of White Plains, Trenton, Princeton, Bemis Heights, Saratoga, Monmouth, and Stony Point. After his surrender of Detroit he was tried by a court-martial, pronounced guilty of cowardice in making the surrender, and sentenced to be shot; but, in consideration of his age and revolutionary services, President Madison remitted the sentence. He died in 1825.

74. *What can you state of Captain Hull?*.....117
Captain Isaac Hull, afterward Commodore, was a nephew of General Hull. During the war with the Barbary States, from 1803 to 1805, he served with distinction. He was born in Connecticut in 1775; died in Philadelphia in 1843.

75. *Give the History of Harper's Ferry*.....156, 157, 160, 161, 173
During the Civil War the Confederates had possession of the place three times. It contains a United States arsenal.

76. *Give the history of Illinois*.....98, 136; Table of the States.
"Illinois was so named from its principal river. The word, an Indian one, is said to signify *the river of men*," or "a perfect and accomplished man."

77. *Give the history of Indiana*....190, 98, 107, 130, 134, 136, and Table of States.

78. *Give the history of Iowa*.....110, and Table of the States.
"Iowa is an Indian name, meaning '*Here is the place.*'"

79. *Give a sketch of Andrew Jackson's life*.....121, 128, 135, 137, 138, 139, 140
He was born in North Carolina in 1767; died in Tennessee in 1845. Though but a boy during the Revolution, he took an active part in behalf of the patriots. He became a lawyer, a representative, and U. S. senator from Tennessee, and governor of Florida. (See Note 3, p. 134 a., Note 8, p 134 c., Note 1, p. 155 a; and Topic 222, Ap. p. 80.)

80. *Name in order the important events in Jackson's administration*.....152

Digitized by Google

81. *What can you state of "Stonewall" Jackson?* ..... 171
Born in Virginia in 1824; was a graduate of West Point, and served in the Mexican war. It was remarked by one of his officers, that in the battle of Bull Run he "stood like a stone wall;" hence he was afterward popularly known as "Stonewall Jackson." He was accidentally wounded by his own men at the battle of Chancellorsville, May 2d, 1863, and died in consequence, eight days after.

82. *John Jay*..... 98, 108, 109, Note 16, p. 104 f., Note 2, p. 113 a.
Born in New York city in 1745; died in 1829. Was a member of "The First Continental Congress" (p. 68), rendered important aid in favor of the adoption of the Constitution (p. 99), and was the first chief-justice of the United States.

83. *Give an account of Sir William Johnson*..... 57, 58, 61
Born in Ireland in 1715; died at his residence about fifty miles from Albany, N. Y., in 1774. For his services, in 1755 he was made a baronet.

84. *Sketch Jefferson's life*... 74, Note 16, p. 104 f., 106, 109, 110, 111, 112, 137; Ap. 8
Born in Virginia in 1743, and died there. Though Jefferson was one of the ablest statesmen and one of the most forcible writers the country has produced, he never made a formal public speech. During the debate on the adoption of the Declaration of Independence, he was silent.

85. *Name the important events of Jefferson's administration*, 112, 113; Introduction

86. *What can you state of Paul Jones?*..... 90
Born in Scotland in 1747. After the Revolution he entered the Russian naval service, and died at Paris, in poverty, in 1792.

87. *What can you state of Gen. Joseph E. Johnston?*..... .. 171, 178, 182

88. *Give a sketch of Andrew Johnson's life* ..... 182, 183, 184, 185, 186
Born in North Carolina in 1808. Served nine years at the business of a tailor, was several times elected a representative in Congress, twice governor of Tennessee, a U. S. senator, and was appointed governor of Tennessee in the beginning of the Great Civil War. (See, also, Topic 221, Ap. p. 80.)

89. *Name in chronological order the important events of his administration*.. 189

90. *Give a sketch of the history of Kentucky*.... 98, 107, 113, 166, 168, 169, 170, 177
The first permanent settlement was made by Daniel Boone. (See Topic 211, Ap. p. 77; also Table of States.)

91. *Give a sketch of the history of Kansas*.....110, 151, 152, 157; Table of States.
The name Kansas, said to signify *smoky water*, was that of a tribe of Indians. (See Introduction.)

92. *What can you state of Gen. Lyman?*..... ..... 57, 58
Phineas Lyman was born in Connecticut in 1716; died in Florida in 1775.

93. *What account can you give of Gen. Lincoln?*..... 88, 90, 91, 102
Gen. Lincoln, of the Revolution, was born in Massachusetts in 1733; died there in 1810. Was a farmer until he was 40 years old; was in the battles of White Plains (p. 75), and Bemis Heights (p. 84), and commanded the forces which quelled Shays's Rebellion (p. 99). He was a favorite of Washington.

94. *Give a sketch of the life of President Lincoln*..... 158–182
Abraham Lincoln was born in Kentucky in 1809. His early life was passed at hard labor on his father's farm in Indiana. At the age of 19 he made a trip to New Orleans as a hired hand on a flat-boat, and afterward removed to Illinois; served as captain in the "Black Hawk War" (p. 138); was elected to the Illinois Legislature, and was a representative in Congress.

95. *How many and what persons by the name of Lee took prominent parts in the Revolutionary War?*... .... ..... 73, 74, 78, 90; Ap. 8

96. *What account can you give of Gen. Charles Lee?*..... 73, 75, 76, 79, 89

Digitized by Google

Born in England in 1731; was with Braddock in the battle of the Monongahela (p. 57), with Abercromby in the assault on Ticonderoga (p. 59), and afterward served in the Russian army. Died at Philadelphia in 1782.

97. *What can you state of Gen. Robert E. Lee*.....171, 172, 173, 178, 179, 182 Was born in Virginia; graduated at West Point, and served in the Mexican War. In 1865 he was elected President of Washington College, Va., which, after his death, occurring in October, 1870, was named the Washington and Lee University.

98. *Give a sketch of Gen. Lafayette's life*..... 78, 80, 96, 137. Note 3, p. 155 a. The Marquis de Lafayette was born in France in 1757. Was in the battles of Monmouth (p. 86) and Yorktown (p. 97), and was a member of the court that tried André (p. 94). Died at Paris in 1834. (Give a further account.)

99. *Give a sketch of the life of La Salle*..... 6, Note 16, p. 52 f. A celebrated French navigator, born about 1635, died in 1687. Made four visits to America: in the first, while endeavoring to find a passage by water to China, he explored Lake Ontario; in the third he descended the Mississippi; in the fourth, which was undertaken to settle Louisiana, he sailed from France, but instead of landing at the mouth of the Mississippi, proceeded by mistake to Texas, where he was shot by one of his men.

100. *What account can you give of Marquette?*..... 6, Note 6, p. 17 d. Born in France in 1637. He died in Michigan in 1675, near a small river, which still bears his name.

101. *Give the history of Louisiana*...Note 157, 110, 120, 130, 158, 164, 169, 177, 191 "In 1682 La Salle descended the Mississippi, and taking possession for France of the whole country watered by the river, named it Louisiana, in honor of Louis XIV. of France." The French held the whole domain known by the name of Louisiana till 1762, when they ceded it to Spain. In 1800 it was retroceded to France. In 1804 it was divided into two governments: that of the "Territory of Orleans," including the present State of Louisiana, and that of the "District of Louisiana." (See Notes 4 and 5, p. 113 b.)

102. *Give a sketch of the life of General Montgomery*.....59, 71, 72 Richard Montgomery was born in Ireland in 1736. He settled in New York State, and in 1775 was a member of the Provincial Congress. A monument was erected to his memory in front of St. Paul's church, New York city, beneath which his remains were placed in 1818.

103. *Give a sketch of the life of General Marion* ..... 91, Note 8, p. 104 c. Francis Marion was born in South Carolina in 1732. The amount of aid which he rendered the patriot cause during the Revolution can hardly be estimated. All attempts of the enemy to baffle him were entirely futile. He was an honest man and a pure patriot. His death occurred in 1795.

104. *Give the history of Massachusetts*, 23–27, 32–37, 51, 66–73, 99, 129, 136; Ap. 11, 13

105. *Give the history of Maine*.....16, 27, 33, 136; Table of States, 190 Authors are not agreed with regard to the derivation of the name of this State. The prevailing opinion is, that Maine was so called in compliment to Henrietta Maria, wife of Charles I. of England, who, it was supposed, owned the province of Maine, in France.

106. *What can you state of Robert Morris?*.....94, 95; Ap. 8 Born in England in 1734; came to America when thirteen years old; was educated at Philadelphia. After the Revolution, he lost by land speculation an immense fortune gained in the China trade, and was confined a long time in prison for debt. He died at Philadelphia in 1806.

107. *Give the history of Fort Ticonderoga* .....59, 60, 62, 69, 71, 81, 85 It was commenced by the French in 1755, and by them called Carillon (*chime of*

Digitized by Google

*bells*), in allusion to the music of the waterfalls at the outlet of Lake George, near it. In 1759, on the approach of the English, under Amherst, the French retreated, leaving the fort in flames; Amherst rebuilt it. A large part of its walls is still standing.

108. *Give the history of Alabama*.....120, 121, 127, 135, 136, 158, 159, 169, 181, 190
The territory now comprising the States of Mississippi and Alabama, except the coast-strip between Florida and Louisiana (see Introduction), was originally a part of Georgia, but in 1798 was organized as the Mississippi Territory. The word Alabama is of Indian origin, signifying *here we rest.* (Table of States.)

109. *Give the history of Mississippi*, 135, 136, 158, 159, 164, 166, 169, 175, 177, 186, 190
The word Mississippi is of Indian origin, signifying, according to some writers, the *Great River;* according to others, the *Great Father of Waters.* (See above, under the history of Alabama; also, Table of States.)

110. *Give a sketch of General Daniel Morgan's life*..... ...95
Born in New Jersey in 1736; died in Virginia in 1802. Was with Braddock in 1755 (p. 57), performing the duties of teamster; joined Washington at Cambridge, with a rifle corps (p. 72); accompanied Arnold across the wilderness to Quebec, participating in the attempt to capture that city (p. 72); and took a distinguished part in the battle of Bemis Heights (p. 84). He was a member of Congress from 1795 to 1799.

111. *Give the history of Maryland*..41, 42, 43, 68, 74, 76, 99, 127, 160, 172, 173, 179; Ap. 8, 11, 14

112. *Give a sketch of the life of James Madison*..... .....114-130
Born in Virginia in 1751; died there in 1836. Was a member of the convention which prepared the Constitution of the United States (p. 99); united with Jay and Hamilton in advocating its adoption (Note 16, p. 104 f.); opposed Hamilton's financial measures (p. 106); and was secretary of state in Jefferson's cabinet.

113. *Name, in order, the events of Madison's administration*..... ...130, 131, 132

114. *Give a sketch of the life of James Monroe*.....125, 126, 127, 128, 137
Born in Virginia in 1758; died in New York city, July 4th, 1831. Entered the army in 1776; was at the battle of White Plains (p. 75), Trenton, in which he was wounded (p. 76), Brandywine (p. 79), Germantown (p. 80), and Monmouth (p. 86); was a member of Congress when Washington resigned his commission (p. 99); governor of Virginia; and minister to France, to England, and to Holland.

115. *What can you state of General Meade?*.....178, 178, 179

116. *Give the history of Missouri*.....110, 136, 162, 163, 168; Table of States, 191
The name Missouri, an Indian one, signifying *Mud River*, was first applied to the river of that name.

117. *Give the history of Michigan*.....63, 98, 115, 118, 119; Table of States, 228
The name Michigan, supposed to be formed from two Indian words, signifying *Great Lake*, was first applied to the lake.

118. *Give the history of Arkansas* .....110, 159, 160; Table of States, 228
"The State takes its name from a tribe of Indians now extinct."

119. *Give the history of Minnesota*..... .....98, 110, 157; Table of States, 191
The name Minnesota was first applied to the river. It is compounded of two Indian words, signifying *sky-colored water.*

120. *The military events in General McClellan's life*.....162, 164, 170, 171, 172.

121. *Give the history of New York State*..37-39, 51, 66, 68, 69, 71, 74, 75, 79, 81-85, 87, 89, 90, 93, 94, 98, 116, 121-125; Ap. 8, 9, 11, 14; Table of States.

122. *Give the history of New York City*...37-40, 66, 67, 73, 74, 75, 98, 106, 158, 170

Digitized by Google

123. *Give the history of New Hampshire*..... 27, 28, 33, 34, 51, 68; Ap. 8, 9, 11, 15
124. *Of New Jersey*..... 37, 40, 41, 51, 68, 76--81, 86, 90, 94; Ap. 8, 9, 11, 14
125. *Of North Carolina*.. 13, 47, 68, 95, 96, 160, 163, 167, 181, 182; Ap. 8, 9, 11, 14
126. *Give the history of South Carolina*.. 13, 47, 68, 73, 74, 89, 91, 92, 95, 96, 138, 139, 158, 159, 160, 163, 164, 167, 182; Ap. 8, 11, 14
127. *Give the events of Charleston*..... 47, 67, 73, 74, 91, 101, 139, 158, 160, 182
128. *Give the history of the Northwest Territory* ..... 110, 136, 200
The territory north of the Ohio, which was surrendered to the United States at the close of the Revolution, was claimed by individual States. In 1787 it was organized into the *Northwest Territory*, though, in consequence of delay on the part of the States to cede their claims to the General Government, the latter did not acquire complete jurisdiction over it before 1800. (See Topics 233, 237; Ap. pp. 84, 85.)
129. *Give the history of Ohio*.. ..... 107, 110, 113, 118, 119, 176, 190
"The first explorations in the territory were made by the French, the discoveries of La Salle in this region dating from about 1669." (See also *Table of States*, and preceding paragraph in relation to the Northwest Territory; also Topics 212, 214, 215; App. pp. 77, 78.)
130. *Give the history of Oregon* .. ...7, 157, 202; Note 157, 192; Table of States.
A writer of note states that the name Oregon was probably invented by Captain Carver, who made an early exploration of the region. Another writer gives it as his opinion that the name was derived from the Spanish *oregano*, wild sage, which grows in great abundance on the Pacific coast.
131. *Give the history of Nevada*..... ..... 7, 150; Table of States, 228
The State derived its name from the mountain range on the west of it. The two words *sierra* and *nevada*, are Spanish, meaning *mountains snow-covered*
132. *Give an account of William Penn*..... 40, 43, 44, 46
Was born in London in 1644. Though reared in the principles of the Church of England, he became a convert to Quakerism. He was several times arrested and imprisoned for attending Quaker meetings and for preaching.
133. *Give the history of Pennsylvania*. 43, 44, 52, 55, 56, 57, 60, 69, 79, 80, 81, 87, 108, 179, 180; Ap. 8, 9, 11, 14
134. *Give the history of Philadelphia*..... 44, 67, 68, 71, 74, 76, 79, 80, 86, 99, 106
135. *What can you state of William Pitt?*..... 59, 60
Was born in England in 1708. At the beginning of the American Revolution he favored the Americans. At the close of a speech made in Parliament in 1778, against the motion to acknowledge the independence of the United States, he fell to the floor in a fit, and died a few weeks after.
136. *What account can you give of General Putnam?*..... 75
Israel Putnam, familiarly known as "Old Put," was born in Massachusetts in 1718, died in Connecticut in 1790. In the latter State he made himself famous by his daring encounters with wolves and Indians. Was in the expedition against Ticonderoga (p. 59), during which he was captured by Indians, tied to a tree to be burned, but was saved by a French officer; served in the Pontiac War (p. 63); was in the battle of Bunker Hill; and in 1779 opposed Tryon's expedition (p. 89).
137. *What can you state of Count Pulaski*..... 80, 91
138. *Name as many early navigators as you can*..... .. ..... 9--37
139. *Give an account of James K. Polk*..... .. 143--150
Born in North Carolina in 1795; died in Tennessee in 1849. Was a representative in Congress from Tennessee for fourteen years, and was speaker of the House three terms.

Digitized by Google

140. *Give an account of Franklin Pierce*.....151, 152
Born in New Hampshire in 1804; was a representative in Congress, a United States senator, and served in the Mexican War. Died in 1869.

141. *State what you can of General Pope*.....168, 171, 172

142. *State what you can of Admiral Porter*.....169, 173, 181

143. *In how many and what wars have the United States been engaged?*....65, 90, 107, 110, 114, 115, 120, 130, 135, 138, 139, 143

144. *In what wars, when they were Colonies?*.....21, 22, 29, 32, 34, 35, 36, 42, 48

145. *What rebellions have there been in the United States?*.....99, 108, 138, 157

146. *Give the history of Rhode Island*.....31, 51, 68, 79, 86, 87, 141; Ap. 8, 9, 11, 13

147. *What can you state of Sir Walter Raleigh?*.....14, 15; Note 10, p. 17
Born in England in 1552. The death of Queen Elizabeth, in 1603, proved fatal to his fortunes. He was tried on a false charge of treason, convicted, and, after a period of fifteen years, during which time he suffered imprisonment, and afterward commanded an unsuccessful expedition to the coast of South America, he was beheaded in London in 1618. He never visited any part of the new world now belonging to the United States. During his long imprisonment he wrote a "History of the World," which has been pronounced as "greatly superior both in style and matter to the English historical compositions which had preceded it."

148. *What can you state of General Rosecrans?*..... ..... 169, 170, 173, 175

149. *State what you can of Captain John Smith*.....18, 19, 20, 23
Born in England in 1579; died there in 1631. His life was an eventful one. The narrative of the part he took in wars against the Turks, of his captivity by them, and of his escape, seems more like a romance than a reality.

150. *Give the history of Savannah*.....48, 87, 88, 90, 91, 180, 181, 182

151. *What can you state of Gen. Philip Schuyler?*.....71, 72, 82, 83, 84
Born at Albany, N. Y., in 1733; died there in 1804. Was in Johnson's expedition in 1755 (p. 57), and was a member of Congress prior to the presidency of Washington, and afterward a United States senator from New York. One of his daughters married Alexander Hamilton in 1780.

152. *What can you state of General John Sullivan?*..... ..... ....76, 86, 87, 90
Born in Maine in 1740; died in New Hampshire in 1795. Was in the battles of Trenton (p. 76), Princeton (p. 78), Brandywine (p. 79), Germantown (p. 80). At the time of his death he was a Federal judge.

153. *Give an account of General Arthur St. Clair*.....81, 82, 107
Born in Scotland in 1735; died in Pennsylvania in 1818. Was with Wolfe in 1759 (p. 62), with Washington in the battles of Trenton and Princeton and siege of Yorktown, was president of Congress in 1787, and governor of the Northwest Territory from its organization in 1789 to 1802.

154. *What can you state of General Thomas Sumter?*.....91, 102
Born in South Carolina in 1734; died there in 1832. After the Revolutionary War he was a representative and United States senator from South Carolina. Fort Sumter (p. 158) was so named in honor of him.

155. *Give the early history of St. Augustine*..... ..... .....13, 14

156. *Give an account of Gen. Winfield Scott*....124, 139, 147, 148, 149, 150, 161, 164
Born in Virginia in 1786; died at West Point, N. Y., in 1866. In the battle of Queenstown (p. 116) he was taken prisoner, but was soon exchanged.

157. *What can you state of Gen. William T. Sherman?*...176, 177, 178, 180, 181, 182
Born in Ohio in 1820; graduated at West Point, and served in Florida. Gen. Grant, on the very day of his inauguration, nominated Sherman for the position of general of the army, and the nomination was at once confirmed by the United States Senate.

Digitized by Google

158. *What can you state of Gen. Philip H. Sheridan?*..... ..... 180, 182
Born in Ohio of Irish parents in 1831; graduated at West Point, and served against the Indians. After the Great Civil War he was placed in military command at New Orleans, but his rigorous course toward the late Confederates did not meet the approbation of President Johnson, and he was transferred to a field of operations against the hostile Indians of the far West. Gen. Grant, almost immediately after he became president, nominated Sheridan for the position of lieutenant-general, in place of Gen. Sherman, promoted, and the nomination was at once confirmed by the United States Senate.

159. *What can you state of certain organizations known as Commissions that existed during the Great Civil War?*
There were several of them, and they did incalculable service in relieving the sick and wounded soldiers, not only in the hospitals but on the battle-fields. The two known as the United States Sanitary Commission and the Christian Commission were the largest. Of the former, the Rev. Henry W. Bellows, D.D., of New York, was the president.

160. *Give the history of Tennessee*..107, 160, 168, 169, 173, 175, 180; Table of States.
"The name is derived from Tannassee (signifying *river of the big bend*), the Indian name applied to the little Tennessee River." North Carolina ceded the territory to the General Government in 1789. Two years after, it was organized, with Kentucky, as the "Territory of the United States south of the Ohio."

161. *Give the history of Texas*... . ...141, 143, 144, 158, 173; Table of States, 228
*Las Tekas*, from which the name Texas is derived, is supposed to have been the name of a petty tribe of Indians in Texas. The State ceded to the General Government her claim to lands west of the 27th meridian, now in Colorado and New Mexico.

162. *Give an account of John Tyler*.....141, 143
Born in Virginia in 1790; died there in 1862.

163. *Give an account of Gen. Zachary Taylor*.....140, 143, 144, 145, 147, 150, 151
Born in Virginia in 1784; was in the War of 1812 (p. 114), and in the Black Hawk War (p. 138).

164. *Give an account of Washington*..... .....12th Question, p. 113

165. *Give an account of Gen. Joseph Warren*.. ..... 71. Note 2, p. 104 a.
Born in Massachusetts in 1741; graduated at Harvard College, studied medicine, became a physician in Boston, and was one of the most earnest and eloquent leaders in resisting the unjust measures of the British Government. His loss was sincerely lamented by his countrymen.

166. *Give an account of Gen. James Wilkinson*.....121, 122, 123, 124
Was born in Maryland in 1757; studied medicine, was a physician, an officer in the American army during the Revolution, was in the battle of the Maumee (p. 107), governor of the Louisiana Territory in 1805–6, aided in breaking up the plans of Aaron Burr in 1806 (p. 111). Died in 1825.

167. *Give the history of Washington City*..... 106, 109, 126, 160

168. *Give the history of the District of Columbia*..... 106, 109
In 1788 Maryland ceded 60 square miles of land, and next year Virginia ceded 40 square miles, to the United States as a site for the national capital. This made a square of 10 miles, or 100 square miles, 60 square miles being on the east side of the Potomac and 40 on the west, which was named the District of Columbia, in honor of Christopher Columbus. The tract on the Virginia side of the river was retroceded to that State in 1846, consequently the District now consists of the territory ceded by Maryland in 1788. It contains the two cities of Washington and Georgetown, and is

Digitized by Google

subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of Congress. The population in 1870 was 131,700, one-third of whom were colored persons.

169. *Give the history of West Point*.....93, Note 6, p. 104 b.
As early as 1776 the Americans erected a fort there. Next year a chain was stretched across the river to prevent the passage of the enemy's ships. A U. S. military academy was established there in 1802.

170. *Give the history of Wisconsin*... .....8, 98, 110, 150; Table of States, 228
"This State takes its name from a large tributary of the Mississippi, discovered by Marquette in 1673, and called by him *Musconsin* (*wild rushing channel*). Masconsin became changed to *Ouisconsin*, and finally to *Wisconsin*." Detroit and its dependencies, including Wisconsin, remained in the possession of the English until after Jay's Treaty (1794).

171. *Give the history of West Virginia*.....176

172. *Give a sketch of the life of Martin Van Buren*.....Table, end of History, 140
Born at Kinderhook, N. Y., in 1782; died there in 1862. Was a United States senator, governor of the State of New York, and vice-president of the United States during President Jackson's second term.

173. *Give the history of Vermont*.....82, 83, 106, 107, 113; Table of States, 228

174. *How many and what States were admitted to the Union during Washington's administration?*.....(Table of States, end of History.)

175. *Give the names of those admitted during each administration.* (Same Table.)

176. *Give the history of Virginia*.....14, 18-23, 66, 68, 71, 96, 97, 157, 160, 161, 162, 167, 170, 171, 172, 176, 178, 179, 180, 182; Ap. 11, 14

177. *Give a sketch of the life of Daniel Webster*.....
Born in New Hampshire in 1782; died in Massachusetts in 1852. A large part of his life was spent at Washington, either as a member of Congress or in the President's cabinet. In 1842, while secretary of state, he negotiated with Lord Ashburton a treaty, settling the differences between the United States and Great Britain in relation to the Northeastern boundary, which had disturbed the relations of the two countries many years.

178. *How and when were the Northwestern differences settled?*.....Introduction.

179. *Give the history of Nebraska*.....110, and Table of States, 228
The word Nebraska is of Indian origin, signifying *Ne*, water, and *braska*, wide or shallow; and being applied to the Platte River, which runs through the State, was afterward used to name the Territory.

180. *Name, in order of succession, the Presidents of the United States*.....Table.

181. *Name those who served two terms, or eight years each*.....Table.

182. *Name those who served one term, or four years each*.....Table.

183. *Name those who served less than four years each*.....Table.

184. *Name those who died in office*.....141, 151, 182, 192

185. *State how each President was elected to his position*.....106-186

186. *Name, in their order of settlement, the thirteen original States*.....Table.

187. *Name, in their order of admission to the Union, the other States*.....Table.

188. *What territory has been added to the United States since 1782?*.....6, 7

189. *State how and when each portion was added*.....6, 7

190. *Give the story of Jane McCrea*.....82, 83
The Indians asserted that they did not kill her, and the evidence afterward collected went to sustain the assertion, and also to show that she was killed by a shot intended for her captors, which was fired from Ft. Edward by one of the patriots, a number of whom still lingered though the place had been evacuated by Schuyler. "The story has been related in various ways, and under the hands of successive narrators has been expanded into a pathetic love romance."

191. *Give the history of the Declaration of Independence*.....74; App.

Digitized by Google

192. *Give the history of the Articles of Confederation*.....85, 99; Ap. 9, 10
193. *Give the history of the Federal Constitution*....99, 183, 186; Ap. 9, 10, 11, 36
194. *Give the history of the United States flag. Ans.* At the beginning of the Revolution, and for some months after, no distinctive flag was adopted by the Americans. In 1776 the British Union flag was used, the only change being that the field was composed of thirteen stripes, alternate red and white, to denote the union of the thirteen colonies. The American flag, "Stars and Stripes," was adopted by Congress on the 14th of June, 1777.
195. *Give the history of the Plymouth Colony*.....24, 25, 26, 32, 33, 34, 35
It has been stated that Plymouth was not so called in memory of the hospitalities bestowed upon the Pilgrims at Plymouth, England; but the weight of authority does not favor the statement. Baylies, however, in his "Historical Memoirs of the Colony," says: "They (the Pilgrims) named their settlement Plymouth, because this place had been so called by Capt. Smith, who had previously surveyed the harbor, and they remembered the kindness which they had experienced from the people of Plymouth in England." Smith, when he examined the New England coast, in 1614, made a map of the region, which was published in 1616. On this map was the name, Plymouth; but there is no evidence whatever that the Pilgrims ever saw the map, they "having selected for their settlement the country near the Hudson."
196. *What was the length of each of the following wars? The French and Indian? The Revolution? The second with England? The war with Mexico? The Great Civil War?*
197. *State the causes of each of the five wars*.....54, 65, 66, 114, 143, 157, 158
198. *Give an account of Washington's military movements during the Revolution*.....71–97
199. *How many years have the United States been involved in war?*.....74–188
200. *Name the commanders who were compelled to surrender*.....56–190
201. *Give the names of the celebrated foreigners who fought for the United States*.....76, 78, 80, 84, 85, 90, 92, 97; Ap. 66–73
202. *State the object of establishing each of the eight colonies that were in New England*.....18–31
203. *The object in establishing each of the other colonies*.....37–48
204. *Name the States that have been formed from territory acquired in consequence of war*.....187, 188, 189
205. *From territory acquired by purchase, without war*.....187, 188, 189
206. *What other States are there that were formed from territory otherwise acquired?*.....187, 188, 189
207. *How was such territory acquired?*.....187, 188, 189
208. *What can you state as regards the naming of this continent, America?*....10
"The name America was first applied to the New World in a work written in Latin by Martin Waldseemuller, under an assumed name, and printed in Lorraine, in 1507." A copy of this work is among the "Literary Curiosities," under a glass case, in the British Museum, and is described as "A book which has become famous, because in it is to be found for the first time the proposition to bestow on the New World the name America, in honor of Amerigo Vespucci." A second copy of the book was procured by the late Hon. Charles Sumner during his last visit to Europe. It is not known that there is a third copy in existence. Humboldt acquits Amerigo Vespucci of any design to have the country named after himself.

Digitized by Google

209. *Early Occupation of the Mississippi Valley*.....6, 12, 201
"The oldest permanent European settlement in the Valley of the Mississippi, is Kaskaskia, Ill., the seat of a Jesuit mission, which gradually became a central point of French colonization (about 1673)." In 1699, Lemoine D'Iberville, with about two hundred French colonists, made a settlement at Biloxi, the first in the present State of Mississippi. Three years later, he began the settlement of Mobile. "In 1702, a party of French Canadians, descending the Wabash, established Vincennes and other posts on its banks." (*Bancroft.*) In 1712, Louis XIV. of France, claiming the entire Valley of the Mississippi as Louisiana, leased it to Anthony Crozat, under whose direction Fort Rosalie (the beginning of Natchez) was built in 1716; but, next year, Crozat gave up his lease. Next, for a period of fifteen years, the Mississippi Company had control of the region (See topic 210, Ap., p. 77); and, under the direction of Governor Bienville, began the settlement of New Orleans (1718). St. Genevieve (Mo.) was founded in 1755. "In 1775, St. Louis, originally a depot for the fur trade, contained 800 inhabitants."

210. *The Mississippi (or Law's) Bubble*.....Topic 209, App., p. 77
"A name given to a delusive speculation projected by John Law. In 1716, he established a bank in France, by royal authority, which became the office for all public receipts, and there was annexed to it a Mississippi Company, which had grants of land in Louisiana, and was expected to realize immense sums by planting and commerce. In 1718, it was declared a royal bank, and its shares rose to twenty times their original value, so that, in 1719, they were worth more than eighty times the amount of all the current specie in France. In 1720, the shares sunk as rapidly as they had risen, nearly overthrowing the French government, and occasioning great and wide-spread financial distress and bankruptcy."

211. *Daniel Boone*.....107; topic 90, App., p. 69
Daniel Boone, the pioneer in the settlement of Kentucky, was born in Pennsylvania in 1735, and died in Missouri in 1820. At the age of eighteen, he went with his father's family to North Carolina, where, a few years later, he was married. After making several hunting excursions, he set out, in 1769, with five companions, to explore the Kentucky country. During the next twenty-five years his life, as an explorer, pioneer, hunter, guide, and settler, was the most prominent one in the history of that region. He had many encounters with the Indians, and was three times captured, but in each case effected his escape. In 1775, he built a fort on the Kentucky River, around which grew up the settlement and village of Boonsboro'. After Kentucky was admitted into the Union, Boone removed to Missouri.

212. *Slavery not permitted north of the Ohio*.....99; 216; topic 17, App., p. 63
In 1787, Congress, then assembled in New York City, by a unanimous vote, passed an act for the government of "the territory north-west of the Ohio River," which is known as the ORDINANCE OF 1787. The act concludes with six articles, the last of which, the famous anti-slavery proviso, declares that "there shall be neither slavery, nor involuntary servitude in the said territory, otherwise than in punishment of crimes, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted."

213. *Mason and Dixon's Line*.....Topic 17, App., p. 63
"A name given to the southern boundary line separating the free State of Pennsylvania from the former slave states of Maryland and Virginia. It

Digitized by Google

lies in latitude 39° 43′ 26.3″, and was run, with the exception of about twenty-two miles, by Charles Mason and Jeremiah Dixon, two English mathematicians and surveyors, between November 15, 1763, and December 26, 1767. During the excited debate in Congress in 1820, on the question of excluding slavery from Missouri (see p. 136, ¶ 6), the eccentric John Randolph, of Roanoke, Va., made great use of this phrase, which was caught up and re-echoed by every newspaper in the land, and thus gained a proverbial celebrity which it still retains."

214. *The Western Reserve*..... 190

"A name given to a region of country reserved by the States of Virginia and Connecticut at the time of the cession of the North-west Territory to the general government. Disputes arose, after the war of the Revolution, between several of the States, respecting the right of soil in this territory, which were only allayed by the cession of the whole to the general government, Virginia reserving 3,709,848 acres near the rapids of the Ohio, for her State troops, and Connecticut a tract of 3,666,921 acres near Lake Erie (in the north-eastern corner of the present State of Ohio, and thence known as the 'Connecticut Reserve'). In 1800, jurisdiction over these two tracts was relinquished to the federal government, the (two) States reserving the right to the soil, and disposing of it in small lots to settlers (from which sales Connecticut obtained her magnificent school fund), while the Indian titles to the rest of the soil were bought up by the general government."

215. *The Connecticut Reserve*.....(See preceding topic, No. 214.)

216. *The Wilmot Proviso*..... 150, 151, 218

"A name popularly given to an amendment to a bill placing $2,000,000 at the disposition of President Polk, to negotiate a peace with Mexico. It was introduced in the national House of Representatives (Aug. 8, 1846) by the Hon. David Wilmot, a Democratic Representative from Pennsylvania, and was in these words: 'Provided that, as an express and fundamental condition to the acquisition of any territory from the Republic of Mexico by the United States, by virtue of any treaty which may be negotiated between them, and to the use, by the Executive, of the moneys herein appropriated, neither slavery nor involuntary servitude shall ever exist in any part of said territory, except for crime, whereof the party shall first be duly convicted.' The bill, with this amendment, was passed in the House, but was not reached in the Senate. At the next session of Congress, another bill, with a similar proviso, was passed by the Senate, but was rejected by the House."

217. *The Dred Scott Case*.....157, and topic 17, App., p. 63.

Dred Scott, a negro slave, had been taken by a former master, Dr. Emerson, from Missouri (then a slave State) to Illinois (a free State), and there held as a slave about two years, and thence removed to Fort Snelling, now in Minnesota. While here, he was married to a female slave of the same master. In 1838, Dr. Emerson removed Scott, his wife, and child, to Missouri, where he sold them. Scott now sued for his freedom and that of his wife and child, in the Circuit Court, and obtained a judgment in his favor. The Supreme Court of the State reversed the judgment. By writ of error, the case was brought before the Supreme Court of the United States, where, on the 6th of March, 1857, the judgment of the Circuit Court was reversed, it being held that whatever claim Scott had to freedom, he lost by his return to Missouri. Chief Justice Taney, in behalf of the majority of the Court,

Digitized by Google

expressed the opinion that "free negroes, whose ancestors were slaves, cannot become citizens."

218. *Capture and destruction of the schooner Gaspee*.....31, 67
"In the year 1772, the British government stationed at Newport, R. I., a sloop-of-war, with her tender, the schooner Gaspee, for the purpose of preventing the clandestine landing of articles subject to the payment of duty." One day in June (8th), Capt. Lindsey, commanding the packet Hannah, arrived at Newport from New York, and thence, without stopping to have his vessel examined, proceeded up the bay for Providence. "The Gaspee, as usual, gave chase, but ran aground on Namquit (now Gaspee) Point, while the Hannah escaped, arriving at Providence about sunset (June 9)." The situation of the hated "enemy was soon proclaimed at Providence by beat of drum, calling upon those who desired to go and destroy her, to meet that evening. * * Eight long-boats were provided, and soon after 10 o'clock the party embarked. It was past midnight when they approached the Gaspee, where they were joined by another boat from Bristol." The attacking party boarded the schooner, and, after a brief struggle, the crew surrendered and were put on shore, their vessel being set fire to and completely destroyed (June 10). The British government offered a large reward for information against the offenders, but without success. "The affair of the Gaspee is deserving of commendation, as it was the first blow, in all the colonies, for freedom."

219. *The first colleges in the country*. ..... 27
"The oldest and the most amply endowed institution of learning in the United States is Harvard College," situated at Cambridge, Mass. In 1636, "the Massachusetts Court agreed to give £400 towards a school or college, but the project lay in abeyance until 1638, when, by the will of the Rev. John Harvard, about £700 were secured, and the first class was formed." In 1700, ten Connecticut clergymen came together, and each one laying some books on a table, said, "I give these books for the founding of a college in this colony." It was afterward called Yale College, in honor of Elihu Yale, of England, who gave it a large sum of money. The College of New Jersey (at Princeton) was organized in 1746; Columbia College (established by royal authority as King's College, and so known till 1784) was organized in New York City, in 1754; and five other colleges, all of them still in existence, were successively established before the Revolution.

220. *The successive capitals of the United States*.....74, 99, 106, 109
Philadelphia was the first capital of the United States, Congress being in session in that city when the Independence of the States was declared (p. 74). A little more than five months after that event, while the British forces were advancing through New Jersey towards the Delaware River (p. 76), Congress adjourned to Baltimore (Dec., 1776), but returned to Philadelphia less than three months later (March, 1777). On the approach, by Chesapeake bay, of the British army under Howe (p. 80), Congress adjourned at first to Lancaster, Pa. (Sept. 27th to 30th, 1777), and then to York, Pa. (Sept. 30th), but after the British evacuated Philadelphia (p. 86), Congress returned to that city (July, 1778), which city continued to be the capital till June, 1783, when Congress adjourned to Princeton, N. J. (June 30), and, in November of the same year, to Annapolis, Md. (p. 99). The next session was opened at Trenton, N. J. (Nov. 30, 1784), but in January, 1785, Congress adjourned to New York (p. 106). In 1790, the seat of government was re-

Digitized by Google

moved to Philadelphia (p. 106), and in 1800, to Washington City (p. 109). (See also information respecting the District of Columbia, at the bottom of p. 21, of the Appendix.)

221. *Which of the ex-presidents, after their presidential terms, became Members of Congress?*.....109, 185.
John Quincy Adams, two years after his presidential term, was elected to represent his district in the House of Representatives; and he continued, by successive elections, to occupy the seat in Congress till his death. In 1875, Andrew Johnson was elected by the Legislature of Tennessee to represent that State in the United States Senate for a period of six years; but he died on the last day of July of the same year.

222. *Old Hickory*..... ..... 133
"The name of 'Old Hickory' (conferred upon General Andrew Jackson in 1813, by the soldiers under his command) was not an instantaneous inspiration, but a growth. First of all, the remark was made by some soldier who was struck with his commander's pedestrian powers, that the general was 'tough.' Next, it was observed that he was as 'tough as hickory.' Then he was *called* 'Hickory.' Lastly, the affectionate adjective 'old' was prefixed, and the general thenceforth rejoiced in the completed nickname, usually the first-won honor of a great commander."—*Parton*. "According to another account, the name sprung from his having, on one occasion, set his men an example of endurance by feeding on hickory-nuts, when destitute of supplies."

223. *The Mormons or Latter Day Saints*..... 141
These are the followers of a religion founded by Joseph Smith, who was born in Vermont in 1805. According to Smith's own account, "an angel appeared to him and informed him that God had a work for him to do, and that a record, written upon gold plates, and giving an account of the ancient inhabitants of America, and the dealings of God with them, was deposited in a particular place in the earth." The record from these plates, translated by Smith, is the "Book of Mormon," which was first published in 1830. The Mormons accept the Holy Bible, but regard their book as an additional revelation. Their first church was organized at Manchester, N. Y., in 1830, whence, next year, they removed to Kirtland, Ohio. During the next eight years, large numbers of Mormons collected in Missouri, principally in and about Independence, but becoming involved in disputes with the people, they crossed the Mississippi to Illinois, and there, by authority of a charter granted by the Illinois legislature, built a city, which they called Nauvoo (1840–45). Quarrels with the surrounding people occurring, Joseph Smith and his brother Hyrum, being charged with violating the laws of the State, surrendered themselves to the authorities at Carthage, Ill., where a mob, chiefly Missourians, attacked the jail in which they were confined, and killed the two men (1844). Brigham Young was chosen president as Smith's successor. The charter which had been granted to Nauvoo having been repealed by the legislature (in 1845), the Mormons began to remove to the Rocky Mountain region. Those who lingered in Nauvoo were attacked and driven out of the city. Most of the Mormons gathered at Council Bluffs, Iowa, whence, in the course of two or three years, they crossed the plains to Salt Lake Valley. Salt Lake City was founded by them in 1847. Thousands of converts, many from Europe, having since joined them, they have "subdued the soil, reclaimed the wilderness, and clothed the Great Valley with towns and cities, and covered it with farms."

Digitized by Google

224. *Political Parties*.....99, 108, 109, 135, 137, 138, 141, 151, 152
When, after the Revolution, the Constitution was presented to the States for adoption (Sept. 1787), it met with decided opposition from a large part of the people "who were opposed to conferring so much power upon the general government;" and, "in the differences in opinion between its friends and opponents originated the two great political parties into which the people were divided during a period of about thirty years." The friends of the Constitution, "regarding its adoption indispensable to the Union, took the name of Federalists, and bestowed upon the other party that of Anti-Federalists, intimating that to oppose the adoption of the Constitution, was to oppose any union of the States." The Federal party embraced a large number of the ablest statesmen of that period, including Washington, Hamilton, Adams, Jay, and Marshall; while in the opposite ranks were those known as Anti-Federalists, or Republicans, and subsequently as Democrats, under the leadership of Jefferson, George Clinton, Burr, and others. "In the contests of the French Revolution (p. 107, ¶ 7), the Federalists leaned to the side of England, the Republicans to that of France." The opposition of the Federalists to the war of 1812, the favor they extended to the Hartford Convention (p. 129), and other causes, contributed to their destruction, and in 1820 the party was disbanded. The two elections of Jefferson and the two of Madison were triumphs of the Republicans. The two of Monroe may also be regarded as triumphs of the same party, though party lines were almost obliterated, the first years of Monroe's administration being known as "the era of good feeling." The nomination of John Quincy Adams was supported by a union of Republicans with most of the old Federalists (p. 137). The presidential contest of 1828, "the most bitter in American history," was largely of a personal character. The candidates were Adams and Jackson, the latter succeeding. "The Jackson party being, in most part, the old Republican party, took the name of Democrats, while their opponents assumed the name of Whigs." The former, during Jackson's first term, took ground against the re-chartering of the United States Bank, and afterward against a high, or "protective tariff." The Whigs favored these measures. "The election of Van Buren was a continuation of Jackson's policy;" that of Harrison was a triumph of the Whigs. In the presidential contest of 1844, the Democratic party favored "the annexation of Texas," as also "the claim to Oregon as far north as 54 degrees 40 minutes. Their rallying cry was 54, 40, or fight." They elected James K. Polk over Henry Clay, the candidate of the Whigs. In the contest of 1848, a third party, composed mostly of northern men who were "opposed to the extension of slavery into the territory of the United States," and known as the Free Soil Party, nominated Martin Van Buren. Gen. Taylor, the Whig candidate, was elected (p. 150). In the contest of 1852, the candidate of the Democrats was Franklin Pierce; that of the Whigs was Gen. Winfield Scott (p. 151). Before the next the eighteenth contest took place, the Whig party ceased to exist, and two new parties came into being, the Republican and the American: the latter favoring native-born citizens for political offices, and also favoring a longer residence in the United States on the part of persons of foreign birth, as a requisite of citizenship. Then there were three parties (p. 152). (For the 19th contest see p. 158.) Gen. Grant's competitor, in the 20th contest, was Horace Greeley, the distinguished journalist. The latter had been

Digitized by Google

nominated by a small portion of the Republican party, known as Liberal Republicans, and afterward by the Democrats (p. 186).

225. *General John Stark*..... 83
Was born in New Hampshire in 1728; died there in 1822. In 1752 he was captured by Indians, and was their prisoner several weeks until ransomed. In the French and Indian War he distinguished himself by his bravery in several engagements. During the Revolution he took a prominent part, doing good service as Colonel in the Battle of Bunker Hill, in the expedition against Canada, and in the battles of Trenton and Princeton. He was a member of the court-martial that tried and condemned Andre. On the eve of the Battle of Bennington he "promised his men the plunder of the British camp. The homely speech made by him when in sight of the enemy, has often been cited: 'Now, my men! There are the red-coats! Before night they must be ours, or Molly Stark will be a widow.'" He was made a brigadier-general by Congress for his gallantry at Bennington.

226. *How many inhabitants must a Territory have before it can be admitted as a State?*
"No exact number of inhabitants as a condition of the admission of a Territory into the Union as a State, is required either by law or usage. The number of inhabitants possessed by a Territory is merely one of the circumstances going to show how much of the elements of statehood the applicant possesses."

227. *The Speedwell and the Mayflower*..... 25
The Speedwell was a small vessel of only about sixty tons. She was bought in Holland by the Pilgrims, and was intended to be taken to America and kept there for fishing and other purposes. She sailed to England with not less than one hundred persons crowded on board. The Mayflower had been hired in London by agents of the Pilgrims sent from Holland, and she sailed for Southampton with less than twenty passengers. When, after the two vessels had put back a second time and had entered the port of Plymouth, it was determined to leave the Speedwell in England, all the passengers, of both vessels, to the number of one hundred and two, that could find accommodation in the Mayflower, were put on board that vessel. The term Pilgrims was first applied to them by Bradford in his history of the colony. They are now affectionately known as the *Pilgrim Fathers*.

228. *Leisler and Milborne*..... 39
In consequence of the arbitrary conduct of James II., a revolution took place, the king fled to France, and the English crown was bestowed upon William and Mary (1688-9). The news of these proceedings was received in New York with demonstrations of satisfaction. Jacob Leisler, aided by several hundred armed men, and with the general approbation of the citizens, took possession of the fort there in the name of the new sovereigns. He continued at the head of affairs, managing with prudence and energy, for more than two years, his son-in-law, Milborne, acting as his deputy. On the arrival of Governor Sloughter, bearing a commission direct from William and Mary, Leisler surrendered all authority. This would not satisfy his enemies; they were bent upon his destruction. So he and Milborne were arrested, tried on a charge of treason, and condemned to death. Sloughter, while drunk at a feast, signed the death-warrant, and both men were executed.

229. *Captain Kidd*..... 39
In 1698 the Earl of Bellamont became Governor of the colony of New York.

Digitized by Google

As commerce was greatly disturbed by pirates, he sent out a bold captain, named William Kidd, to capture their vessels. But Kidd was a bad man, and, knowing that there were many Spanish ships carrying gold, silver, and other treasures across the ocean from America, he turned pirate himself, and soon became the terror of the seas. He obtained immense quantities of gold and other rich treasures, some of which he is reported to have buried in various parts of America. At length, appearing in the streets of Boston, he was seized and sent to England, where he suffered death for his crimes (May, 1701). His buried treasures have been sought for in vain.

230. *John Locke and his Grand Model of Government*..... 47

The grant of Carolina in 1663 was made by Charles II. to a company of eight English courtiers, Sir Ashley Cooper, afterwards Earl of Shaftesbury, being of the number. "They begged the country under the pretence of a pious zeal for the propagation of the Gospel, and their sole object was the increase of their wealth and dignity." A new charter, granted to these same eight persons, in 1665, extended the limits of their possessions so as to include all the region from Virginia to about the middle of Florida (as both States now are), from the Atlantic to the Pacific. To Sir Ashley was assigned the task of drawing up a form of government for the new province, and he induced John Locke, the most eminent philosopher of his time, to aid him in its preparation. As the proprietors believed that Carolina, in the course of time, would become a great and populous empire, a constitution, known as the *Great Model*, was prepared and adopted in keeping with the grandeur of their expectations. The provisions of this instrument, if carried into effect, would have made a government of lords and noblemen. "As far as depended on the proprietors, the government was organized," but, not being suited to the circumstances of the people, it never went into effect, and within a quarter of a century (1693) the constitution was abandoned by the proprietors themselves.

231. *Burning of Charlestown*.... ..... 71

"Two days after the massacre of Lexington, Gage had threatened that, if the Americans should occupy Charlestown heights, the town should be burned. Its inhabitants, however, had always been willing that the threat should be disregarded. The time (during the battle of Bunker Hill) for the holocaust was now to come. Pretending that his flanking parties were annoyed from houses in the village, Howe sent a boat over (to Boston) with a request to Clinton and Burgoyne to burn it. The order was immediately obeyed by a discharge of shells from Copp's Hill (Boston). The inflammable buildings caught in an instant, and a party of men landed and spread the fire."

232. *England's Foes and Friends during the Revolution*..... 74, 81, 85, 87

The treaty of amity and commerce and the defensive treaty of alliance concluded between France and the United States (Feb., 1778) made France an enemy of England till the close of the war. In 1779, Spain, influenced largely by the desire to recover Florida and Gibraltar, but with no wish to aid the Americans, joined France and declared war against England. In consequence of the refusal of Holland to loan troops to England, and also, at a later period, because of the sympathy otherwise shown by Holland to the American cause, England made war upon that power (Dec., 1780), and captured a number of the Dutch possessions in the Indies. The forces of the English king in America were recruited from Germany to the number of 30,000 troops, and from emigrants driven by want from Ireland and Scotland. Recruits

Digitized by Google

were also secured in Canada, and large bodies of Indians joined the royal forces. On the very day of the treaty of peace between Great Britain and the United States (Sept. 3, 1783), a treaty was signed at Versailles, France, between Great Britain, France, and Spain, but the war with Holland continued till June, 1784.

233. *General George Rogers Clark*..... 90
Born in Virginia in 1752; died in Kentucky in 1818. Directly after the colonies had declared themselves independent of Great Britain, Clark formed a plan for securing to them, more especially to Virginia, the territory northwest of the Ohio river, which was then in the possession of the British. Aided by Patrick Henry, the Governor of Virginia, and by Jefferson and other distinguished men of that State, and commissioned as a colonel in the service of Virginia, he conducted an enterprise "which, for the valor of the actors, their fidelity to one another, the seeming feebleness of their means, and the great result of their hardihood, remains forever memorable in the history of the world." His first success was at Kaskaskia. This place he surprised and captured without a struggle (July 4, 1778). There he found a French Catholic priest, who dissuaded him from proceeding against Vincennes, but who repaired thither as a mediator and induced its inhabitants to espouse the cause of the United States. To dispossess the Americans, Hamilton, the British commander at Detroit, with a small force of soldiers and three hundred and fifty warriors, arrived at Vincennes and took possession of its fort and town without opposition (Dec.). In the early part of February (1779), learning that Hamilton had sent his warriors away for the winter, Clark left Kaskaskia, with one hundred and thirty men, to go against Vincennes, 280 miles away. During this wonderful march of sixteen days the Americans suffered terribly. The season was inclement, and they crossed the drowned lands of the Wabash river, often up to their breasts in water. Vincennes surrendered, and then, after a brief siege, Hamilton and his garrison also surrendered (Feb. 24). "By these events was the northwestern boundary of the new American Union removed from the Ohio to the Great Lakes, and, except for George Rogers Clark and his victories, the North-West would have been to-day a British Canadian colony."

234. *Execution of Colonel Isaac Hayne*..... 91
When, in 1781, the fortunes of the British at the South began to decline, their commander, Rawdon, called upon all persons who had given in their adhesion to the royal cause to repair at once to his standard. Among the persons so called was Colonel Isaac Hayne, a distinguished patriot of South Carolina, who had been assured, when he took the oath of adherence at the fall of Charleston (May 12, 1780), that he would never be required to take up arms against his countrymen. Believing this call to be in violation of the agreement, and being thus compelled to assume the sword either for or against the patriots, he did not hesitate to choose the former. At the head of a troop of horse he gained some advantages, but, being surprised and captured, he was taken to Charleston, briefly examined, and sentenced to be hung; and, though the citizens petitioned for his pardon, the sentence was duly executed (Aug. 4, 1781).

235. *The Alien and Sedition Laws*..... 109
These were two Acts passed by Congress in 1798, during the administration of John Adams. They were intended to counteract the schemes of the French Directory, whose emissaries in this country abused the freedom of

Digitized by Google

the press by defaming the administration and exciting the opposition of the people to the government. The Alien law, to be in force two years, authorized the President to banish from the country all foreigners whom he should consider dangerous to the peace and safety of the United States. The Sedition law, to continue in force till March 3, 1801, provided for the punishment of all persons found guilty of abusing the freedom of speech or of the press. Both laws were denounced by the enemies of the administration, as in the highest degree tyrannical, and their unpopularity, it was generally believed, contributed more than any other cause to the overthrow of the Federal party. Both expired by their own limitations.

236. *Organization of the President's Cabinets* ..... 138
The first cabinet consisted of the Secretary of Foreign Affairs (afterwards called the Secretary of State), the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of War, and the Attorney General. Though the Post Office Department was organized at that time, the office of Postmaster General did not confer a seat in the cabinet till Jackson (in 1829) made that officer a member of his cabinet. On the establishment of the Navy Department (in 1798) the Secretary of the Navy became a member of the President's (John Adams) cabinet. The Department of the Interior having been established, President Taylor, at the beginning of his administration (1849), appointed Thomas Ewing, of Ohio, its first secretary. This increased the number of the President's cabinet to seven persons, the present number.

237. *Cessions of Territory by the States to the General Government*... ... 199, 200
Previous to the year 1781, New Hampshire, Rhode Island, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Maryland and Delaware were the only States that had exactly defined boundaries. In 1781, New York ceded her claims to all lands west of the present limits of the State. The cession of Virginia was in 1784, and included Kentucky and the parts of Illinois, Ohio, and Indiana south of the 41st parallel. From this Virginia reserved for military bounty lands the entire territory between the Scioto and Little Miami Rivers. Massachusetts ceded her claims in 1785; Connecticut in 1786. (See Topic 214, Ap., p. 78.) In 1787, South Carolina ceded her claim, the territory given up being a strip of land about twelve miles wide, extending along the entire southern boundaries of North Carolina and Tennessee. In 1790, North Carolina ceded Tennessee. In 1802, Georgia, receiving that part of the cession of South Carolina lying within her present limits, ceded all west of her present western boundary extending to the Mississippi. In 1850, Texas ceded all her claims to lands west of her present limits.

238. *Fulton and his First Steamboat*..... 197
Robert Fulton was born in Pennsylvania in 1765; he died in New York in 1815. He was the author of several useful inventions, but his steamboat, named the *Clermont*, constructed in 1807, is regarded as the most important. Boats, propelled by steam, had been built by John Fitch and James Rumsey, both Americans, more than twenty years before, but the voyage from New York City to Albany, made by Fulton in the *Clermont* in 1807, gave an impulse to steamboat enterprise which soon created a revolution in navigation.

239. *Colorado* ..... 188, 201
This word is Spanish, meaning red or ruddy. "The first well-authenticated account of the discovery of what is now the State of Colorado, is the record of Coronado (see note, page next after 17). Before the commencement of the present century there is no record of any inhabitants there, except in the south portion, where a few Mexicans and Spaniards were settled."

Digitized by Google

## NOTABLE HISTORICAL SAYINGS.

"*Don't fire till you see the whites of their eyes.*" The patriots at the battle Bunker Hill had but a scanty supply of powder. To avoid wasting it by ineffectual shots, Colonel Prescott, as the British advanced to the attack, enjoined his men as above.

"*Don't give up the ship.*" (See the History, p. 123.)

"*First in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen.*" These words occur in the resolutions prepared by Henry Lee, of Virginia, on the death of Washington, and passed by the House of Representatives (Dec., 1799).

"*Give them a little more grape, Captain Bragg.*" In the last desperate encounter of the battle of Buena Vista (Feb., 1847), Bragg's battery, as soon as it came into action, caused the Mexicans to waver. Perceiving this, General Taylor exclaimed as above. The order was promptly obeyed, the enemy were repulsed, and a great victory was won.

"*I am not worth purchasing, but, such as I am, the king of Great Britain is not rich enough to do it.*" After the evacuation of Philadelphia by the British (June, 1778), General Joseph Reed, then a member of Congress, was approached there by a lady acting under the direction of a British agent named Johnstone, and offered £10,000 and any colonial office in his Majesty's gift, if he would exert his influence to restore a union of the two countries. Filled with indignation, Reed replied as above.

"*If any one attempts to haul down the American flag, shoot him on the spot.*" This was the closing part of a telegram sent from Washington to New Orleans (December, 1860), by General John A. Dix, Secretary of the Treasury. Mr. Dix had ordered two revenue cutters to be taken to New York, New Orleans being at the time in virtual possession of the secessionists; but the captain of one of the cutters refusing to obey, he sent a telegram to the lieutenant, ordering the arrest of the captain and closing with the above words.

"*I'll try, sir.*" (See the History, p. 124.)

"*I'd rather be right than be President of the United States.*" This was said by Henry Clay after a presidential contest, in which he had been one of the candidates.

"*In the name of the Great Jehovah and the Continental Congress.*" Ethan Allen, in command of the expedition against Ticonderoga, arrived at the fort at early dawn, May 10, 1775, and demanded its surrender. Its commander, Captain Delaplace, hastily arising from his bed, and appearing at the door of his room, inquired: "By what authority do you act?" Allen, raising his sword, replied as above, and Delaplace was compelled to yield.

"*I propose to fight it out on this line if it takes all summer.*" This was part of a dispatch sent by General Grant to the Honorable Edwin M. Stanton, Secretary of War, on the 8th of May, 1864, the day after the battle of Spottsylvania.

"*Liberty and Union, now and forever, one and inseparable.*" From a speech delivered in Congress by Daniel Webster.

"*Millions for defense, but not a cent for tribute.*" President John Adams

Digitized by Google

appointed Charles C. Pinckney, Elbridge Gerry and John Marshall as envoys to France, for the purpose of making an amicable adjustment of the difficulties with that country (See the History, p. 109). The envoys were insultingly met by the French Directory, and finally informed that nothing would be accomplished until a present of money was made. It being intimated to the envoys that the penalty of refusal would be a war, Pinckney replied: "War be it then! Millions for defense, but not a cent for tribute."

"*Molly Stark will be a widow.*" (See Topic 225, App., p. 82.)

'*Our Country! In her intercourse with foreign nations may she always be in the right; but our country, right or wrong.*" This was a toast given by Commodore Stephen Decatur at a dinner in Norfolk, Va., in 1816.

"*Sink or swim, live or die, survive or perish, I give my hand and my heart to this vote.*" This occurs in a supposed speech made in Congress by John Adams (in 1776), previous to his voting for the Declaration of Independence. It forms part of Daniel Webster's great oration in eulogy of Adams and Jefferson, pronounced on the 2d of August, 1826.

"*The Americans must light the lamps of industry and economy.*" When the Stamp Act was passed (1765), Dr. Franklin was in London, as the agent of Pennsylvania. On the very night of its passage, after its passage, he wrote a letter to Charles Thomson, "who was Secretary of Congress for fifteen consecutive years," in which occurs the above sentence.

"*We have met the enemy, and they are ours.*" (See the History, p. 116.)

"*Westward the course of empire takes it way.*" This occurs in Bishop Berkeley's six verses "On the Prospect of Planting Arts and Learning in America." In 1729, Berkeley came to this country, intending to establish a college for the training of pastors for the churches in the colonies, and of missionaries for the Indians. The poem was written in anticipation of the happy results of the scheme. After residing less than three years near Newport, R. I., he returned to England. A very large painting, representing Berkeley's thought, as given in the poem, is in the National Capitol, Washington.

"*With malice toward none, with charity for all.*" This occurs in President Lincoln's second inaugural address, March 4, 1865.

## POPULAR NAMES GIVEN TO THE STATES.

*Arkansas* is called the *Bear State*, because of the number of bears that infested its forests.

*California* is known as the *Golden State*, it being the most important gold-producing region in the world.

*Connecticut*, the *Land of Steady Habits*, in allusion to the staid deportment of its inhabitants. Also, the *Nutmeg State*, "the inhabitants of which have such a reputation for shrewdness that they have been jocosely accused of palming off wooden nutmegs on unsuspecting purchasers, instead of the genuine article."

*Delaware* is sometimes called the *Diamond State*, from its small size and great importance. Also, the *Blue Hen*, Captain Caldwell, of the First Delaware Regiment, having asserted that no fighting cock could be truly game whose mother was not a blue hen.

Digitized by Google

*Florida*, the *Peninsular State*, from its shape.

*Illinois*, the *Prairie State*, in allusion to the wide-spread and beautiful prairies in the State.

*Indiana*. This State is known as the *Hoosier State*, and the inhabitants, *Hoosiers*. "The word is said to be a corruption of *husher*, formerly a common term for a bully throughout the West."

*Iowa*, the *Hawkeye State*, after an Indian Chief.

*Kansas*. The name, *Garden of the West*, is often given to this State, but it is also given to Illinois and other Western States that are noted for their productiveness.

*Kentucky* is called the *Corn-Cracker State*, and its inhabitants, *Corn-Crackers*.

*Louisiana* is called the *Creole State*, the descendants of the original French and Spanish settlers being a large part of the inhabitants.

*Maine* is the *Lumber State*, "the inhabitants being largely engaged in cutting and rafting lumber."

*Massachusetts*, the *Bay State*, or the *Old Bay State*, its name before the Revolution having been the Massachusetts Bay Colony.

*Michigan* is known as the *Lake State*, it bordering on four great lakes. Also, as the *Wolverine State*, because of the great number of wolverines formerly abounding there. The inhabitants are sometimes designated as Wolverines.

*Mississippi*, the *Bayou State*, because of the numerous bayous or creeks there.

*New Hampshire* is known as the *Granite State*, the mountainous portions being largely composed of granite.

*New York*, the *Empire State*, the most populous and the wealthiest State in the Union. Also known as the *Excelsior State*, the motto, Excelsior, being on its coat of arms.

*North Carolina*, the *Old North State*. Also as the *Turpentine State*, immense quantities of turpentine being produced here.

*Ohio* is called the *Buckeye State*, from the buckeye tree which abounds there. The inhabitants are often called Buckeyes.

*Pennsylvania* is called the *Keystone State*, "from its having been the central State of the Union at the time of the formation of the Constitution. If the names of the thirteen original States are arranged in the form of an arch, Pennsylvania will occupy the place of the keystone."

*Rhode Island* is called *Little Rhody*, it being the smallest of the States.

*South Carolina*, called the *Palmetto State*, "from the arms of the State, which contain a picture of a palmetto tree."

*Texas*, called the *Lone Star State*, the Texas flag, before the admission of the State into the Union, having a single star. The coat of arms of the State has a "lone star."

*Vermont* is called the *Green Mountain State*, the Green Mountains being the principal range in the state. The male inhabitants are frequently called the *Green Mountain Boys*.

*Virginia*. The popular name for this State is the *Old Dominion*, but the origin of the term has not been satisfactorily determined. It is also called the *Mother of States*, because, from its extensive original domain a number of States have been formed, in whole or in part. The name *Mother of Presidents* is likewise given to it, because six of the Presidents of the United States were born in the state.

*Wisconsin* is called the *Badger State*, from the great number of badgers formerly abounding in the State. The State's coat of arms has a picture of a badger.

Digitized by Google

## FAMILIAR NAMES

### APPLIED TO PERSONS AND THINGS IN THE HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

*American Fabius.* This name was applied to Washington, because his cautious generalship resembled that of the Roman General Fabius.

*Apostle of the Indians.* By this designation was the Rev. John Eliot known. He was a successful missionary among the Indians of Massachusetts in the early history of the colony, over whom he had an influence almost unbounded. He wrote several books, but his greatest works were an Indian Grammar and a translation of the Bible into the Indian tongue. He died in 1690, at the age of 86.

*Barnburners.* This nickname was given to the more radical and progressive section of the Democratic party, who aimed at correcting the abuses in connection with banks and other corporations, in allusion to the story of an old Dutchman who relieved himself of rats, by burning his barn, which they infested. (Van Buren's Administration.)

*Black Republicans.* This name was applied to the members of the Republican party by their opponents. (See His., p. 158.)

*Boston Tea Party.* (See the History, p. 67.)

*Brother Jonathan.* This is a sportive name applied to the people of the United States. Several accounts have been given as to its origin, but this remains in doubt.

*Cradle of Liberty.* During the Revolution, Faneuil Hall, in Boston, was the usual place of meeting of the patriots, hence its name as above.

*Dixie.* "An imaginary place somewhere in the Southern States of America. The term is also used as a collective designation of the Southern States."

*Expounder of the Constitution.* Daniel Webster was so called, because of his elaborate expositions of the Constitutions. (See App., p. 75, topic 177.)

*Father of his Country.* A title conferred upon Washington.

*Little Giant.* This name was popularly given to Stephen A. Douglas, a distinguished statesman, his small stature procuring him the title.

*Little Magician.* Martin Van Buren was so called, because of his political sagacity and talents.

*Loco-Focos.* "A nickname formerly given to adherents of the Democratic party It originated in 1834, from an incident that occurred at a meeting in Tammany Hall, New York. There being a great diversity of sentiment among those who were present, a scene of confusion and tumult took place, during which the chairman left his seat, and the gas-lights were extinguished with a view to break up the meeting. But the opposite faction produced loco-foco matches and candles, relighted the Hall, continued the meeting, and accomplished their object."

*Mad Anthony.* "General Wayne, though by his impetuous bravery he gained the sobriquet of *Mad Anthony*, was discreet and cautious, fruitful in expedients, quick in decision, and prompt in execution." (See the His., pp. 89, 107.)

Digitized by Google

*Mill-Boy of the Slashes.* (See Topic 32, App., p. 64.)

*Old Bullion.* When the charter of the United States Bank expired, Colonel Thomas H. Benton, a distinguished statesman representing Missouri in Congress, urged the adoption of a gold and silver currency as the true remedy for the financial embarrassments of the times; hence he obtained the sobriquet of "Old Bullion." (See the History, p. 138.)

*Old Hickory.* (See Topic 222, App., p. 80.)

*Old Hunkers.* "A nickname applied to the ultra-conservative portion of the Democratic party, especially to that portion in the State of New York. It is said to have been intended to indicate that those to whom it was given had an appetite for a large 'hunk' of the spoils." (Van Buren's Administration.)

*Old Ironsides.* By this name the frigate Constitution is familiarly known. (See His., p. 117.) The vessel is still in good condition. She was moored in the Schuylkill river, and there visited during the Centennial Exhibition (1876).

*Old Public Functionary.* President Buchanan first applied this expression to himself in his annual message to Congress in 1859. During his life it was humorously abbreviated O. P. F.

*Old Put.* (See Topic 136, App., p. 72.)

*Rail Splitter.* This designation was applied to Abraham Lincoln, in allusion to his having one winter, in early life, split rails for fencing. He was also called *Honest Abe.*

*Rough and Ready.* This sobriquet was given to General Taylor by his soldiers in the Mexican War.

*Sage of Monticello.* This title President Jefferson won because of his learning. Monticello, Va., was his residence during the long period of retirement which extended from the termination of his presidency to his death, and there he extended a generous hospitality to visitors from Europe as well as from his own country.

*South Carolina Game Cock.* "The valorous achievements of General Sumter, during the campaign 1780, acquired for him this title."

*Stonewall Jackson.* (See Topic 81, App., p. 69.)

*Swamp Fox.* This title was given to General Marion, his retreat from pursuit being in the swamps of the Carolinas.

*Unc'e Sam.* "A jocular or vulgar name of the United States Government."

*Wagon Boy.* This name was applied to Thomas Corwin, a prominent statesman, who, when a boy, during the war of 1812, drove a wagon with supplies for Harrison's army.

*White House.* (See Note 3, end of Section V.)

Digitized by Google

# INDEX.

OR

## LIST OF TOPICS

TO BE FOUND ON THE PAGES DIRECTLY PRECEDING THIS.

(The numbers refer to the numbers of the topics.)


Adams, John ..... 1
Adams, John Q ..... 3
Adams, Samuel ..... 2
Alabama ..... 108
Allen, Ethan ..... 4
Anderson, Gen ..... 10
Andre, Major ..... 5
Andros, Edmund ..... 6
Armstrong, John ..... 7
Armstrong, John, Jun ..... 8
Arkansas ..... 118
Arnold, Benedict ..... 9
Articles of Confederation ..... 192
Bacon, Nathaniel ..... 11
Bainbridge, Com ..... 14
Baker, Gen. E. D ..... 12
Banks, N. P ..... 13
Beauregard, Gen ..... 15
Boone, Daniel ..... 211
Boston ..... 40
Braddock, Gen ..... 22
Bragg, Braxton ..... 21
Brown, Gen. Jacob ..... 23
Buchanan, James ..... 24
Buell, Gen ..... 25
Burgoyne, Gen ..... 26
Burnside, Gen ..... 27
Burr, Aaron ..... 28
Butler, B. F ..... 29
Cabot, John and Sebastian ..... 30
Calhoun, John C ..... 31
California ..... 51
Capitals of the United States ..... 220
Causes of U. S. Wars ..... 197
Charleston ..... 127
Clay, Henry ..... 32
Clinton, Sir Henry ..... 33
Colleges, Early ..... 219
Colorado ..... 239
Columbus, Christopher ..... 34
Committee of Correspondence ..... 16
Connecticut ..... 52
Connecticut Reserve ..... 215
Constitution, Federal ..... 193
Cornwallis, Lord ..... 35
Cortez, Fernando ..... 36
Croghan, Major ..... 37
Curtis, Gen. S. R ..... 38
Davenport, John ..... 41
Davis, Jefferson ..... 42
Deane, Silas ..... 44
Dearborn, Gen ..... 43
Decatur, Com ..... 45
Declaration of Independence ..... 191
De Kalb, Baron ..... 49
Delaware ..... 48
D'Estaing ..... 47
Dieskau, Baron ..... 46
District of Columbia ..... 168
Dred Scott Case ..... 217
Early Navigators ..... 133
European Wars in the Colonies ..... 18
Ex-Presidents in Congress ..... 221
Farragut, Admiral ..... 57
Fillmore, Millard ..... 56
Florida ..... 54
Foote, Admiral ..... 58
Foreign Officers in Am. Army ..... 199
Franklin, Dr ..... 53
Fremont, John C ..... 55
Gage, Gen ..... 59
Gaspee, Destruction of the ..... 218
Gates, Gen ..... 60
Georgia ..... 61
Gosnold, Bartholomew ..... 62
Grant, Ulysses S ..... 63
Greene, Gen ..... 64
Hale, Nathan ..... 66
Hamilton, Alexander ..... 65
Hancock, John ..... 68
Harper's Ferry ..... 75
Harrison, Wm. H ..... 69
Henry, Patrick ..... 70
Hooker, Gen ..... 71
Hudson, Henry ..... 72
Hull, Capt ..... 74
Hull, Gen ..... 73
Illinois ..... 76
Indiana ..... 77
Inhabitants required for State org. 226
Iowa ..... 78
Jackson, Andrew ..... 79
Jackson, Gen. T. J ..... 81
Jay, John ..... 82
Jefferson, Thomas ..... 84
Jersey Prison Ship ..... 50
Johnson, Andrew ..... 88
Johnson, Sir Wm ..... 83
Johnston, Gen. Jos. E ..... 87
Jones, Paul ..... 86
Kansas ..... 91
Kentucky ..... 90
Kosciusko ..... 89
Lafayette ..... 96
La Salle ..... 99
Law's Bubble ..... 216
Lee, Gen. Charles ..... 96
Lee, Gen. Robert E ..... 97
Length of U. S. Wars ..... 196
Lincoln, Abraham ..... 94
Lincoln, Gen ..... 93
Louisiana ..... 101


Digitized by Google

Lyman, Gen. P. ..... 92
Madison, James ..... 112
Maine ..... 105
Marion, Gen ..... 103
Marquette ..... 100
Maryland ..... 111
Mason and Dixon's Line ..... 213
Massachusetts ..... 104
McClellan, Gen ..... 120
McCrea, Jane ..... 190
Meade, Gen ..... 115
Michigan ..... 117
Minnesota ..... 119
Mississippi ..... 109
Mississippi Valley Settlements ..... 209
Mississippi Bubble ..... 210
Missouri ..... 116
Monroe, James ..... 114
Montgomery, Gen ..... 102
Morgan, Gen ..... 110
Mormons, The ..... 223
Morris, Robert ..... 106
Nebraska ..... 179
New Hampshire ..... 123
New Jersey ..... 124
New York City ..... 122
New York State ..... 121
Nevada ..... 131
New Mexico ..... 0
North Carolina ..... 125
"Northwestern Difficulties" ..... 178
Northwest Territory ..... 128
Object of New England Colonies ..... 202
Object of other Colonies ..... 203
Ohio ..... 129
Old Hickory ..... 222
Ordinance of 1787 ..... 212
Oregon ..... 130
Penn, Wm ..... 132
Pennsylvania ..... 133
Philadelphia ..... 134
Pierce, Franklin ..... 140
Pitt, Wm ..... 135
Plymouth Colony ..... 195
Political Parties ..... 224
Polk, James K ..... 139
Pope, Gen ..... 141
Porter, Admiral ..... 142
Presidents of the United States ..... 180
Pulaski, Count ..... 137
Putnam, Gen ..... 136
Raleigh, Sir Walter ..... 147
Rebellions in United States ..... 145
Rhode Island ..... 146
Rosecrans, Gen ..... 148
Sanitary Commissions ..... 159
Savannah ..... 150
Schuyler, Gen ..... 151
Scott, Gen ..... 156
Sheridan, Gen ..... 158
Sherman, Gen ..... 157
Slavery ..... 17
Smith, John ..... 149
South Carolina ..... 126
States from conquered territory ..... 204
States from purchased territory ..... 205
States from other territory ..... 206
Stark, Gen ..... 225
St. Augustine ..... 155
St. Clair, Gen ..... 153
Succession of States ..... 187
Sullivan, Gen ..... 152
Sumter, Gen ..... 154
Surrendered Commanders ..... 200
Taylor, Zachary ..... 163
Tennessee ..... 160
Territory acquired ..... 188
Territory, how acquired ..... 207
Texas ..... 161
Ticonderoga, Ft ..... 107
Treaties ..... 19
Tyler, John ..... 162
United States Flag ..... 194
Van Buren, Martin ..... 173
Vermont ..... 174
Virginia ..... 176
Warren, Gen ..... 165
Wars during the Colonial Period ..... 144
Wars with the U. S ..... 143
Washington City ..... 167
Washington, George ..... 164
Washington's military movements ..... 198
Webster, Daniel ..... 177
Western Reserve ..... 214
West Point ..... 169
West Virginia ..... 171
Wilkinson, Gen ..... 166
Wilmot Provisio ..... 216
Wisconsin ..... 170


## ADDITIONAL INDEX.


Speedwell and the Mayflower ..... 227
Leisler and Milborne ..... 228
Kidd, Captain William ..... 229
Locke and his Grand Model ..... 230
Burning of Charlestown ..... 231
England's Foes and Friends of the Revolution ..... 232
Clark, Gen. George Rogers ..... 233
Hayne, Isaac—His Execution ..... 234
Alien and Sedition Laws ..... 235
Presidents' Cabinets ..... 236
Cessions by the State to the General Government ..... 237
Fulton and his first steamboat ..... 238

Notable Historical Sayings ..... App., p. 86
Popular Names given to the States ..... " " 87
Familiar Names applied to persons and things in the History of the United States ..... " " 89


**Total number of pages, 848, besides Maps and Illustrations.**

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

A

# TEXT-BOOK ON RHETORIC:

*Supplementing the Development of the Science with Exhaustive Practice in Composition.*

A COURSE OF PRACTICAL LESSONS ADAPTED FOR USE IN HIGH-SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES AND IN THE LOWER CLASSES OF COLLEGES.

## By BRAINERD KELLOGG, A.M.,

*Professor of the English Language and Literature in the Brooklyn Collegiate and Polytechnic Institute, and one of the authors of Reed & Kellogg's "Graded Lessons in English" and "Higher Lessons in English."*

In preparing this work upon Rhetoric, the author's aim has been to write a practical text-book for High-Schools, Academies, and the lower classes of Colleges, based upon the science rather than an exhaustive treatise upon the science itself.

This work has grown up out of the belief that the rhetoric which the pupil needs is not that which lodges finally in the memory, but that which has worked its way down into his tongue and fingers, enabling him to speak and write the better for having studied it. The author believes that the aim of the study should be to put the pupil in possession of an art, and that this can be done not by forcing the science into him through eye and ear, but by drawing it out of him, in products, through tongue and pen. Hence all explanations of principles are followed by exhaustive practice in Composition—to this everything is made tributary.

When, therefore, under the head of Invention, the author is leading the pupil up through the construction of sentences and paragraphs, through the analyses of subjects and the preparing of frameworks, to the finding of the thought for themes; when, under the head of Style, he is familiarizing the pupil with its grand, cardinal qualities; and when, under the head of Productions, he divides discourse into oral prose, written prose, and poetry, and these into their subdivisions, giving the requisites and functions of each—he is aiming in it all to keep sight of the fact that the pupil is to acquire an art, and that to attain this he must put into almost endless practice with his pen what he has learned from the study of the theory.

*276 pages, 12mo, attractively bound in cloth.*

PUBLISHED BY

**CLARK & MAYNARD, 734 Broadway, New York.**


Digitized by Google